

made by Mansy

صلى ع النبي وإدعيلى دعوة حلوة

#دفعة المنوفية 2022

#قناة تالتة ثانوى 2022

 **EL-MORASSER**

GUIDE



New

Hello!

& Great Expectations

By A Group Of Supervisors



للفصل الثالث الثانوي
عام - أزهري
الفصل الدراسي الأول

كتاب الشرح و التدريبات



التطبيق التفاعلي
للتعلم عن بُعد

3rd Sec.
2022

FIRST TERM

MODULE 1 Making history

UNIT 1

Read all about it! page 11

UNIT 2

Her story page 86

UNIT 3

Beyond imagination page 164

Revision 1

..... page 238

MODULE 2 Working well

UNIT 4

Taking care of ourselves page 253

UNIT 5

The future of work page 320

UNIT 6

Let's get it done! page 384

Revision 2

..... page 442

NOVEL

on

Great Expectations

from chapter 1 to chapter 6 page 452

Learning Outcomes :

○ Reading :
Compare different newspaper styles

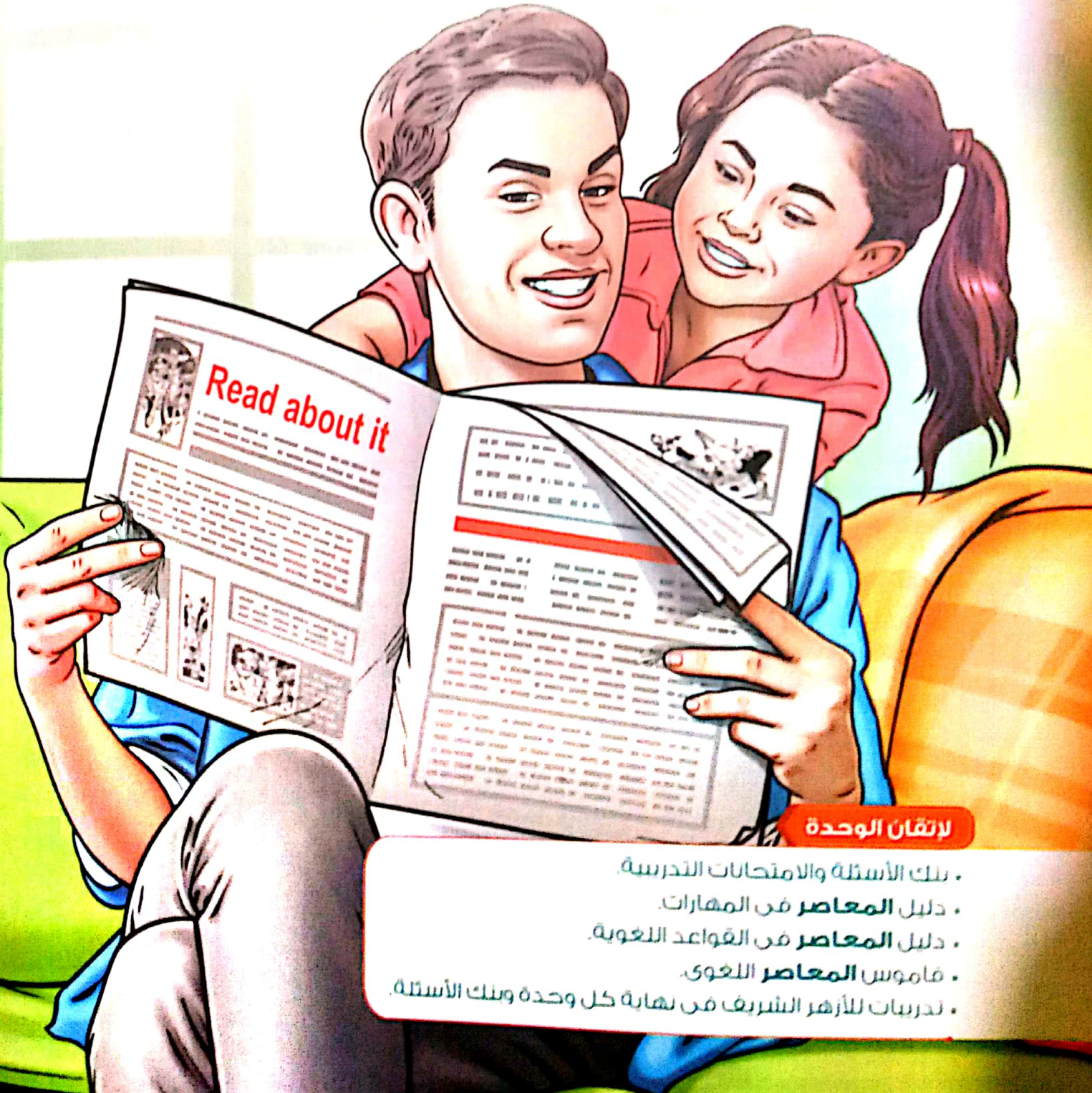
○ Writing :
A persuasive essay

○ Listening :
Understand the key points in a lecture

○ Speaking :
Report an event

○ Language :
Review past simple, past continuous and present perfect tenses

○ Life skills :
Identify bias and exaggeration



لافتان الوحدة

- تلك الأسئلة والامتحانات التدريبية.
- دليل المعاصر في المهارات.
- دليل المعاصر في القواعد اللغوية.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف في نهاية كل وحدة وتلك الأسئلة.

Part 1

Vocabulary

- أكثر مدى أمان للموارد الرئيسية في كراسة المفردات المتحركة الثانية
- المفردات الشهيرة والتي تلخص هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية

توقع

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

announce (d) (v)	يعلن	occur (red) (v)	يحدث
broadsheet(n)	صحيفة رسمية - النسخ الكبير	piracy(n)	القرصنة
casualty(n)	خسارة - قتل - حالة وفاة	punish (ed) (v)	مُفرض - مسروق
cheat (ed) (n/v)	غشاش - يفتش	punishment(n)	يعاقب
claim (ed) (v/n)	زعم/يدعي - زعم - ادعاء	ruin(ed) (v/n)	عقاب - عقوبة
compensate (d) (v)	يُعوض	shock(ed) (v/n)	يُدمر - خطام
convict(ed) (n/v)	مُدين - يدين	shocked(adj)	يصدم - الصدمة
demand(ed) (v/n)	يطلب - طلب/أمر	spin - spun (v)	مصدوم
incident(n)	واقعة - موقف عاجز - حدث	tabloid(n)	يلف/يُدبر
investigate(d) (v)	يُحقق في - يتحرى	violate(d) (v)	صحيفة شعبية /
investigator(n)	مُحقق	wait with bated breath	صحيفة إثارة
long-awaited(adj)	طال انتظاره		يخالف
nosy(adj)	مُتطفل (جسري)		ينتظر بفارغ الصبر

2 Important Vocabulary

analysis(n)	تحليل	mention(ed) (v)	يقول/يذكر
around(ad/v/prep)	حول/أحوالي	midday(n)	منتصف النهار
author(n)	مؤلف	miss(ed) (v)	يفقد (يسترحش) - يُنسى
authority(n)	السلطة	non-native(adj)	اجنبي
back(n)	مؤخرة - ظهر	obtain(ed) (v)	يحصل على - يكتسب
behave(d) (v)	يتصرف - يتسلل	permission(n)	إذن/تصريح
bias(n)	تحيز	prison(n)	السجن
block(ed) (v)	يسد/يُغلق - يحجب	products(n)	منتجات
chance(n)	فرصة	prove(d) (v)	يُثبت - يبرهن
celebrity(n)	شخصية مشهورة	publication(n)	النشر - عمل مقروء
content(n)	محتوى - مضمون	published (v)	ينشر

copy(ied) (n/v)	نسخة - نسخ	publisher(n)	نشر (نسخ) / مؤسس
copyright(n)	حق النشر	quality(n)	جودة - خاصة
court(n)	محاكمة	pun(n)	العقوبة
crime(n)	جريمة - جناية	refer(red) (v)	يُحيل - يورد - يشير
criminal(adj/n)	جاني/أجرامي - مجرم	remove(d) (v)	يُزال/يُحذف
deathly (adj)	قاتل/قاتل	require(d) (v)	يُطلب - يستلزم
digital(adj)	رقمي	rescue(d) (v)	يُنقذ - فرق الإغاثة
e-book(n)	كتاب إلكتروني	rescuer(n)	مُنقذ - خط سير
emotional(adj)	عاطفي	right(n)	حق
event(n)	حدث - مناسبة	route(n)	سُبي
excitement(n)	إثارة - تَعْش	sensational(adj)	مثير
exist(ed) (v)	يوجد	secret(n/adj)	سري - سري
expert(n/adj)	خبير	security(n)	الأمن - التأمين
factual(adj)	حقيقي - مُعتمد بالحقائق	share(d) (v)	يشارك/يُشتر - يتقاسم
financially(adv)	مالياً	slang(n)	اللغة العامية
former(adj)	سابق	source(n)	مصدر
free(adj)	مجاني - حر	spoil - spoiled/	يُفسد - يُفلس
front(n)	جبهة	spoil (v)	
highlight(ed) (v/n)	يُبرز - يُظلل - الجزء الأبرز	state(d) (v)	يذكر/يقول
illegal(adj)	غير قانوني	strict(adj)	صارم/حازم
include(d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن - يُضمّن	sum(n)	مبلغ
including(preposition)	بما في ذلك	thankfully(adv)	لحسن الحظ - بفضل الله
intellectual(adj)	فكري	type(d) up (v)	يُكتب على جهاز
journalist(n)	صحفي	warn(ed) (v)	يُنذر
knock(ed) (v/n)	يُطرق الباب - طرقة	warning(n)	تحذير
law(n)	قانون	whole(adj/n)	كامل - كل/جُل
lawyer(n)	محامي	lecture(d) (v)	محاضرة - يُحاضر

3 Definitions تعريفات

announce(d) (v)	يعلن	to officially tell people about something, especially about a plan or a decision
broadsheet(n)	صحيفة رسمية	a newspaper printed on large sheets of paper, especially a serious newspaper
cheat (n)	غشاش	someone who behaves in a dishonest way in order to get something
claim(ed) (v)	يزعم/يدعي	to say something is true, although it has not been proved

compensate(d) (v) يُعوَضُ	to replace or balance يُوازن the effect of something bad
demand(ed) (v) يَطالب - يَأمُر	to ask for something in a very strict صارم and serious way
incident(n) حَدَث	- an event, especially one that is unusual, important, or violent عَينِف - a formal word meaning 'event'
investigate(d) (v) يُحَقِّق	to try to find out the truth الحَقِيقَة about something such as a crime, accident, or scientific problem
occur(red) (v) يَحدُث	to happen or exist يوجد مُحدَّد place or situation
piracy(n) القرصنة	when someone illegally بشكل غير قانوني sells someone's work copies and to completely spoil something
ruin(ed) (v) يُدمِّر	an extreme adjective صفة قَويَة meaning very surprised and upset مُزعِج
shocked(adj) مصدوم	tabloid newspapers have small pages and short articles with a lot of pictures and stories about famous people, and are often thought of as less serious than other newspapers
tabloid(n) صحيفة شعبية / صحيفة إخبارية	waiting with a lot of nervousness التوتر and excitement
wait with bated breath ينتظر بغير الصبر	

Exercise

On Vocabulary

Understand

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- All I is to know what mistake I have made.
a. occur b. mention c. block d. demand
- Luckily, there were no as a result of the cars accident.
a. warnings b. casualties c. piracies d. rights
- depend on the emotional appeal to attract readers.
a. Convicts b. Broadsheets c. Tabloids d. Punishments
- This Windows version is, not genuine.
a. pirated b. criminal c. secret d. shocked

2 Important vocabulary

- Both Ahmed and his bride are over the moon at their wedding party.
a. former b. nosy c. long-awaited d. illegal
- You have to work hard to the absence غياب of Mr Ashraf.
a. compensate b. obtain c. refer d. announce
- The road is closed because there has been a dangerous
a. permission b. incident c. cheat d. authority
- The police are still the crime.
a. ruining b. requiring c. highlighting d. investigating
- Don't to have done something you didn't take part in.
a. spoil b. spin c. claim d. shock
- A police car took the to prison, the ideal place for them.
a. convicts b. broadsheets c. tabloids d. punishments
- Earthquakes rarely in Egypt.
a. occur b. mention c. block d. demand
- is a crime punished by law.
a. Warning b. Casualty c. Piracy d. Right
- I got tired of those people who do not respect others' privacy خصوصية.
a. former b. nosy c. long-awaited d. illegal
- The exam results will be tomorrow.
a. compensated b. obtained c. referred d. announced
- The violent storm completely the old wooden house.
a. ruined b. required c. highlighted d. investigated
- usually use formal language.
a. Convicts b. Broadsheets c. Tabloids d. Punishments
- It is a crime to copyright law.
a. behave b. investigate c. violate d. prove
- I was on hearing that my uncle had died.
a. pirated b. criminal c. secret d. shocked
- What really surprises me is how such a/an can be trusted.
a. permission b. incident c. cheat d. authority
- The suspect there is evidence دليل that he hadn't left his home.
a. begged b. accused c. scared d. claimed

21. My cousin and I have had so many amusing **d. passengers**
22. The world cup is an important sports **b. incidents**
23. In the past, there was strong cultural against women. **a. event**
24. What really makes El-Moasser on the top is its professional educational **b. content**
25. I had to answer all the questions of the before I could go home. **a. court**
26. All students attend the of Professor A. Karim. **a. eyewitness**
27. Heavy clouds out sunlight. **a. occur**
28. You have the to express your opinion. **a. warning**
29. He is a lawyer who defends only the innocent. **a. pirated**
30. My father is a retired banker. He was a / an manager of the National Bank. **a. former**
31. The file was to the legal department **القانوني** to study it. **a. compensated**
32. The Egyptian succeeded in putting an end to the Israeli attack on Gaza strip. **a. permissions**
33. Taking a break is to renew your energy. **a. ruined**
34. At the very beginning of a speech, your full name. **a. spoil**
35. A is a place where justice is achieved and crime is punished. **a. court**

16

36. In his speech **خطبه**, Mr Mahmoud all his team members by their names. **a. occurred**
37. It is to take something that does not belong to you. **a. former**
38. It is better if the readers can ebooks at a lower price. **a. compensate**
39. I can't take this decision without my father's **a. permission**
40. Your CV should your qualifications and skills. **a. ruin**
41. The students stopped making noise when the teacher's look gave them **a. warning**
42. If someone tells you a/an, it is not honest to let others know it. **a. pirated**
- 3 Definitions**
43. To is to officially tell people about something, especially about a plan or a decision. **a. cheat**
44. A/An is someone who behaves in a dishonest way in order to get something. **a. incident**
45. To is to say something is true, although it has not been proved. **a. cheat**
46. To is to replace or balance the effect of something bad. **a. demand**
47. A/An is an event, especially one that is unusual, important, or violent. **a. incident**
48. To is to ask for something in a very strict and serious way. **a. demand**
49. To is to try to find out the truth about something such as a crime, accident, or scientific problem. **a. ruin**

المعجم
الانجليزية / قرآن (٢ : ١)

17

50. newspapers have small pages and short articles with a lot of pictures and stories about famous people, and are often thought of as less serious than other newspapers.
a. Incident b. Aircraft c. Tabloid d. Broadsheet
51. To is to happen or exist in a particular place or situation.
a. ruin b. occur c. investigate d. compensate
52. is when someone illegally copies and sells someone's work.
a. Incident b. Cheat c. Court d. Piracy
53. To is to completely spoil something.
a. ruin b. occur c. investigate d. compensate
54. means very surprised and upset.
a. Deathly b. Shocked c. Recent d. Factual
55. "....." is a phrase meaning waiting with a lot of nervousness and excitement.
a. Wait with bated breathe b. Wait with bated breath
c. Wait and see d. Wait patiently

Part II Vocabulary Study

تتويبه ساعد فعلكم على الارتقاء بمستواكم عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

compensate	... financially ماليًا	يُعَوِّض ... ماليًا	... in place	يضع ... في المكان الصحيح
demand	a better pay	يطلب بأجر أفضل	put	... in prison
do	a sport	يُمارِس رياضة		يحبس - يضع ... في السجن
	an amazing job	يقوم بعمل رائع	receive	a punishment for
find	a chance for	يجد فرصة لـ		يتعرض لعقوبة بسبب
follow	the correct route	يأخذ المسار الصحيح	ruin	warnings from
				يتلقى تحذيرات من
have	a bigger emotional effect on	له تأثير عاطفي أكبر علي	send	the surprise
	a copy of	لديه نسخة من		بحرق المفاجأة
				ينقل ... بالطائرات
				ينقل ... بالسفن

highlight	the problem	يُبرز المشكلة	share	... on social media
				يشارك ... على وسائل التواصل
make	a lot of money	يكسب الكثير من المال	show	... online
				يعرض ... على الإنترنت
	it clear that	يوضح أن	tell	the media
				يُخبر وسائل الإعلام
own	rights to	يملك حقوق ..	violate	copyright law
				ينتهك قانون حقوق النشر
pay	a large sum of money	يدفع مبلغ كبير من المال	win	running races
				يفوز بسباقات الجري

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The government will those who lost their homes in the earthquake financially.
a. own b. violate c. compensate d. make
- One of the ways to problems is to discuss them on social media and talk shows.
a. pay b. highlight c. do d. tell
- The warning we from our teacher made us all work hard.
a. pay b. won c. demanded d. received
- Al Talaba Bookstore rights to El-Moasser series.
a. owns b. shows c. compensates d. makes
- I wish I knew who the media about our secret plan.
a. put b. highlighted c. did d. told
- You have the right to your rights, but first carry out your duties واجبات.
a. pay b. send c. demand d. violate
- It is a crime when the copyright law is
a. owned b. violated c. compensated d. made
- The security cameras have already been in place.
a. put b. highlighted c. done d. told
- The emotional effect our family house on us is what stops us from selling it.
a. pays b. has c. demands d. receives
- A lot of money has been by communication businesses.
a. told b. violated c. compensated d. made

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
casualty (n)	حالة وفاة؛ ضحية/مضّر
casualty (n)	فسم الطوارئ
Casualty (n)	غشاش
cheat (n)	بغوض
compensate for (v)	يطالب
demand (v)	يُطلب
investigate (v)	مُطال (جسري)
nosy (adj)	يُحدّث
occur (v)	يُحدّث
ruin (v)	يُحدّث
violate (v)	يُخالف
	mortality/death
	victim/sufferer
	Emergency
	cheater/deceiver
	make up for
	call for/ask for/request
	look into
	curious/ spying/interfering
	happen/take place
	destroy/wreck
	break/disobey

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
pirated (adj)	genuine / legal
ruin (v)	restore / save
violate (v)	build / construct
	comply with/respect/follow
	أصلي/شرعي
	يُستعيد/يُنقذ
	يُبنى - يُشيد
	يُتبع

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- "The new traffic law aims to reduce road casualties." The word 'casualty' in this sentence is a synonym of
a. deaths b. victims c. emergency d. a & b
- "I never download pirated material." In this sentence, 'pirated' is an antonym of
a. genuine b. illegal c. efficient d. destroyed
- "....." is to 'wreck' as 'nosy' is to 'curious'.
a. Restore b. Save c. Ruin d. Violate
- "The ship was ruined in a storm." In this utterance, the verb "ruined" can be replaced by
a. restored b. wrecked c. saved d. a & c

5. "A good citizen never violates the law." This means a good citizen always the law.
a. follows b. breaks c. disobeys d. works against

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
announce	announcement - إعلان announcer - مُعلن / مُذيع	announced - مُعلن unannounced - سري - غير مُعلن	unannounced - سراً - بشكل غير مُتوقع
cheat	cheat / cheater cheating	غشاش الغش	
claim	claim زعم / ادعاء - مُطالبة	مُحقّق زعم / ادعاء - مُطالبة	
investigate	investigator investigation	مُحقّق تُحقّق	investigatory - تَحقيقِي
	journal journalism journalist journalise	صحيفة الصحافة صحفي لغة الصحافة	journalistic - مُتعلق بالصحافة
occur	occurrence	حدث فُرصان	pirated - مَطْرُوق
pirate	pirate piracy	الفرصة - الإغصلا، على عمل الغير	
shock	shock	صدمة	shocking - صادم shocked - مصدوم
spin	spin لف / يدور - يُلقي / يخلط الأمور - يَغزل	لف / يدور - يُلقي / يخلط الأمور	spinning - دَوّار

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What a/an! He sold me expired goods.
a. cheat b. cheater c. cheating d. a & b

2. Online..... is punished by law.

- a. cheat b. cheater c. cheating d. a & b

3. The of the exam results is expected to take place tomorrow.

- a. announce b. announcer c. announcement d. unannounced

4. A news on TV needs to be a good speaker.

- a. announce b. announcer c. announcement d. unannounced

5. The local authorities will the causes of the energy cut-offs.

- a. announce b. announcer c. announcement d. unannounced

6. "The team of experts arrived unannounced." In this sentence, 'unannounced' is a/an

- a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb

7. The police kidnapping children in this area.

- a. investigate b. investigation c. investigators d. investigatory

8. Two police are looking into the kidnapping of children in this area.

- a. investigate b. investigation c. investigators d. investigatory

9. Kidnapping children in this area is under

- a. investigate b. investigation c. investigators d. investigatory

10. Earthquakes are common in Japan.

- a. shock b. shocking c. occur d. occurrence

11. Earthquakes very often in Japan.

- a. shock b. shocking c. occur d. occurrence

12. Years of experience have improved his skills.

- a. journalism b. journalist c. journalistic d. a, b & c

13. I was by his violent reaction.

- a. shocked b. shocking c. occurred d. occurrence

14. His violent reaction was

- a. shocked b. shocking c. occurred d. occurrence

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

as far as	على قدر - نفس مسافة	large sum of money	مبلغ كبير من المال
at a lower price	بسعر أقل	long-awaited ending	النهاية التي طال انتظارها
at low cost	بتكلفة منخفضة	on other sites	على مواقع أخرى
at midday	في منتصف النهار	on social media	في وسائل التواصل
be about three times more	يكون أكثر بثلاثة أضعاف	on the internet	على شبكة الإنترنت
be due to	يكون من المقرر أن	pirated digital copy	نسخة رقمية مُقرضنة

be punished by law

يعاقب عليه القانون

possible casualties

الخسائر المحتملة

Bitter Lakes

البحيرات المرة

return to normal

يعود للوضع الطبيعي

business products

مُنتجات تجارية

sand storm

عاصفة رملية

crime court

محكمة جنائية

seriously ill

مريض بشدة

crime of piracy

جريمة القرصنة

square metre

متر مربع

deathly hallows

المقدسات القاتلة

strong wind

رياح قوية

extreme adjective

صفة قوية

that is because

ذلك لأن

for ages

لمدة طويلة

the true cause of

السبب الحقيقي لـ

in a dishonest way

بطريقة غير أمينة

the whole book

الكتاب بالكامل

in addition to

بالإضافة إلى

twenty-year-old student

in her late 20s

في أواخر العشرينات من عمرها

طالب يبلغ من العمر عشرين عامًا

internet cheat

الغش الإلكتروني / الغش عبر الإنترنت

wait with bated breath

ينتظر بفارغ الصبر

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

encourage ... to

يُشجّع ... أن

refer ... to

يُحيل ... إلى

find out

يكشف

travel past

يجتاز / يمر بجوار

pass through

يمر من خلال

wait for

ينتظر

plan to

يخطط أن

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He took a short route, so he didn't run as as other runners.

- a. soon b. well c. far d. good

2. A good teacher encourages students hard.

- a. work b. to work c. working d. to working

3. Sama is a five-.....-old child.

- a. year b. year's c. years d. years'

4. I found the report long, so I referred it the secretary to summarise it.

- a. from b. into c. with d. to

5. You can find all types of information the internet.

- a. in b. on c. to d. with

6. While looking for my keys, I found that there were some important documents under the desk.

- a. from b. up c. of d. out

7. They agreed to meet midday.
a. on b. in c. at d. with
8. No ship could travel Ever Given. It blocked the canal.
a. on b. past c. paste d. pass

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

announce - advertise

- **announce + obj.** يُعلن عن (قرار/نية/خطة/خبر/مناسبة...) بغرض تبليغ أو إخبار الآخرين
- We announce our decisions on El-Moasser page on Facebook.
- **advertise + obj.** يُعلن عن (سلعة/خدمة...) بغرض تجاري
- We advertise our publications on El-Moasser page on Facebook.

investigate - check

- **investigate** يُحقّق في (الوصول إلى الحقيقة/الفاعل...)
- The police are still investigating the crime.
- **check** يتحقّق من/يفحص (للتأكد من صحة/سلامة/صلاحية/كفاءة...)
- The mechanic checked my car engine.

incident - accident - event - occasion

- **accident** حادث (غير متوقع يؤدي إلى خسائر في الأرواح أو الممتلكات)
- The car accident resulted in the death of two young people and an old woman.
- **incident** واقعة - حادث عارض - حدث (غير متوقع يؤدي إلى خسائر في الممتلكات)
- This incident is strange here in our town.
- **incident** أزمة/نزاع بين دولتين
- The terrorist attack caused a diplomatic incident.
- **event** حدث/مناسبة هامة
- I have no comment on the recent political events.
- **occasion** مناسبة اجتماعية
- I invited all my friends on the occasion of my sister's wedding.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The between the two countries resulted from an attack near the borders الحدود.
- a. incident b. accident c. phenomenon d. occasion

2. We meet to celebrate the of my brother's success.
a. incident b. accident c. phenomenon d. occasion
3. All official decisions are on Channel One.
a. said b. advertised c. announced d. showed
4. Our products are on our website.
a. said b. advertised c. announced d. showed
5. I think we do not have any apples left, but I will
a. check b. advertise c. announce d. investigate
6. To something is to look into it.
a. advertise b. check c. announce d. investigate

8 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات الرئيسية

compensate

- **compensate (for) = make up for (v)** يُعوّض (عن)
- His hard work compensates his limited skills.
- Ayman compensated Abdulrahman for making him return to work in his honeymoon شهر العسل.

لاحظ أن:

- Nothing will compensate me the death of my grandfather. (X)
- Nothing will compensate me for the death of my grandfather. (✓)
- **compensatory (adj)** تعويضي
- I was given a compensatory sum of money.
- **compensation (for) (n)** تعويض (عن)
- Workers get compensations for work injuries إصابات.
- **compensation (from) (n)** تعويض (من)
- Workers get compensations from their employers.
- **in compensation (for) (n)** عوضاً (عن)
- She got 240 thousand pounds in compensations for her damaged car.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- pay/award/give/offer ... a compensation ... يدفع/يعرض تعويضاً لـ
- receive a compensation يتلقى تعويضاً
- claim/demand/seek a compensation يطالب بتعويض
- financial compensation تعويض مالي
- full compensation تعويض كامل
- partial compensation تعويض جزئي

demand

الطلب/الإقبال (علي)

• demand (for) (n)

- Demand for cold drinks increases in summer.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- in demand (=wanted) مطلوب
- high/big/great/huge demand طلب مرتفع
- low demand طلب منخفض
- cope with/satisfy/meet demand يُلبّي الطلب
- a surge in demand طفرة في الطلب
- supply and demand العرض والطلب

المطالبة (بـ)

• demand (for) (n)

- Your demand for a better pay راتب أفضل during coronavirus pandemic جائحة is not wise.

يطلب/يطلب (بـ)

• demand (to) (v)

- We demand to know when we will be promoted.

لاحظ أن:

عند استخدام جملة بعد demand فإن فعلها يكون (inf. / should + inf.).

... demand + (that) + subj. + inf. / should + inf. ...

- My father demands that Ali be home before midnight. (formal)
- My father demands that Ali should be home before midnight. (formal)
- My father demands that Ali is home before midnight. (informal)

piracy

• pirate (n)

قرصان

- In this area, pirates attack and take ships.
- Copyright pirates should be punished.

• pirate (v)

يستولي علي/يُقرص

- Those who pirate novels, videos and music are criminals.

• pirated (adj)

مسروق/مُقرص

- When you buy pirated materials, you encourage copyright thieves.

spin

• spin - spun - spun (v)

يلف/يدور

- When you press the On button, the laptop fan starts to spin.

spin

• spin - spun - spun (v)

يلف/يدور

- When you press the On button, the laptop fan starts to spin.

• spin - spun - spun (v)

يغالط/يُلَقِّق/يُخْتَلِق

- Sometimes, children spin stories to escape punishment.

• spin (n)

لفة/دورة

- The earth's spin around itself takes 24 hours.

• spin (n)

تلفيق/تزيين الكلام/مغالطة

- Don't try to put a spin on the situation. You've made a big mistake.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A writer has to provide evidence دليل to prove his/her
a. claim b. casualty c. violation d. chance
2. Her fluency and intelligence her lack of experience.
a. wait with bated breath for b. check
c. find out about d. make up for
3. We were given a/an day off when a national holiday falls on a Friday.
a. investigatory b. compensatory c. thankful d. right
4. By way of their busy week, I take my children out on boat trips every week.
a. violation b. announcement c. investigation d. compensation
5. I banged my head and the room started to
a. pirate b. announce c. spin d. shock

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	التعبير (prove a claim) يعني (يُثَبِّت افتراض أو رأي).
2.	d	التعبير (make up for) يعني (يُعَوِّض).
3.	b	التعبير (a compensatory day off) يعني (يوم إجازة تعويضي).
4.	d	التعبير (by way of compensation) يعني (من قبيل التعويض).
5.	c	التعبير (the room started to spin) يعني (بدأت أشعر بالدوار).

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

Tabloid Vs. Broadsheet

(58 page 6)

Check
vocabulary

A tabloid newspaper has small pages and large photos. It has short stories⁽¹⁾ which are easy to explain⁽²⁾. It uses simple language and large headlines⁽³⁾, which often include⁽⁴⁾ funny⁽⁵⁾ rhymes⁽⁶⁾ or jokes⁽⁷⁾. A broadsheet newspaper is a more formal⁽⁸⁾ newspaper with large pages. It has more international news. Articles⁽⁹⁾ are more factual⁽¹⁰⁾ and use longer sentences and paragraphs. They have fewer photos than tabloid newspapers.

Extra information

Broadsheets are also known as the quality press⁽¹¹⁾ and are more likely to include analysis⁽¹²⁾ of the news, as well as reporting and opinion pieces.⁽¹³⁾ People believe they are more intellectual⁽¹⁴⁾ and are read by better educated readers. Some examples are The Times (UK) and The Washington Post (US). Tabloid newspapers often focus on sensational⁽¹⁵⁾ or celebrity⁽¹⁶⁾ stories as well as general news. Although they use simple language, they often include slang⁽¹⁷⁾ and puns⁽¹⁸⁾, so are not necessarily easier for non-native⁽¹⁹⁾ speakers to understand. Some examples are The Sun (UK) and The New York Post (US).

New Harry Potter book shown online

(58 page 6)

Photographs of all the 784 pages of Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows⁽¹⁾ have appeared on the internet, four days before J.K. Rowling's final⁽²⁾ book is due to⁽³⁾ be published⁽⁴⁾.

It is not known who took photographs of the book, whose contents⁽⁵⁾ have been kept a secret⁽⁶⁾ before the book is published at 12.01 am on Saturday.

Check
vocabulary

- (1) المقدمات الفاتحة
(2) نهائي
(3) من المقرر أن
(4) ينشر
(5) محتويات
(6) ستر

Some websites have removed⁽⁷⁾ the photos after receiving⁽⁸⁾ warnings⁽⁹⁾ from the publisher's⁽¹⁰⁾ lawyers⁽¹¹⁾, but photos of the book can still be read on other sites. It is also claimed⁽¹²⁾ that some people were typing up⁽¹³⁾ copies⁽¹⁴⁾ of the book from the photos to share⁽¹⁵⁾ on social media⁽¹⁶⁾.

This all occurred⁽¹⁷⁾ despite⁽¹⁸⁾ the careful security⁽¹⁹⁾ which has been put in place before the book is published. This included⁽²⁰⁾ asking booksellers⁽²¹⁾ not to tell the media⁽²²⁾ when or if they had copies of the book. The incident⁽²³⁾ highlights⁽²⁴⁾ the problems of online book piracy⁽²⁵⁾, which is becoming much more common⁽²⁶⁾.

Internet cheat ruins Potter surprise

(58 page 7)

Just four days before J.K. Rowling's final book about Harry Potter is published, an internet cheat⁽¹⁾ has shared every page of the book online.

This has ruined⁽²⁾ the surprise for millions of readers, who have been waiting with bated breath⁽³⁾ to find out⁽⁴⁾ what happens to the famous character.

Several websites⁽⁵⁾ show

photographs of every page of Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows, which means that you can read the whole book⁽⁶⁾ online, including⁽⁷⁾ the long-awaited⁽⁸⁾ ending⁽⁹⁾. Lawyers have demanded⁽¹⁰⁾ that the websites stop showing the illegal⁽¹¹⁾ photos, and fortunately⁽¹²⁾ some websites have agreed. However, other people have typed up the text from the photos and are likely to share the story on other websites.

Check
vocabulary

- (1) غشاش
(2) يُخبر
(3) ينتظر بفارغ الصبر
(4) يكشف
(5) مواقع
(6) الكتاب بالكامل
(7) بما في ذلك
(8) طال انتظاره
(9) نهاية
(10) يطالب
(11) غير قانوني
(12) لحسن الحظ

Fans⁽¹⁾ of Harry Potter were shocked⁽¹⁴⁾ by the news⁽¹⁵⁾.
 "It's terrible⁽¹⁶⁾", says Kate Strong from Cambridge, who plans to⁽¹⁷⁾ buy the new book for her children. "The person who has done this should be put in prison⁽¹⁸⁾".

Punished for stealing books! (MS page 2)

An International⁽¹⁾ Crime⁽²⁾ Court⁽³⁾ in Denmark punished⁽⁴⁾ a twenty-year-old student for selling pirated⁽⁵⁾ digital⁽⁶⁾ copies of textbooks⁽⁷⁾. The student said she was only trying to help others buy cheaper books.



The student was punished and required⁽⁸⁾ to pay⁽⁹⁾ a large sum⁽¹⁰⁾ of money for her crime. Her crimes were referred⁽¹¹⁾ to the country's International Crime Court.

Piracy is a Crime! (MS page 2)

In recent⁽¹⁾ news, a former⁽²⁾ Danish⁽³⁾ student in her late 20s was punished for selling⁽⁴⁾ pirated digital copies of textbooks. The criminal lawyer⁽⁵⁾ made it clear⁽⁶⁾ that copying e-books⁽⁷⁾ without the permission⁽⁸⁾ of the author⁽⁹⁾ is a crime.

The criminal lawyer stated⁽¹⁰⁾ that the convict⁽¹¹⁾ has now received a punishment⁽¹²⁾ for violating⁽¹³⁾ copyright⁽¹⁴⁾ law⁽¹⁵⁾. He also said that it is important to understand that even though it is easy to do so, it is a crime to copy e-books without the permission of the author.

When asked to give a reason why she sold books that she does not own⁽¹⁶⁾ rights⁽¹⁷⁾ to, the student said she was helping students obtain⁽¹⁸⁾ books at a lower⁽¹⁹⁾ price. It was made clear to her that copying e-books the one being punished by law, she is also required to pay a large sum of money for the crime of piracy.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عقوبات
- (2) بسم
- (3) خراج
- (4) قطع
- (5) يخطئ ل
- (6) السجن
- (7) دولي
- (8) جريمة
- (9) محكمة
- (10) يعاقب
- (11) فراض - ضروري
- (12) راضي
- (13) كتاب دراسي
- (14) يعطى
- (15) يدفع مل
- (16) مبلغ
- (17) يخطئ - يوق

Check Vocabulary

- (1) حديث
- (2) سابق
- (3) دنماركي
- (4) بيع
- (5) محلي
- (6) واضح
- (7) كتاب الكروني
- (8) ان تصدع
- (9) مؤلف
- (10) يذكروا
- (11) متهمة
- (12) غش
- (13) يتهمة / يذم
- (14) حق النشر
- (15) قانون
- (16) يمتك
- (17) حق
- (18) يحصل على
- (19) اقل
- (20) غير قانوني

Ever Given blocks Suez Canal March 2021

Rescuers⁽¹⁾ have finally moved⁽²⁾ a huge⁽³⁾ ship which was blocking⁽⁴⁾ traffic⁽⁵⁾ going through the Suez Canal. The ship, called the Ever Given, is 400 metres long and weighs⁽⁶⁾ 200,000 tonnes⁽⁷⁾. It is one of the largest of this type of ship in the world.

The ship was travelling through the Suez Canal on 23 March when there was a sand storm⁽⁸⁾. The ship's captain⁽⁹⁾ said that a strong wind spun⁽¹⁰⁾ the ship so that both its front⁽¹¹⁾ and back⁽¹²⁾ hit the sides⁽¹³⁾ of the canal. The result was that no ships could travel past⁽¹⁴⁾ the ship for nearly⁽¹⁵⁾ a week.

Yesterday, more than 380 ships were waiting to pass⁽¹⁶⁾ through the canal. Many ship companies wanted to know if there was another route⁽¹⁷⁾. A few of the ships' captains decided to go around the south of Africa instead⁽¹⁸⁾, but this added about eight days to their journeys. At the same time, some countries announced⁽¹⁹⁾ that they would send products by air, but this is about three times more expensive as sending it by ship.

The accident was terrible for businesses⁽²⁰⁾ around the world. That is because around⁽²¹⁾ 12% of the world's business products⁽²²⁾ pass through the canal each day, so the accident⁽²³⁾ cost⁽²⁴⁾ both Egypt and other countries millions of dollars.

Luckily⁽²⁵⁾, smaller Egyptian boats were finally able to move the Ever Given yesterday.

They did an amazing job. They moved around 30,000 square metres⁽²⁶⁾ of sand under the ship before they took the ship to the Great Bitter Lake⁽²⁷⁾, in the middle⁽²⁸⁾ of the canal. The canal authorities⁽²⁹⁾ told us that they won't know the true⁽³⁰⁾ cause⁽³¹⁾ of the accident until they investigate⁽³²⁾.

Although the canal is open for ships again today, traffic Experts⁽³⁴⁾ are investigating the possible⁽³⁵⁾ casualties⁽³⁶⁾ for all sides. They are also studying the accident carefully to see how Egypt can be compensated⁽³⁷⁾ financially⁽³⁸⁾.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) فرق الإنقاذ
- (2) إنجرت - إنجرت
- (3) هائل الحجم
- (4) يمتد / يعلق
- (5) حركة السير
- (6) بوزن يبلغ
- (7) طن
- (8) عاصفة رملية
- (9) قبطان
- (10) يلف / يغير
- (11) مقدمة
- (12) مؤخرة
- (13) جانب
- (14) يجتاز / يمر من
- (15) تقريبا
- (16) يجتاز / يمر
- (17) مسار / خط سير
- (18) بدلا من
- (19) يعلن
- (20) أنشطة تجارية
- (21) حول / حوالي
- (22) منتجات
- (23) حادث
- (24) يكلف - يكلف
- (25) لخسار
- (26) متر مربع
- (27) البحيرة المرة العظمى
- (28) وسط
- (29) السلطات
- (30) حقيقي / صحيح
- (31) سبب
- (32) يحقق
- (33) طبيعي / عادي
- (34) الخبراء
- (35) ممكن / محتمل
- (36) خسائر
- (37) نفوض
- (38) ماليا

Reporter : What advice would you give to young people listening who want to become journalists ?

Journalist : Get some **experience**⁽¹⁸⁾ on the school newspaper, or work for a local newspaper for free⁽¹⁹⁾. And don't give up⁽²⁰⁾. Keep trying until someone gives you a **chance**⁽²¹⁾. I was working as a **volunteer**⁽²²⁾ and at a shop while I was at university. And I applied for eighteen jobs before I got my first full-time job. 12 years later, I'm still here!

(18) خبرة

(19) مجاناً

(20) يستسلم

(21) فرصة

(22) متطوع

(WB page 3)

Manal : Mum, Soha has broken the computer! It's not working.

Soha : I didn't break it, Manal!

Manal : But you used it last.

Soha : Yes, but it was working when I used it.

Mum : Sorry, girls, I forgot to say that it broke yesterday.

Dad : That computer is always breaking! We need a new one.



Part IV

Language

تم تقسيم القواعد اللغوية علي دروس الوحدة ليتمكن الطالب من إتقانها.

تنويه

Present Perfect simple : active and passive

المضارع التام البسيط : المبني للمعلوم والمبني للمجهول

Active

المبني للمعلوم

I / You / We / They + have ('ve) + P.P.

He / She / It + has ('s) + P.P.

- I have watched a film.

- Omar has bought some CDs.

Passive

المبني للمجهول

Object + have / has + been + P.P.

- A film has been watched (by me).

- Some CDs have been brought (by Omar).

في حال وجود جملة بعد (since) يكون زيارتها ماضي بسيط / مضارع تام.
 يمكن استخدام صيغة زمنية بعد (since) بشرط استخدام (ago) بعد الصيغة:

since + a period of time + ago
 since + a period of time + ago

نذكر أن (since) تستخدم أحياناً بمعنى (because):
 لاحظ أن:

يمكن استخدام الصيغة التالية للحوال عن وقت بداية الحدث:
 لاحظ أن:

Since when + have / has + Subj. + P.P. ?
 (عمر ما زال يعيش في أسوان) Since when have you lived in Aswan, Omar ?

يمكن استخدام الصيغة التالية للحوال عن المدة التي استغرقها الحدث:
 لاحظ أن:

For how long + have / has + Subj. + P.P. ?
 = How long + have / has + Subj. + P.P. for ?
 (عمر لا يزال يعيش في أسوان) For how long have you lived in Aswan, Omar ?

How long have you lived in Aswan for, Omar ?
 (عمر لا يزال يعيش في أسوان) How long have you lived in Aswan for, Omar ?

How long ago + did + Subj. + inf. ?
 (عمر لم يعد يعيش في أسوان) How long ago did you live in Aswan, Omar ?

The difference between the present perfect and the past simple

الفرق بين المضارع التام والماضي البسيط

المضارع التام Present Perfect

الماضي البسيط Past Simple

1. الاهتمام بنتيجة الحدث.
 - They have lost their money.
 (أصبحوا فاسقين)

1. الاهتمام بالحدث نفسه.
 - They lost their money.

2. حدث من فترة قصيرة للتامة.
 - He has just arrived.

2. حدث تم من فترة معينة.
 - He arrived two hours ago.

3. حدث لا يعيد.
 - I haven't seen Mohammed Salah.
 (محمد صلاح حلال حيا و قد زلنا)

3. حدث يستحيل تعديله.
 - I didn't see president Sadat.
 (لأن السادات توفي)

4. حدث تم في فترة لم تنتهي بعد.
 - It hasn't rained this morning.
 (لم ينتهي الصباح بعد وقد تظفر)

4. حدث تم في فترة وانتهت.
 - It didn't rain this morning.
 (النتهي الصباح)

5. حدث أو عادة مستمرة.
 - He has always been fit.
 (استمر على حاله ولم يتغير)

5. حدث أو عادة غير مستمرة.
 - He was always fit.
 (هو كان ولكن الآن أصبح غير لائق بدنياً)

6. زمن غير محدد في الماضي.
 - He has travelled to America.

6. زمن محدد في الماضي.
 - He travelled to America yesterday.

Mini Test 2

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- He has arrived home. Let him relax for a few minutes before you talk to him.
 a. just b. ever c. never d. yet
- I have met some old friends
 a. yet b. lately c. recently d. b & c
- I haven't heard from her ages. I hope she is better.
 a. at b. since c. for d. a & c
- I haven't heard from her last April. I hope she is better.
 a. at b. since c. for d. a & c
- I have watched football matches as long as I can remember.
 a. so b. such c. since d. for
- I have watched football matches my childhood.
 a. so b. such c. since d. for
- We haven't met since we to our new villa.
 a. moved b. move c. were moved d. has moved
- when have you waited for her?
 a. For b. Since c. Ago d. a & c
- how long have you waited for her?
 a. For b. Since c. Ago d. a & c
- How long did you start waiting for her?
 a. for b. since c. ago d. a & c

Extra Notes ملحقات إضافية

First Experience

* لاحظ استخدام الأساليب التالية للتعبير عن المرور بموقف أو تجربة لأول مرة:

Subj. + have/has + never + P.P. ... before (now).
- Ahmed has never visited Paris before (now).

This is the first time + subj. + have / has + (ever) + P.P. ...
- This is the first time Ahmed has (ever) visited Paris.

This is the first time + for + فاعل / ضمير مفعول + to + inf. ...
- This is the first time for Ahmed to visit Paris.

A different Experience

* لاحظ استخدام الأساليب التالية لتمييز موقف أو تجربة عن مواقف سابقة:

..... + subject + have/has + ever + P.P.
- This is the cleverest student I have ever seen.

- That is the most delicious food we have ever eaten.

Subj. + have/has + never + P.P. ... such (a / an) + اسم + صفة + .
- I have never seen such a clever student.

- We have never eaten such delicious food.

Subj. + have/has + never + P.P. ... (a / an) + اسم + صفة + like
- I have never seen a clever student like this (one).

- We have never eaten delicious food like that.

Subj. + have/has + never + P.P. ... (a / an) + اسم + صفة + as +
- I have never seen a student as clever as this (one).

- We have never eaten food as delicious as that.

Subj. + have/has + never + P.P. ... (a / an) + اسم + صفة مقارنة + than
- I have never seen a student cleverer than this (one).

- We have never eaten food more delicious than that.

Last Experience

* لاحظ استخدام الأساليب التالية للتعبير عن آخر حدوث للموقف أو التجربة:

Subj. + haven't / hasn't + P.P. ... + since / for ...
- Zamzam hasn't gone out since Monday.

Subj. + last + تصريف ثان + in / on / at + تعبير زمني ماضي
- Zamzam last went shopping on Monday.

The last time + subj. + تصريف ثان + was + in / on / at + تعبير زمني ماضي
- The last time Zamzam went shopping was on Monday.

- Subj. + haven't / hasn't + P.P. ... + since + past simple جملة ماضي بسيط
- Ahmed hasn't met his grandmother since he was in Assuit.

- Subj. + last + تصريف ثان + when + past simple جملة ماضي بسيط
= Ahmed last met his grandmother when he was in Assuit.

Starting point / duration

* لاحظ استخدام الأساليب التالية للتعبير عن وقت بداية الحدث أو المدة التي استغرقها:

subject + have / has + P.P. ... + for + period
- Mohammed has lived in Aswan for 21 years.

subject + have / has + P.P. ... + since + a point in time
- Mohammed has lived in Aswan since 1999.

subject + started / began + (to + inf. / gerund). + period + ago
- Mohammed started to live (living) in Aswan 21 years ago.

It is + period + since + past simple جملة ماضي بسيط
- It is 21 years since Mohammed started to live in Aswan.

Mini Test 3

● Apply

● ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She has never travelled abroad

a. already b. ago c. now d. before now

2. This is the first time I have seen a real kangaroo.

a. never b. ever c. just d. always

3. This is the first time for me a real kangaroo.

a. see b. have seen c. to see d. to seeing

4. Amira is student I have ever seen.
a. a clever b. clever c. cleverer d. the cleverest
5. I have never seen a student Amira.
a. as clever as b. cleverer than c. the cleverest d. a & b
6. I have never seen a clever student Amira.
a. like b. as c. such d. similar
7. She me at five.
a. has just called b. had just called c. last called d. never call
8. The last time she called me five.
a. at b. was at c. in d. was in
9. She hasn't called me I returned home.
a. when b. after c. before d. since
10. She last called me I returned home.
a. when b. while c. for d. since
11. She to work here two months ago.
a. has started b. hasn't started c. started d. starts
12. It is a week I last went to the club.
a. for b. since c. while d. after

تذكر Remember

The Present Perfect Continuous

المضارع التام المستمر

Form

I/ You / We / They + have ('ve) + been + (inf. + ing) ...

- I have been waiting for half an hour.

He/ She / It + has ('s) + been + (inf. + ing) ...

- Rokaya has been studying English for two years.

Uses of the present perfect continuous

استخدامات المضارع التام المستمر

- ١ حدث بدأ في الماضي وامتد حتى الوقت الحاضر غالباً مع since / for ، لاحظ أن المضارع التام يمكن أن يُستخدم لنفس الغرض:
- Ayman and Ashraf have been talking for the last two hours.
 - Radwa hasn't been working for that company for long.
 - Has Mr Mohammed been teaching at this school for a long time?
 - What have the children been doing for the last few minutes?

٢ في حال عدم وجود (since / for) يكون المضارع التام المستمر أكثر عمومية ليعني في الآونة الأخيرة:

- Recently, he has been feeling unwell.
- Sara has been watching too much television lately.
- Hassan has been feeling a little worried about his job.
- Lisa has not been doing exercise.

The difference between the present perfect simple and continuous

الفرق بين المضارع التام البسيط والمضارع التام المستمر

٣ يُستخدم المضارع التام البسيط للدلالة على حدث تم وله أثر أو نتيجة في المضارع (الأثر أو النتيجة نتجت علي اكتمال أو تمام الحدث):

- He's had his meal, so he is full.
- Rokaya has done the housework, so she can watch TV now.

٤ لكن يُستخدم المضارع التام المستمر للدلالة على حدث له أثر أو نتيجة في المضارع (الأثر أو النتيجة نتجت عن الحدث وليس تمامه):

- I've been having meal so there are plates, spoons and cups all over the table.
- Rokaya has been doing the housework, so she looks very tired.

٥ يُستخدم المضارع التام فقط وليس المضارع التام المستمر عند ذكر العدد أو الكم، ومن الكلمات الدالة على ذلك:

two / three / many / a few / few / several / a lot of / lots of / all / plenty of ...+ مفعول جمع

- He has been drinking three cups of tea this evening. (X)
- He has drunk three cups of tea this evening. (✓)
- He has been drinking at least a litre of tea this evening. (X)
- He has drunk at least a litre of tea this evening. (✓)
- I have been meeting many customers recently. (X)
- I have met many customers recently. (✓)

٦ يُستخدم المضارع التام فقط وليس المضارع التام المستمر مع الأفعال اللحظية أو الأفعال التقريرية (أفعال الإدراك والمشاعر والحواس والتملك... الخ):

- A fast car has been crashing into a rock by the road. (X)
- A fast car has crashed into a rock by the road. (✓)
- We have been owning this flat for 15 years. (X)
- We have owned this flat for 15 years. (✓)
- She has been knowing these friends for a year. (X)
- She has known these friends for a year. (✓)

General Exercise On Language Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I Getting Started

1. In the last two hours, I my lessons. (نموذج الوزارة الأول ٢٠٢٠)
a. had revised b. have revised c. revise d. revised
2. So far, many schools in rural and urban areas. (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠٢٠)
a. will have been built b. are building
c. have been built d. were built
3. Oh! I my mobile. What can I do? (دور أول ٢٠١٩)
a. broke b. had broken c. was broken d. have broken
4. He to the bank to draw some money. He will be back in half an hour. (أزهر ٢٠١٩ - علمي)
a. has been b. has gone c. had been d. was going
5. Dr Tamer four patients so far this morning. (أزهر ٢٠١٩ - أدبي)
a. had seen b. has seen c. saw d. was seen
6. Nothing like this to her. (دور ثان ٢٠١٩)
a. had happened b. has never happened
c. has ever happened d. happened
7. My uncle to Germany lately.
a. is b. will be c. has been d. is being
8. I the Olympic Games every four years for my whole life.
a. was watching b. am watching c. have watched d. watched
9. You look pale. to you?
a. Has anything happened b. Has anything been happened
c. Had anything happened d. Was anything happening
10. I haven't seen Mr Ayman
a. long time ago b. recently c. lately d. b & c
11. He the piano since he was eight.
a. plays b. is playing c. has played d. had played
12. We haven't seen him over a year.
a. since b. for c. from d. in
13. A: been to Aswan? B: Not yet.
a. Had you ever b. Have you ever
c. Have you never d. You have never

14. Fareed is still at the office. He all night and he is very tired.
a. has been working b. works
c. had worked d. has worked
15. A long time has passed I saw him.
a. as long as b. because c. since d. until
16. Rania as a doctor for the last ten years.
a. has been working b. worked
c. had worked d. is working
17. We our old friends for a year. They are too busy.
a. hadn't met b. didn't meet
c. haven't met d. haven't been met
18. I the Olympic Games all evening and now I'm going to bed.
a. was watching b. have been watching
c. have watched d. watched
19. It for the past three hours.
a. was rained b. had rained c. was raining d. has been raining
20. Sara to call Rania all afternoon, but each time she calls the number is busy.
a. has been trying b. has tried c. tried d. is trying

II Special Cases

21. He wanted to know I have been a member in this sports club.
a. since how long b. for how long c. for when d. how long ago
22. My car down, so I have to call a mechanic at once.
a. broke down b. has broken
c. had broken d. has been breaking
23. I the kitchen all morning – and mum says it's still dirty.
a. have cleaned b. clean
c. am cleaning d. have been cleaning
24. Survivors of this morning's accident to the city's main hospital.
a. have been taken b. have taken
c. took d. have been taking
25. I all my homework and now I am ready to go out!
a. have been finished b. finish
c. have been finishing d. have finished

26. What your mother for her birthday tomorrow?
 a. have you been buying b. have you bought
 c. you bought d. had you bought
27. I started my job. I have met important people from all over the world.
 a. For b. Since c. Until d. When
28. The committee members' disagreement caused a serious problem.
 a. has b. have c. was d. were
29. Why away last week-end?
 a. didn't you go b. won't you go
 c. are you going d. haven't you gone
30. It very cold lately, but it's just beginning to get warmer.
 a. hasn't been b. has been c. is d. had been
31. I working with my company but now I want to look for another job.
 a. enjoyed b. enjoying c. have enjoyed d. enjoyed to
32. So far today, I e-mails to six of my friends to tell them the good news.
 a. wrote b. am writing c. have been writing d. have written
33. The library hours for today. The library opens at 11 o'clock tomorrow.
 a. have finished b. have been finished
 c. have been finishing d. finish
34. This is the first time for Jane her car alone.
 a. to fix b. has fixed c. had fixed d. fixed
35. Rokaya three tests this month.
 a. has taken b. has been taking
 c. had taken d. had been taken
36. I can't remember the last time I to the cinema.
 a. have been b. will go c. went d. am going
- III Check your understanding**
37. She has been to America. This means that she there.
 a. is still b. is no longer c. will be d. won't be

38. Mai has never flown before this time. This means
 a. it is the first time for Mai to fly
 b. Mai has flown once before this time
 c. we do not know if Mai has flown before or not
 d. Mai has flown before that time
39. Rodayna is the cleverest girl I have ever known. This means
 a. Rodayna is as clever as some girls I have known before
 b. Rodayna is less clever than some girls I have known before
 c. Rodayna is cleverer than some girls I have known before
 d. Rodayna is cleverer than all girls I have known before
40. I have never eaten such a delicious meal. I mean that
 a. I am not enjoying the meal I am eating
 b. I am enjoying the meal I am eating
 c. the meal I am eating is not delicious
 d. the meal I am eating is not as delicious as meals I have eaten before
41. Sama is the kindest friend I have ever had. This means
 a. I have never known kind friends.
 b. I have ever known kind friends.
 c. Sama is kinder than my other friends.
 d. Sama is as kind as than my other friends.
42. I have never gone fishing. This means
 a. this is the first time for me to go fishing.
 b. I went fishing but I can't remember.
 c. I have ever gone fishing.
 d. I haven't ever gone fishing.
43. My wife hasn't gone out since Friday. This means
 a. my wife last went out on Friday.
 b. my wife didn't go out on Friday.
 c. my wife has gone out on Friday.
 d. my wife hasn't gone out on Friday.
44. I have lived in Edfu since 1999. This means
 a. I lived in Edfu in 1999.
 b. I have been lived in Edfu since 1999.
 c. I started to live in Edfu in 1999.
 d. I left Edfu in 1999.

45. I haven't gone shopping for a week. I mean to say that
- I didn't go shopping last week.
 - it is a week since I last went shopping.
 - I didn't go shopping a week ago.
 - I wanted to go shopping last week.

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I have never known honest people.
a. such b. such a c. such an d. like
- I a cake. Would you like some?
a. 've been making b. 've made
c. 'd been made d. 'd been making
- One Thousand and One Nights many times.
a. has told b. has been told
c. was telling d. told
- What have you that you would like to do?
a. ever done b. done ever
c. never done d. done never
- How long have you studied English?
a. since b. for c. yet d. ago

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	كلمة (people) بمعنى الناس اسم جمع لا يأخذ (a/an)
2.	b	التركيز هنا على اكتمال الحدث الذي تم بالفعل (بدليل أننا نعرض على شخص ما أن يتناول البعض منها) فنستخدم المضارع التام البسيط المبني للمعلوم
3.	b	الجملة مبنية للمجهول
4.	c	المعنى المقصود هو (ما الذي لم تفعله أبدًا وتتمنى أن تفعله) لذلك نستخدم (never).
5.	b	السؤال عن المدة (how long) لذلك نستخدم (for) التي يأتي بعدها مدة.



Part I

Vocabulary & Definitions

• اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
• المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

balanced(adj)	متوازن - عادل	misleading(adj/n)	مُضِلِّل - التضليل
bias(ed) (v)	موضوعي	omission(n)	الحذف - الاستبعاد
bias(n)	يَحْزُب - يَحْزَب	placement(n)	وَضْع (شيء في مكان مُعَيَّن)
citizen journalism(n)	يُحَرِّض	point of view	رأي / وجهة نظر
mislead - misled (v)	يَحْزُب - يَحْزَب	spin (n)	تلفيق - تزيب الأمور
	يُضِلِّل - يَضِلُّ	spin - spun (v)	يُقْنِع بتزيين الكلام (يُحَوِّر)
	صحافة المواطن	inaccurate(adj)	خاطئ - غير دقيق

2 Important Vocabulary

access(n)	صلاحية استخدام - حق الدخول	restate(d) (v)	يعيد صياغة
affairs(n)	شئون - أحداث	share(d) (v)	يُشَارِك - يتقاسم
anxious(adj)	شاعر بالتوتر / القلق	slide(n)	شريحة - زحليقة
available(adj)	متاح	slide- slid (v)	يتزلق - يتزحلق
brainstorm(ed) (v)	يستثير الفكر - يعصف ذهنيًا	snowstorm(n)	عاصفة جليدية
certain(adj)	مُعَيَّن - مُحدَّد	social (adj)	اجتماعي
constant(adj)	ثابت - مستمر	spade(n)	جاروف
current(adj)	حالي - جاري	stressed(adj)	مضغوط - تحت ضغط
cycle(d)(n/v)	دورة - يقود دراجة	summarise/ze(d) (v)	يُلْخَص - يختصر
effort(n)	جهد	summary(n)	تلخيص - خلاصة
impact(ed) (n/v)	أثر - تأثير - يؤثر	support(ed) (v/n)	يدعم - الدعم
impression(n)	انطباع - أثر	survey(n)	بحث استطلاعي
objective(adj/n)	موضوعي - منطقي - هدف	traditional(adj)	تقليدي
persuade(d) (v)	يُقْنِع	trap(ped) (v), (n)	يحتجز - يحبس - يوقع به - فخ
persuasive(adj)	إقناعي / مقنع	trust(ed) (v/n)	يثق به - الثقة
regular(adj)	منتظم	update(d) (n/v)	تحديث - يُحدَّث
responsibility(n)	مسؤولية	up-to-date(adj)	حديث

3 Definitions تعريفات

balanced(adj) متوازن - مُعَادِل	- giving equal متساوي attention to all sides or opinions
bias(n) تَحَايُز - تَحَرُّب - تَحْيِيز	- an opinion about whether a person, group, or idea is good or bad that influences يؤثر على how you deal with it
citizen journalism(n) صحافة المواطن	- reports and pictures of events recorded مُسَجَّلَة by ordinary people and shown especially on the internet
inaccurate(adj) خاطئ / غير دقيق	- not completely correct
mislead - misled (v) يُضِلُّ / يخدع	- to make someone believe something that is not true by giving them information that is false or not complete
omission(n) الحذف - الإستهتار	- the act of not including somebody/something or not doing something - the fact of not being included or done
placement(n) وَضْع (شيء في مكان مُعَيَّن)	- the act of placing something somewhere
point of view رأي / وجهة نظر	- the particular attitude or opinion that somebody has about something
spin(n) تلفيق - خُطُّ الأمور	- the way someone talks about information or a situation, especially in order to influence the way people think about it

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Key & Important vocabulary

- Social media has made possible.
a. responsibility
b. omission
c. citizen journalism
d. journalism
- Having a/an diet keeps you healthy and fit.
a. balanced
b. misleading
c. inaccurated
d. available

Read all about it !

- The of the article in the first pages shows it is very important.
a. fairness b. bias c. placement d. support
- This referee has a clear towards our team. He didn't even consult the VAR room about the penalty.
a. fairness b. bias c. placement d. support
- The salesman tried to persuade me to buy by putting a positive on the advantages of their products.
a. spade b. trap c. bias d. spin
- The of some data will make it impossible to understand the situation well.
a. responsibility b. omission
c. citizen journalism d. journalism
- He didn't get high marks in the exam because some of his answers were
a. balanced b. misleading c. inaccurate d. available
- Taking the wrong decision is the direct result of information.
a. balanced b. misleading c. accurate d. available
- "This is a misleading report". In this sentence, "misleading" is a/an
a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb
- "Misleading voters التاخير is a crime". In this sentence, "misleading" is a/an
a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb
- Bullying is a problem. It affects all members of a community.
a. certain b. stressed c. social d. up-to-date
- You need to this mobile application.
a. brainstorm b. update c. trap d. summarise
- Don't interfere تتدخل with other people's
a. surveys b. slides c. updates d. affairs
- The death of her aunt had a sad on her.
a. impact b. effort c. objective d. slide
- But for your, I wouldn't have solved my problems.
a. persuade b. support c. slide d. trust

16. The writer of this article left out information to mislead the readers.
a. certain b. stressed c. social d. false
17. The manager asked Rahma to the long report for him.
a. brainstorm b. update c. trap d. summarise
18. Sending and receiving emails is one of the secretary's
a. surveys b. responsibilities c. updates d. impacts
19. Revising 'The present perfect' is one of the of Unit 1.
a. impacts b. efforts c. objectives d. slides
20. I his thinking because he is wise.
a. persuade b. skid c. slide d. trust
21. I'm by the amount of work I have to do every day.
a. certain b. stressed c. social d. up-to-date
22. Mr Ashraf his students to encourage them to read the passage.
a. brainstormed b. updated c. trapped d. summarised
23. I've downloaded the latest Facebook
a. surveys b. responsibilities c. updates d. affairs
24. The great Dr Alaa had made saved the injured man's life.
a. impacts b. efforts c. objectives d. slides
25. Don't try to me to waste my time chatting online.
a. persuade b. support c. slide d. trust
26. El-Moasser has information about the new types of exam questions.
a. petrified b. stressed c. social d. up-to-date
27. The door closed and the cat was in the bathroom.
a. brainstormed b. updated c. trapped d. summarised
28. Doing aims at collecting accurate information.
a. surveys b. responsibilities c. updates d. affairs
29. I used Powerpoint to make my presentation.
a. impacts b. efforts c. objectives d. slides
30. I on the icy ground and broke my leg.
a. persuaded b. supported c. slid d. trusted
31. In the past, there was strong cultural against women.
a. event b. cliffhanger c. celebrity d. bias

2 Definitions

32. is an opinion about whether a person, group, or idea is good or bad that influences how you deal with it.
a. Placement b. Omission c. Spin d. Bias
33. Your is the particular attitude or opinion that you have about something.
a. citizen journalism b. point of view
c. exaggeration d. the act of placement
34. is the way someone talks about information or a situation, especially in order to influence the way people think about it.
a. Placement b. Omission c. Spin d. Bias
35. To is to make someone believe something that is not true by giving them information that is false or not complete.
a. petrify b. mislead c. skid d. plunge
36. The adjective means not completely correct.
a. balance b. balanced c. accurate d. inaccurate
37. means reports and pictures of events recorded by ordinary people and shown especially on the internet.
a. Citizen journalism b. Point of view
c. Exaggeration d. The act of placement
38. To be means giving equal attention to all sides or opinions.
a. balance b. balanced c. accurate d. inaccurate
39. is the act of finding somebody a suitable job or place to live.
a. Placement b. Omission c. Spin d. Bias

Part II Vocabulary Study

تتويبه ساعد معلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلزمات لفظية

avoid	the negative effects يتجنب الآثار السلبية	have	a negative impact on له تأثير سلبي على
become	the main source of يصبح المصدر الرئيسي لـ		a social responsibility عليه مسئولية اجتماعية
brainstorm	ideas يستشير أفكار		internet access لديه إمكانية الدخول على الإنترنت

get	anxious قلق - يقلق regular updates تحديثات منتظمة	make صنع spread نشر suggest اقتراح support دعم take أخذ	every effort كل جهد false information معلومات خاطئة a solution حل your opinion رأيك a photo صورة
give	a lecture محاضرة reasons أسباب		
keep	up-to-date with مواكب		

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mr Ayman asked us to ideas to support our opinions.
a. support b. avoid c. become d. brainstorm
- I have to every effort to solve this problem.
a. keep b. give c. make d. suggest
- It's better if you regular updates for the applications on your tablet.
a. get b. give c. spread d. complain
- You need to know how the negative effects of social media can be
a. made b. avoided c. become d. brainstormed
- We must up-to-date with the latest advancements in science and technology.
a. keep b. give c. make d. suggest
- Losing the match a negative impact on the team's fans.
a. avoided b. took c. had d. complained
- The Egyptian Knowledge Bank has the main source of professional educational support.
a. supported b. avoided c. become d. brainstormed
- The last lecture Dr Samira was about improving the listening skill.
a. kept b. gave c. told d. suggested
- It's a crime to false information.
a. get b. take c. spread d. complain

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
balanced(adv)	موازن - عادل
bias(n)	تحيز - تحيز
inaccurate(adv)	خاطئ - غير دقيق
misleading(adv)	مضل
omission(n)	الحذف
	fair / unbiased / objective prejudice / partiality inexact / imprecise / incorrect / wrong deceptive / confusing / deceiving / false / ambiguous deletion / leaving out / exclusion

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
balanced(adv)	موازن
bias(n)	تحيز - تحيز
inaccurate(adv)	خاطئ - غير دقيق
omission(n)	الحذف
	biased / partial / imbalanced objectivity / fairness / impartiality accurate / exact addition / inclusion

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 'Omission' and 'inclusion' are
a. synonyms b. antonyms
c. acronyms d. adjectives
- "The omission of the verb makes the sentence meaningless". In this sentence, 'omission' can be replaced by
a. leaving-out b. addition c. deletion d. a & c
- "The content of this report is misleading". The synonym of "misleading" in this context is
a. false b. correct c. true d. accurate
- When someone is biased, he is not expected to give a/an opinion.
a. partial b. unfair c. balanced d. unjust

1

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
balance توازن - موازن	balance توازن - ميزان	balanced موازن - متزن - متوازن موضوعي	
bias يتحيز - يتحيز - يميل موضوعي	bias تحيز - تحيز - تحيز موضوعي	biased/biased متحيز - متحيز - متحيز unbiased موضوعي	
	accuracy الدقة	accurate دقيق - مضبوط	accurately بدقة
	inaccuracy عدم الدقة	inaccurate خاطئ - غير دقيق	
mislead يضل - يضل	misleading تضليل - خداع	misleading مضل - مضلل	misleadingly بشكل مضلل
omit(ied) يغفل - يستبعد	omission الغفل - الإجماع	omitted مغفل - محذوف	
place يضع	placement وضع - ترتيب - تنظيم		

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It is not honest أمين to others.
a. mislead b. misleading c. place d. placement
2. This article has information. The writer wants to influence the readers dishonestly.
a. mislead b. misleading c. place d. placement
3. There's too much in your article against the other team.
a. accurate b. inaccurate c. bias d. biased
4. As a football fan, I am I support Liverpool.
a. accurate b. inaccurate c. bias d. biased
5. We have to freedom of opinion against public interest.
a. balance b. balanced c. omit d. omission

6. Freedom of opinion is against public interest.
a. balance b. balanced c. omit d. omission
7. Don't depend on this information in making the final decision.
a. accurate b. inaccurate c. accuracy d. accurately
8. To be a good learner of English, one should be keen on his fluency and
a. accurate b. accurately c. accuracy d. inaccuracy
9. To show that an article is important, the editor it in the first page.
a. misleads b. misleading c. places d. placement

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات ومصطلحات

careful about معرض على	post ... on social media يُنشر ... على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
constant cycle خلفية / دورة مُعقدة	present ... as ... يُقدم ... ك...
current affairs الأحداث الحاضرة	record snowstorm عاصفة ثلجية استثنائية / شديدة
in general, بصفة عامة	share ... on social media يشارك ... على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
people with spades اشخاص معهم مجارف	social responsibility مسئولية اجتماعية
positives and negatives إيجابيات وسلبيات	

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

agree with يتفق مع / يوافق على	sum up يُلخص
dig out يستخرج / ينقب عن	trap ... in يحبس ... في
leave out يستبعد - يهمل	

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A gang of thieves were arrested while digging ancient Egyptian antiquities.
a. out b. from c. with d. to
2. Leave the students who failed the exam from the school trip.
a. down b. up c. in d. out

3. Mum went out and locked the door leaving me trapped my room.
a. down b. up c. in d. out
4. Ahmed presented me to his friends his teacher.
a. to b. as c. on d. from

7 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات الرئيسية

balance

- **balance (n)** إتران - توازن - تكافؤ \neq **imbalance** اختلال التوازن
- He lost his **balance** and fell to the ground.
- Man has upset the **balance** of nature.
- **balance (n)** رصيد (في الحساب البنكي)
- I was surprised to know that my father's **balance** is zero.
- **the balance (n)** المخزون/المتبقي = **the rest**
- The **balance** of cheese in the market is nearly nothing.
- **balance (n)** ميزان = **scales**
- Most shopkeepers now have digital **balances**.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- **keep your balance** اتزانك \neq **lose your balance** تفقد اتزانك
- **the balance of power** توازن القوى - **the balance of nature** توازن الطبيعة
- **balance (d) (v)** يوازن - يُعادل - يتوازن
- I put just enough sugar to **balance** the acidity of lemon.
- Can you **balance** this dish on your head without using your hands?
- **balanced (adj)** متوازن - محايد - موضوعي = **fair**
- The reporter gave a **balanced** view of what happened.
- **balanced (adj)** متوازن
- You need to follow a **balanced** diet to keep fit.
- **balanced (adj)** عاقل - حكيم \neq **unbalanced** طائش - متهور
- I like the fact that she is a **balanced** person.

bias

- **bias (ed) against (v)** يُحرض علي
- This journalist has **biased** the fans **against** the captain of the team.
- **bias (ed) (v)** يؤثر سلباً علي
- His wife's opinion has **biased** his decision.

- **bias (towards/in favour of /against) (n)** تحيز (مع/ضد)
- All students should be evaluated without **bias**.
- **biases/biased (towards/in favour of/against) (adj)** متحيز (مُتَحَيِّز)
- Some journalists are clearly **biased** towards businessmen.

placement

- **place (n)** مكان - موضع
- I couldn't find an empty **place** in the street to park my car.
- There's no **place** in the group for a troublemaker. مُثير للشغب
- **place (n)** دور
- I am against the idea that a woman's **place** is in the home.
- **place (d) (v)** يضع (في مكان) / يجعل شيء عُرضَةً لـ = **put**
- Sama **placed** the vase carefully on the table.
- Never **place** your children at risk.
- A good student **places** their education above having fun.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- **take place** يحدث = **happen**
- **in somebody's place** بدلاً من - **in high places** ذو سلطة - نفوذ
- **placement (n)** توظيف - إلحاق بـ - إيواء
- This charity جمعية خيرية provides a job **placement** service.
- The **placement** of homeless children costs much money.
- **placement (= work placement) (n)** تدريب عملي (كجزء من برنامج دراسي)
- When I was a student in the faculty of education, كلية التربية, I was sent out on **placement** as a training.
- **placement (n)** وُضع في مكان أو موضع مُعَيَّن
- The editor of a newspaper controls the **placement** of news stories according to importance.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Don't expect Omar to take a quick decision. He is a/an person who thinks carefully first.
a. biased b. balanced c. stressed d. available

2. Sadly, some people in Europe and the USA still have against the black.
- a. responsibility b. impact c. support d. bias
3. His refusal has me in a tight corner.
- a. brainstormed b. summarised c. placed d. impacted
4. I had a three-month in the sugar factory.
- a. placement b. omission c. effort d. trust
5. Don't try to put a on your exam results. You have got low marks in all subjects.
- a. bias b. placement c. spin d. plunge

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	- الاختيار المناسب حسب سياق الجملة هو (balanced)
2.	d	- التعبير (have bias against) يعني (تُحيز ضد)، وهو ما يتفق مع السياق السلبي الذي يوحى به الطرف (sadly)
3.	c	- الفعل (place) يعني (أُضِع) أي (وضع) وهو ما يتفق مع باقي السياق، والتعبير الذي بعد النقط (in a tight corner) يعني (موقف صعب)
4.	a	- كلمة (placement) هنا تعني (تدريب عملي)
5.	c	- كلمة (spin) هنا تعني (إزتين/اختلاق)، أو ما يقال عنه بالعامية (حوار)

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

Social Media has a negative impact on news and society

Social media has become the main⁽¹⁾ source⁽²⁾ of news. These days sixty-eight percent of people who have internet access⁽³⁾ get their news from social media. Although⁽⁴⁾ this means that we can find news easily and get regular⁽⁵⁾ updates⁽⁶⁾ on our phones, in my view⁽⁷⁾ I think that social media has a negative⁽⁸⁾ impact⁽⁹⁾ on news and society.



(58 page 11)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) رئيسي
- (2) مصدر
- (3) إمكانية الوصول
- (4) برغم أن
- (5) منتظم
- (6) تحديثات
- (7) في رأيي
- (8) سلبي
- (9) أثر

To begin with⁽¹⁰⁾, this constant⁽¹¹⁾ cycle⁽¹²⁾ of news, which is mostly bad, can make people stressed⁽¹³⁾ and worried. A recent survey⁽¹⁴⁾ found that more than half of Americans say they get anxious⁽¹⁵⁾ and sleep badly because of⁽¹⁶⁾ the news.

Next⁽¹⁷⁾, not everything we read or see on social media is true⁽¹⁸⁾ or legal⁽¹⁹⁾. If we share it, before checking⁽²⁰⁾ the facts, we might spread⁽²¹⁾ false⁽²²⁾ information. In turn, this means that the public⁽²³⁾ will stop trusting journalists.

In addition, piracy is very common⁽²⁴⁾ on social media. It is very easy to copy books, films and music and to share them, but this means that the people who wrote the books or made the films and music do not get any money for their work.

Lastly⁽²⁵⁾, social media starts to control what news we see and don't see. Our social media 'friends' become the 'managing'⁽²⁶⁾ editors⁽²⁷⁾. They share news stories they like and agree with, so the news we see is not balanced⁽²⁸⁾ or objective⁽²⁹⁾.

In summary⁽³⁰⁾, whilst⁽³¹⁾ it is a good thing that we have so much news available⁽³²⁾ and it is easy to keep up-to-date⁽³³⁾ with current⁽³⁴⁾ affairs⁽³⁵⁾, we need to avoid the negative effects. It's important to be careful about where we get our news and how often we check it. We also have a social responsibility⁽³⁶⁾ to make every effort⁽³⁷⁾ not to spread inaccurate⁽³⁸⁾ or misleading⁽³⁹⁾ news and not to copy artistic content⁽⁴⁰⁾ without permission

- (10) في البداية
- (11) مستمر/اليت
- (12) دورة/حلقة
- (13) مضطرب
- (14) بحث استطلاعي
- (15) شاعر بالوقت
- (16) بسبب
- (17) ثم
- (18) صحيح
- (19) قانوني / شرعي
- (20) مراجعة
- (21) ينشر
- (22) خاطئ
- (23) الجمهور
- (24) شائع
- (25) أخيراً
- (26) مُنحَكَم
- (27) المُحرِّرين
- (28) متوازن
- (29) موضوعي
- (30) باختصار
- (31) بينما
- (32) مُنَاح
- (33) حديث
- (34) حالي
- (35) شئون/الاحداث
- (36) مسئولية
- (37) جهد
- (38) غير دقيق
- (39) مُضِل
- (40) محتوى فني

Note : Spin is a type of media bias. Some journalists use words and phrases to support or oppose a service, product, or even one idea.

Tarek's reports are not inaccurate :

He does not want to mislead you and the reports tell you what really happened in the match. After all, he cannot change the result!

We still need guidebooks because we cannot rely on the opinion of people online.

(WB page 5)

With today's social media, it is possible to find online reviews of everything from a local park or café to a famous restaurant or museum. Before you book a holiday, you can read what other people think of a hotel or car hire company and what they recommend you do when you get there. Although this means you can get information very easily, in my view, this is not as useful information as you can get from a guidebook.



To begin with, we need to ask ourselves why people write reviews online. Whilst it is sometimes because people like writing their opinions, at other times they have a reason for writing it. Perhaps they know the owners of the café, or perhaps they are the owners of the café! That is why they give it a good review.

Secondly, who are the people writing the reviews ? It is difficult to know this information. If they are 50-year-old Europeans, will they have the same opinion as you ? It is very hard to know if you are going to like the same places that they like.

Lastly, we need to remember that guidebook writers are usually experts. You can trust them for accurate information and a balanced point of view. They also know who is using their books, so if the book is intended to be for young people, they will recommend places that young people will like.

To conclude, online reviews are useful, but it's important to remember that they are just people's opinions. If you want to know what experts think, personally I think you should buy a guidebook.

Part IV

Language

Past Simple and Past Continuous

1

Past Simple : active and passive المبنى البسيط : المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول

Active

المبنى للمعلوم

Subj. + s.c. + الفاعل ...

(إثبات)

Subj. + didn't + inf. + المصدر ...

(نفي)

- Tom bought some books.

- Fredrik didn't play chess last weekend.

لاحظ استخدام (never) للنفي القاطع لحدث شيء في الماضي.

- When I was in primary school, I never went to school late.

Passive

المبنى للمجهول

Object + was / were + P.P. ...

- Some books were bought (by Tom).

- Chess wasn't played (by Fredrik) last week.

Interrogative

الاستفهام

Did + subj. + inf. ... ?

(سؤال بـ "هل")

- Did you finish your paragraph ?

- Yes, I did.

- No, I didn't

Q.W. + أداة استفهام + did + subj. + inf. ... ?

(سؤال بـ "أداة استفهام")

- Where did you park your car, Moataz ?

تذكر :

لا بد أن يكون الفعل في المصدر (inf.) بعد (did / didn't) :

- I didn't have a car when I was young.

- Did you feel worried about the exams ?

- How did you cook that delicious meal ?

Mini Test 1

Apply

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Sama me with my homework two hours ago.
a. helped b. was helped c. helps d. am helped
- I with my homework two hours ago.
a. helped b. was helped c. helps d. am helped
- I lunch. Mum did that.
a. cooked b. was cooked c. didn't cook d. wasn't cooked
- Lunch by me. Mum did that.
a. cooked b. was cooked c. didn't cook d. wasn't cooked
- the children to school in your car?
a. You took b. Did you take
c. you were taken d. Were you taken
- to school in your car?
a. You took b. Did you take
c. The children were taken d. Were the children taken
- A: What to solve the problem? B: I paid the bill.
a. you did b. did you do c. you were done d. were done
- A: What to solve the problem? B: I paid the bill.
a. you did b. did you c. you were done d. was done

Uses of the Past Simple

استخدامات الماضي البسيط

- حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي :
- President Sadat **took** the decision of war in **October 1973**.
- سرد أحداث وقعت في الماضي :
- **Yesterday evening**, I **did** my homework. Then I **watched** a film. Finally, I **went** to bed.
- في الحالة الشرطية الثانية (التعبير عن حدث غير محتمل في الحاضر) :
- If I **had** a car, I'd drive you to school.
- يستخدم مع الماضي البسيط تعبيرات زمنية مثل :
yesterday - ago منذ - last الماضي - once مرة - the other day - in the past
- always - sometimes - usually - often / in 2012..... etc.

64

Used to + inf.

اعتاد أن

- تستخدم (used to + inf.) للتعبير عن عادات كانت في الماضي لم تعد موجودة الآن :
- When I was young, I **used to spend** the weekend in the countryside.
- تستخدم (was / were + used to + n. / inf. + ing) لتدل على أن شيء ما كان معتاداً في الماضي :
- They **were used to working** in the fields.
- I **was used to eating** salty food.
- تستخدم (got / became + used to + n. / inf. + ing) لتدل على التعود :
- Mohammed **got used to the hot weather** of Aswan.
- I **became used to living** in the desert.
- لاحظ أن :
- Subj. + used to + inf.
= Subj. + no longer بعد لم + inf. (inf. + s / es / ies)
= Subj. + don't / doesn't + inf. ... + any more / any longer.
- I **used to go** to bed late.
= I **no longer go** to bed late.
= I **don't go** to bed late **any more**.
- لاحظ استخدام (used to) بمعنى (يستخدم في) في الصيغة التالية:

obj. + be + used +
 to + inf.
 for + (inf. + ing)

- A knife **is used to** cut food.
- A knife **is used for** cutting food.

Mini Test 2

Apply

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Leen used her best at school.
a. do b. to do c. to doing d. doing
- Leen got used her best at school.
a. do b. to do c. to doing d. doing
- I watching football matches in the stadium.
a. am used to b. used to c. used for d. was used for

4. Cotton was used paper.

- a. for making b. to making c. to make d. a & c

5. I some old friends the other day.

- a. meet b. met c. have met d. am meeting

Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

١ بالنسبة للفعل (be) في الماضي البسيط ، نستخدم (was / were) ولا نستخدم (did) كتمل مساعد في النفي أو السؤال:

- She didn't be late yesterday. (X)
- She wasn't late yesterday. (✓)
- Where did you be last Friday evening? (X)
- Where were you last Friday evening? (✓)

٢ بالنسبة للفعل (had) في الماضي البسيط نستخدم (did) معهما كتمل مساعد في النفي أو السؤال:

- I hadn't meat for lunch. (X)
- I didn't have meat for lunch. (✓)
- Had you a shower yesterday? (X)
- Did you have a shower yesterday? (✓)

٣ يمكن استخدام (did) قبل الفعل الأساسي في الجمل المثبتة بشكل بلاغي للتأكيد على المعنى المقصود:
- Mariam did want to go to the party, but she had to look after his baby sister.

٤ يستخدم الماضي البسيط بعد التعبيرات الآتية للتعبير عن شيء غير متحقق في الواقع:

- I wish / It's (high) time / I'd rather + subj. فاعل ماضى بسيط + فاعل ماضى بسيط + فاعل ماضى بسيط
- I wish I were a doctor. I don't earn enough money as an engineer.
- It's time the secretary sent the report. I don't know why she hasn't sent it yet.
- I would rather you didn't call me so late. I go to bed early.
يستخدم الماضي التام وليس الماضي البسيط بعد التعبيرات السابقة في حالة استخدام تعبير زمني دال على الماضي:
- I wish I had taken a rest yesterday.

Mini Test 3

Apply

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Mr Ashraf at home yesterday.

- a. hasn't been b. didn't be c. wasn't

d. wasn't being

66

Read all about it !

2. I any drinks for breakfast this morning.

- a. haven't b. hadn't c. didn't have d. had

3. I called you because I who took your tablet.

- a. will know b. did know c. knows d. knowing

4. I'd rather you my tablet.

- a. don't take b. haven't taken c. hadn't taken d. didn't take

5. I'd rather you my tablet yesterday.

- a. don't take b. haven't taken c. hadn't taken d. didn't take

2 Past Continuous : active and passive الماضي المستمر : المبني للمعلوم والمبني للمجهول

Active

المبني للمعلوم

Subj. الفاعل + was / were + (inf. + ing) ...

- She was watching a film at nine o'clock yesterday.

Passive

المبني للمجهول

Object المفعول + was / were + being + P.P. ...

- A film was being watched (by her) at nine o'clock yesterday.

Uses of the Past Continuous

استخدامات الماضي المستمر

١ التعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي:

- I was having lunch at two o'clock yesterday.

٢ التعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي عندما قطعه (وقع) حدث آخر:

- I was reading a story when I fell asleep in my chair.

٣ التعبير عن أحداث متزامنة (حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي):

- I was watching a match on TV while my children were playing in the garden.

Mini Test 4

Apply

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. At three yesterday, the mechanic my car engine.

- a. checks b. is checked
c. was checking d. was being checked

2. At three yesterday, my car engine

- a. checks b. is checked
c. was checking d. was being checked

67

3. My shirt was ironed yesterday at 7:30.
a. be b. been c. being d. having
4. While Salma was swimming in the pool, her aunt to music.
a. listens b. was listening c. is listening d. listen
5. What when I saw you yesterday ?
a. happened b. has happened c. was happened d. happens

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ لاحظ استخدام الروابط الزمنية التالية مع الماضي المستمر والماضي البسيط:
أ. للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا وقطعة حدث آخر:

While / As / Just as / When + past (continuous), past simple

- While / As / Just as he **was doing** his homework, a friend **phoned** him.
= A friend **phoned** him **while / as / just as** he **was doing** his homework.

When + past simple, past (continuous)

- He **was doing** his homework **when** a friend **phoned** him.
= **When** a friend **phoned** him, he **was doing** his homework.

ب. للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي:

While / As / Just as + Past Cont. ماضي مستمر. ماضي مستمر.

- **While** she **was drawing** a picture, her sister **was singing**.

٢ لاحظ ما يلي جيدا:

- **While + sentence** جملة كاملة

- **While + (inf. + ing)** (وليس اسم)

- **During + noun / noun phrase** (ing فعل متنها بـ)

- While **I was watching** the film, I fell asleep.

= While **watching** the film, I fell asleep. = During **the film**, I fell asleep.

تذكر: لا بد أن يكون الفاعل واحد في الجملتين عند استخدام (inf. + ing) بعد (while) أو أي رابطة أخرى

- While **she** was preparing lunch, **she** cut her finger. (نفس الفاعل) حتى يكون المعنى واضح وصحيح:

- While preparing lunch, **she** cut her finger. (نفس المعنى)

- While **Ahmed** was doing homework, **I** went to bed. (فاعلين مختلفين) (✓)

- While doing homework, **I** went to bed. (X)
معنى مختلف: القارئ سيفهم أنني كنت أعمل الواجب قبل أن أذهب للنوم وليس أحمد.

- **When + sentence** جملة كاملة

- **On + noun / (inf. + ing)**

- **When + (inf. + ing)**

- When **I arrived** home, I drank some orange juice.

- When **arriving** home, I drank some orange juice.

- On **arriving** home, I drank some orange juice.

= On **my arrival** home, I drank some orange juice.

- **While + noun** اسم

- While **on holiday**, I forgot all about work.

- While **in the office**, I met some customers.

Mini Test 5

Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was taking a shower, my phone rang twice.
a. While b. When c. During d. a & b

2. I was taking a shower my phone rang twice.
a. while b. when c. during d. a & b

3. my shower, my phone rang twice.
a. While b. When c. During d. a & b

4. doing homework, the lights went out.
a. While I was b. While c. When d. a, b & c

5. my departure, I felt very nervous and even sad.
a. While b. On c. When d. As

Extra Notes

ملاحظات إضافية

غالبًا لا تستخدم الأزمنة المستمرة مع الأفعال التقريرية (التملك / الإدراك / المشاعر) ويستخدم بدلاً من ذلك الأزمنة البسيطة، ومن هذه الأفعال:

- **Feeling** المشاعر: like, dislike, love, hate, prefer, enjoy, want, wish ... etc.

- **Senses** يبدو، seem يبدو، appear يبدو، feel يبدو، smell يبدو، taste يبدو، sound يبدو، hear يبدو، see يبدو، look يبدو ... etc.

- **Communication** التواصل: promise, satisfy, surprise, agree, deny, disagree ... etc.

- Thinking التفكير : realize, understand, know, mean, think = believe, imagine تخيل, recognize اعترف على, remember, forget ...
 - Other states الحالات النفسية الأخرى : be, belong, concern يهتم, depend, involve يشارك, matter يهتم, need, owe يدين, own يملك, possess ...
 - I was understanding the lesson well. (X)
 - I understood the lesson well. (✓)

General Exercise On Language

Apply

I Getting Started

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Mr Ashraf to the club yesterday.
a. go b. goes c. went d. has gone
- My uncle me at nine yesterday as arranged.
a. called b. calling c. calls d. call
- My uncle did not me at nine yesterday as arranged.
a. called b. calling c. calls d. call
- I never him late at night when he was on holiday.
a. called b. calling c. calls d. call
- A: Did Mr Walid to help? B: I have no idea.
a. offered b. offer c. has offered d. have offered
- Where this nice blouse, Sana?
a. you got b. did you get c. have you got d. b & c
- Amir me do my own homework.
a. help b. helped c. was helped d. have helped
- I with my own homework.
a. help b. helped c. was helped d. have helped
- Rokaya, who is 16, was born
a. the other day b. sixteen years ago c. once upon a time d. in 2005
- Rokaya, who is 16, was born
a. the other day b. sixteen years ago c. once upon a time d. in 2005
- I ran into طارق yesterday Rokaya
a. the other day b. sixteen years ago c. once upon a time d. since 2005

70

Read all about it !

- The boys much noise when I arrived.
a. have made b. was making c. were making d. was being made
- The boy much noise when I arrived.
a. have made b. was making c. were making d. was being made
- Much noise when I arrived.
a. has made b. was made c. was making d. was being made
- The little girl was her doll's hair.
a. combing b. been combing c. being combed d. been combed
- The hair of the little girl's doll was
a. combing b. been combing c. being combed d. been combed
- watching a film, I fell asleep.
a. While b. When c. During d. a & b
- the film, I fell asleep.
a. While b. When c. During d. a & b
- From seven to eleven, Leen her lessons.
a. was revising b. was revised c. has revised d. was being revised
- From seven to eleven, Leen's lessons
a. were revising b. have been revised c. have revised d. were being revised
- I used up before sunrise.
a. get b. to get c. to getting d. to be got
- I became used up before sunrise.
a. get b. to get c. to getting d. to be got
- I used up before sunrise.
a. get b. to get c. to getting d. to be got
- My mother the table for lunch.
a. set b. has set c. was setting d. a, b & c
- My mother the table for lunch when I arrived home, so I helped her.
a. set b. has set c. was setting d. a, b & c
- My mother the table for lunch, then she called us.
a. set b. has set c. was setting d. a, b & c
- She her thumb, didn't she?
a. hurts b. hurt c. didn't hurt d. has hurt
-, Ali?
a. Did you feed b. Were you fed c. Were you feeding d. You were fed

71

28. Ali?
a. Did you feed
b. Were you fed
c. Were you being fed
d. You were fed

29. Ali.
a. Did you feed
b. Were you fed
c. Were you feeding
d. You were fed

30. I always up early when I was a primary school student.
a. get
b. got
c. have got
d. had got

31. A sharp knife is used meat.
a. to cut
b. to cutting
c. cut
d. cutting

32. I who had broken the glass window.
a. knew
b. was knowing
c. did know
d. a & c

33. I wish I a larger car.
a. have
b. had
c. am having
d. was having

34. It is high time he home.
a. return
b. returns
c. returned
d. had returned

35. I'd rather you me to lend you money. You embarrassed me.
a. asked
b. didn't ask
c. had asked
d. hadn't asked

36. I wish you me to lend you money. You only embarrassed me.
a. asked
b. didn't ask
c. had asked
d. hadn't asked

37. on holiday, I had a nice time.
a. While
b. During
c. As
d. Just as

38. When unit one, I fell asleep.
a. revised
b. revising
c. was revising
d. was being revised

39. my father's arrival, the children cheered.
a. When
b. While
c. On
d. During

40. I my parents.
a. loved
b. was loved
c. was loving
d. was being loved

41. My car down midways.
a. was breaking
b. was broken
c. had broken
d. broke

III Check your Understanding

42. "Mr Mohammed used to like hot pepper in his food." This means he
a. likes it now
b. doesn't like it now
c. no longer liked it
d. no longer likes it

43. "Mr Mohammed didn't use to like hot pepper in his food." This means he
a. likes it now
b. doesn't like it now
c. no longer liked it
d. no longer likes it

44. "I wish I were rich." The speaker rich.
a. is
b. isn't
c. was
d. wasn't

45. "I wish I had got up early." The speaker up late.
a. got
b. didn't get
c. has got
d. never gets

46. "When I was at home, I forgot all about work." What does this mean?
a. While at home, I forgot all about work.
b. During home, I forgot all about work.
c. On home, I forgot all about work.
d. When on home, I forgot all about work.

Advanced Exercise on Language

تدرب: التمرينات التالية بدمغة الإجابة والوضوح

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
1. Sharn, I went diving every day.
a. On
b. While
c. While in
d. During

2. my stay with my aunt, I helped her with the housework.
a. During
b. While
c. As
d. By

3. I the cold weather of Canada.
a. used to
b. didn't use to
c. got used to
d. was using

4. There's a charger to the mobile.
a. was attached
b. attached
c. attaching
d. which attached

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	يمكن أن يتبع (while) حرف الجر (in + noun) قبل اسم مكان لا يمكن استخدام (while) فقط أو (during/on) قبل اسم مكان
2.	a	الاختيار الوحيد الذي يأتي بعده اسم (my stay) هو (during)
3.	c	التعبير (got used to) يتبعه (noun) وهو (the cold weather)
4.	b	التصريف الثالث (attached) هو اختصار لعبارة الوصل المبتنية للمجهول: - (which is attached)

Part I

Chapter 1

هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة، لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

تلويح

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

blacksmith(n)	خَدَّاد	grab(bed) (v)	يجذب/ يشد
commit a crime	يرتكب جريمة	handcuffs(n)	قيود (كلاشات) اليدين
convict(n)	مُسْجُون - مُدْنِب	leg-irons(n)	قيود (كلاشات) القدمين
file(n)	مُيَزِد	marsh(n)	مُسْتَنْقَع
get away (phr. v)	يهرب	set off(phr. v)	ينطلق/ يبدأ رحلة

2 Definitions تعريفات

لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيداً، فهي موضع امتحان.

تلويح

blacksmith(n)	خَدَّاد	- a person who makes things from iron, especially horseshoes	الحديد، حلوة الحصان
commit a crime	يرتكب جريمة	- to do something which is illegal	غير قانوني
convict(n)	مُسْجُون - مُدْنِب	- someone who is in prison for a crime	السجن
file(n)	مُيَزِد	- metal tool with rough surfaces for shaping or smoothing metal	خشن
get away (phr. v)	يهرب	- to escape	الهروب
grab(bed) (v)	يجذب/ يشد	- to get hold of something suddenly or roughly	بشدة
handcuffs(n)	قيود (كلاشات) اليدين	- two metal rings linked together which are locked	معصم
leg-irons(n)	قيود (كلاشات) القدمين	- two metal rings linked with a chain around a prisoner's ankles	سلسلة، كاحل
marsh(n)	مُسْتَنْقَع	- low ground which is usually wet	مستنقع
set off (phr. v)	ينطلق/ يبدأ رحلة	- to begin a journey	الرحلة

3 Idioms التعبيرات

get ... breath back
= start to breath normally again

يستريح - يهدأ

jump out of ... skin
= something suddenly frightens (me)

يفزع - يخاف بشدة

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- To means to begin a journey
a. grab b. commit a crime c. set off d. get away
- A is low ground which is usually wet.
a. marsh b. convict c. soldier d. character
- A is a person who makes things from iron, especially horseshoes.
a. file b. blacksmith c. leg-irons d. handcuffs
- A is someone who is in prison for a crime.
a. marsh b. convict c. soldier d. character
- are two metal rings linked with a chain, which are attached to a prisoner's ankles.
a. File b. Blacksmith c. Leg-irons d. Handcuffs
- To means to escape.
a. grab b. commit a crime c. set off d. get away
- are two metal rings linked together which are locked around a prisoner's wrists
a. File b. Blacksmith c. Leg-irons d. Handcuffs
- To means to do something which is illegal.
a. grab b. commit a crime c. set off d. get away
- A is a metal tool with rough surfaces for shaping or smoothing metal.
a. file b. blacksmith c. leg-irons d. handcuffs
- To means to get hold of something suddenly or roughly.
a. grab b. commit a crime c. set off d. get away

تدريب
وحدة علي حدة. المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات في ملحق (Master your skills) في

1 Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. Social media has some negative effects, the most dangerous of which is spreading rumours.

أ. وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي لها بعض الآثار السلبية، أخطرها نشر الشائعات.
ب. وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي كان لها بعض الآثار السلبية، أخطرها نشر الشائعات.
ج. وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي لها بعض الآثار السلبية، والخطر هو نشر الشائعات.
د. وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي لها بعض الآثار السلبية، وأخطرها نشر الشائعات.

2. Sharing false news affects the security and stability of the whole society without exception.

أ. مشاركة الأخبار تؤثر على أمن واستقرار المجتمع بأسره دون استثناء.
ب. مشاركة الأخبار الكاذبة تؤثر على أمن واستقرار المجتمع بأسره دون استثناء.
ج. مشاركة الأخبار الكاذبة تؤثر على أمن واستقرار المجتمع بأسره دون توقع.
د. مشاركة الأخبار الكاذبة أثرت على أمن واستقرار المجتمع بأسره دون استثناء.

3. All citizens should get COVID-19 vaccine, especially the old-aged and those who have chronic diseases.

أ. يجب على جميع المواطنين أن يتلقوا لقاح فيروس كورونا خاصة كبار السن والمصابين بأمراض مزمنة.
ب. يجب على جميع المواطنين أن يتلقوا لقاح فيروس كورونا خاصة كبار السن والمصابين بأمراض تنفسية.
ج. يجب على جميع المواطنين أن يتلقوا لقاح فيروس كورونا خاصة كبار السن وهؤلاء من لديهم أمراض مزمنة.
د. يجب على جميع المواطنين أن يتلقوا لقاح فيروس كورونا خاصة كبار السن وأولئك يعانون من أمراض مزمنة.

4. I don't mind helping you if necessary, but it is better if you are dependent on yourself.

أ. لا أفكر في مساعدتك إذا لزم الأمر، ولكن من الأفضل أن تعتمد على نفسك.
ب. لا أهتم بمساعدتك إذا لزم الأمر، ولكن من الأفضل أن تعتمد على نفسك.
ج. لا أمانع في مساعدتك إذا لزم الأمر، ولكن من الأفضل أن تعتمد على نفسك.
د. لا أمانع في مساعدتك إذا لزم الأمر، ولكن من الأفضل ألا تعتمد على نفسك.

2 Choose the best English translation :

١. حققت النجمة المصرية فريال أشرف إنجازًا كبيرًا بفوزها بالميدالية الذهبية في الكاراتيه في أولمبياد طوكيو ٢٠٢١.

- a. The Egyptian star Feryal Ashraf made a great achievement by winning the gold medal in karate at the 2021 Tokyo Olympics.
b. The Egyptian star Feryal Ashraf did a great achievement by winning the gold medal in karate at the 2021 Tokyo Paralympics.
c. Feryal Ashraf, the Egyptian star, made a great achievement by winning the gold medal in karate at the 2021 Tokyo Olympics.
d. a & c

٢. لم يعد سوق العمل بحاجة لمجرد شهادات، بل أصبح يبحث عن المهارات الشخصية والتقنية لدى المتقدمين للعمل.

- a. The labour market no longer need just certificates, but rather searches for the personal and technical skills of job applicants.
b. The labour market no longer needs just certificates, but rather searches for the personal and technical skills of job applicants.
c. The labour market no longer needs just certificates, but rather searches for the personal and soft skills of job applicants.
d. The labour market no longer needs just certificates, and rather searches for the personal and technical skills of job applicants.

٣. من الجوانب السلبية للألعاب الحاسوبية أنها تقلل من فرصة اكتساب الطفل للمهارات العملية التي يحتاجها في الحياة.

- a. One of the negative aspects of computer games is that it reduces the opportunity for the child to acquire the practical skills he needs in life.
b. One of the negative aspects of computer games is that it reduces the opportunity for the child to enquire the practical skills he needs in life.
c. One of the negative aspects of computer games is that they reduce the opportunity for the child to acquire the practical skills they need in life.
d. One of the negative aspects of computer games is that they reduce the opportunity for the child to acquire the personal skills they need in life.

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The child looked up as soon as the ceiling fan started to
a. spoil b. spin c. claim d. state
2. He spent three years in prison as a
a. convicted b. broadsheet c. tabloid d. punishment
3. Giving children too much money surely them.
a. spoils b. spins c. claims d. states
4. Those who violate the of our publications will be legally punished.
a. court b. security c. copyright d. similarity
5. A/An is a newspaper printed on large sheets of paper, especially a serious newspaper.
a. incident b. aircraft c. tabloid d. broadsheet
6. The sport I helps me lose weight.
a. put b. highlight c. do d. make
7. "The injured man died in Casualty last night." The word 'Casualty' in this sentence is a synonym of
a. Death b. Victim c. Emergency d. a & b
8. I was by the false news he told me.
a. misled b. restated c. trusted d. updated
9. is the act of not including somebody/something or not doing something; the fact of not being included or done.
a. Placement b. Omission c. Spin d. Bias
10. 'Inaccurate' is to 'inexact' as is to 'prejudice'.
a. objectivity b. bias c. fairness d. impartiality
11. While lunch, she cut her finger.
a. was preparing b. prepared c. preparing d. prepares
12. Last month, she home without telling anyone.
a. was leaving b. left c. was left d. has left

13. She to explain why she had refused the offer.
a. had refused b. has refused c. refused d. was refused
14. She in a hotel in the north of England.
a. was seen b. has seen c. saw d. had seen
15. They reclaiming the desert land and farming it for about eight years now.
a. had been b. would be c. are d. have been
16. Omar football since he was eight years old and now he is in the under-15 national team.
a. played b. had played c. has been playing d. was playing

• Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(المتحدثون الأول، المتحدثون الثانيون)

What sort of food are we likely to be eating in the year 2030? Most people, when you ask them a question like that, either say: "There won't be any left," or: "Whatever it is, there won't be much taste in it". Of course, there are good reasons for being pessimistic about the world's food supplies in the future.

Nevertheless, not all the experts share the general despondency. For one thing, although the world's population is rising fast, food production is keeping pace with it, even in developing countries. It is therefore argued that the main reason why people are hungry is not that there is a world food shortage but that methods of cultivation are not sufficiently advanced in some areas and the food is not fairly distributed to all those that need it.

Moreover, in most industrial countries, one important cause of trouble is our conservative preference for meat. After all, we are ready for a situation where we feed animals with grain to produce high-quality beef, even though the grain would feed the human population.

By the time our grandchildren have grown up, it seems likely that many of these problems will have been resolved. Scientists are already capable of constructing steaks from vegetable ingredients like soya beans. However, skeptically we may be about their claim that they can reproduce the substance, taste and colour of meat by these means, the fact is that the most common complaint about such "steaks" is that we will no doubt have discovered a way of including artificial bones, skin and fat!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. According to the passage, using vegetable ingredients is one of the methods to overcome the shortage of
a. protein b. fats c. vitamins d. calcium
18. Which of the following can best summarise the last paragraph?
a. Soya beans can change the taste of meat
b. Soya beans, steak and food ingredients
c. Beans, fats and skin
d. Soya beans as a replacement of meat
19. There won't be food shortage in the future if the food is
a. fairly distributed b. unfairly distributed
c. of high quality d. of low quality
20. The problem of food can be solved if we
a. use the internet and mass media
b. use advanced methods of cultivation
c. use more water from the sea
d. purify the river water
21. According to the passage, our diet may be in the future.
a. the same b. difficult c. different d. traditional
22. We feed animals on grain to produce
a. high quantity beef b. fat and food supplies
c. skin and vegetables d. high quality beef
23. According to the passage, food production is growing the population.
a. as slow as b. as fast as c. faster than d. slower than
24. The main idea of the passage is
a. The advantages of eating soya beans
b. The causes of food shortage and its solution
c. The distribution of food
d. Population increasing all over the world

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Basel Rashid, who was a famous detective, working for businesses to protect them and solve mysteries related to their work, had finished working on a crime in Aswan and was about to go home on the Spanish

Train. When Basel got on the train, he noticed that it was unusually full for the time of the year.

Soon after the train had left Aswan, a wealthy businessman, Mr Mourad, asked Basel to protect him because he believed his life was in danger. Although Mourad offered Basel a lot of money to do this, the detective did not believe the man's story and refused to help him.

During the night, the train had to stop because of heavy rain. The next morning, Mourad was found dead; he had been murdered. Had someone got on the train and killed him?

Now Basel believed Mourad's story and, together with a doctor, who was also on the train, he started work to solve the crime. The two men soon discovered that Mourad had a secret identity. He was not a businessman, but a criminal who was hated by many people.

After examining the train and Mourad's body, Basel realised that the man had almost certainly been murdered by one of the 13 people from the same part of the train as Mourad. This meant that there were 13 suspects. One by one, Basel discovered that these 13 people all had a good reason to hate Mourad. Together, they had carefully planned what they were going to do and had all taken part in the murder. That was why the Spanish Train had been so full on that journey.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

25. The choice that can summarise the fourth paragraph is ".....".
a. Identifying who Mr Mourad really was and his real job.
b. Protecting the other passengers from the murderers
c. Discovering Mourad's secret passport and his work as a spy
d. Finding out Mourad was wrong when he asked for the detective's help
26. Basel did not want to help Mr Mourad
a. to take part in his murder b. as he was the murderer
c. to kill the other criminals d. as he thought he was a liar
27. Basel found out there were 13 suspects because
a. Mourad told him while dying b. he checked their identities
c. he knew they hated Mourad d. the doctor told him so

28. Although Basel refused to help Mr Mourad,

- a. was right not to help Mr Mourad
- b. helped the doctor to reach the truth
- c. suspected few of the passengers
- d. regretted helping Mr Mourad

29. The central idea of the story is ".....".

- a. Criminals would help to protect each other.
- b. Crime would be committed by the help of the police
- c. Criminals always face their fears of the death
- d. The Spanish Train mysterious crime

30. Mourad thought he was certainly in danger, so

- a. he was suffering from heart problems
- b. he asked Basel for help
- c. the detective warned him not to take the train
- d. the doctor had examined him the day before

31. Basel was in Aswan

- a. because he worked as a policeman there
- b. because he was on a secret mission
- c. to investigate Mourad's murder
- d. to arrest people who killed Mourad

32. According to the passage, one must the others when they

- a. help
- b. ignore
- c. encourage
- d. defeat

A. Choose the best Arabic translation :

33. A civilized society should treat its elderly members well even if it is multicultural.

- للمجتمع المتحضر ينبغي عليه أن يعامل كبار السن معاملة جيدة حتى لو كان مجتمع متعدد الثقافات.
- للمجتمع المتحضر يجب أن يراعى في تعامله الأعضاء القدماء ينبغي عليه حتى لو كان متعدد الثقافات.
- يجب على المجتمع المتحضر أن يعالج كبار السن جيداً رغم تعدد الثقافات.
- للمجتمع المتحضر هو الذي يجب عليه أن يتعامل مع صغار السن معاملة جيدة حتى لو كان متعدد الثقافات.

34. One of the current reform programmes is to stimulate investment in the industrial sector.

- برامج الإصلاح الحالية تحفيز الاستثمار في القطاع الصناعي.
- برامج التغيير الحالية تحفيز الاستثمار في مجال الصناعة.
- برامج الإصلاح الحالية زيادة الاستثمار في المجال الصناعي.
- برامج الإصلاح الحالية تحفيز الاستثمار في المجال الصناعي.

B. Choose the best English translation :

٣٥. يرتكب البعض خطأ كبير يبحثهم عن الشهرة لاعتقادهم بأنها سبب للسعادة.

- a. Some people make a big mistake by looking for fame because they think that it is the cause of happiness.
- b. Some people commit a big mistake by looking up fame, thinking that it is the cause of happiness.
- c. Some people made a big mistake by looking for fame because they think that it is the cause of happiness.
- d. Some people commit big mistake by looking for fame thinking that it is the cause of happiness.

٣٦. إنها مسئولية الوالدين أن يقوموا بتنوير الشباب بالآثار المدمرة لتناول المخدرات القاتلة.

- a. Parents are responsible for making the youth unaware of the destructive effects of eating killing drugs.
- b. It's the parents' responsibility to make the youth aware of the destructive effects of taking killing drugs.
- c. It's the parents' irresponsibility to lighten the youth of the destructive effects of taking killing drugs.
- d. Parents are responsible for making their children unaware of the destructive effects of eating killing drugs.

* Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

37. A/An is a piece of writing written by a student as part of a course of study.

- a. article
- b. essay
- c. thesis
- d. paper

38. A/An is the last paragraph of an essay.

- a. introduction
- b. body paragraph
- c. conclusion
- d. coherence

39. A body paragraph in an essay has

- a. a topic sentence, evidence, analysis and a concluding sentence.
- b. a restated focus, a restated thesis and a challenge.
- c. a hook, a focus statement, a background and a thesis.
- d. coherence, unity and correctness

40. A/An essay is a type of essay that takes a stance on an issue.

- a. descriptive
- b. narrative
- c. persuasive
- d. expository

General Exercises

for Al Azhar students on Unit 1

تأليف

للمزيد من
التدريبات للأزهر
السري، - بنك
الأسئلة

1. Finish the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Youssef for advice about online information.

Ahmed : The internet has become the main source of information,
(1)

Youssef : Of course, it has.

Ahmed : (2)

Youssef : Yes. Like anything else, it has some downsides.

Ahmed : Like what?

Youssef : (3)

Ahmed : How can I check the reliability of online information?

Youssef : (4)

Ahmed : That's great. If the same information is available on
different websites, that means it is true.

Youssef : But, be careful of out-of-date information.

Ahmed : OK, thanks.

2. Write a paragraph of one hundred and twenty (120) words on :

"Social Media has a negative impact on news and society"

3. Translate into Arabic :

- The development of the educational system is a flexible ongoing
process that needs thinking outside the box.

4. Translate into English :

- إن السعادة هي الهدف الذي يسعى جميع الناس إلى تحقيقه.

5. Choose the correct answer : (Islamic selections) :

(الأزهر - أدبي ٢٠٢١)

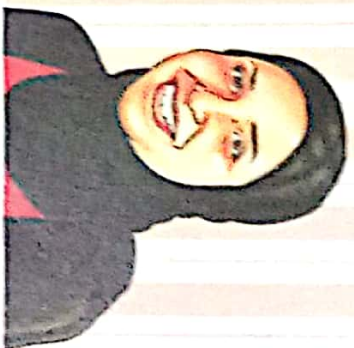
- Abu-Sufian take his caravan safely to Mecca.

a. wasn't able to

b. failed to

c. managed to

c. couldn't



Part I

Vocabulary

- اذكر مدى اتفاقك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
- المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تلاوة

1 Key Vocabulary الرئيسية المفردات

award(ed)(v), (n)	يمنح جائزة / منحة - جائزة	tournament(n)	بطولة رياضة (مجموعة)
contribution(n)	مُساهمة / مشاركة	podcast(n)	إذاعة رقمية - منصة صوتية
court(n)	ملعب	prejudice(n)	انحياز/ تحامل/ ظلم
determination(n)	عزم - تصميم	prejudice(d)(v)	يؤلِّب/ يعرض علي/ يؤثر سلباً علي
determine(d)(v)	يُحدد / يُصمم	qualify (ied) (v)	يُأهل - يتخرَّج
pharmacist (n)	صيدلي	rank(ed) (v-n)	يحصل تصنيف - تصنيف
inspire(d) (v)	يلهم - يوحى	role model(n)	قدوة - مُثل أعلى
inspiring(adj)	مُلهم	round(n)	جولة - دور في بطولة
inspiration(n)	إلهام	stereotype(n)	فكرة نمطية ثابتة - نموتج
lecturer(n)	مُحاضر	stereotype (d)	نُطّي - قالب
karate (n)	رياضة الكاراتيه		يُصنّف بشكل غير عادل
overcome(v)	يتغلب علي		
physicist(n)	فيزيائي/ خبير في الفيزياء		

2 Important Vocabulary

assume(d) (v)	يُدعي - يفترض	compete(d) (v)	ينافس
atom(n)	الذرة	competing(n)	التنافس
attend(ed) (v)	يُحضر - يدرس (في)	influence(d) (v/n)	يؤثر علي - تأثير
attention(n)	انتباه - اهتمام	innovate(d) (v)	يبتكر
attitude(n)	تَوجه - وجهة نظر	knowledge(n)	المعرفة
beat - beat -	يَهزم	major(adj)	كبير - رئيسي
beaten (v)	يحتفل بـ	medical(adj)	طبي
celebrate(d) (v)	صلصال/ طين	medicine(n)	الطب
clay(n)	عبادة	mental(adj)	عقلي/ ذهني
clinic(n)	مسابقة - منافسة	norms(n)	عادات - أعراف
competition(n)		obstacles(n)	عقبات - عراقيل

conditions(n)	ظروف	inequality(n)	عدم المساواة
confidence(n)	الثقة	purify(ied) (v)	ينقي
confident(adj)	واثق	private(adj)	خاص
conform to	يتوافق مع	profile(n)	هيكلة/ صورة/ وضع
considered (v)	يعتبر	public(n/adj)	الجمهور - الشعب - عام - محبوب
defy(ied) (v)	يتحدى	reaction(n)	رد فعل - مردود
demonstrate(d) (v)	يوضح/ يبين/ يبرهن	recognise(d) (v)	يتعرف علي
difficulty(n)	موقف صعب - صعوبة	remarkable(adj)	بارز - ملحوظ
equality(n)	المساواة	research(ed) (v/n)	يُجرى أبحاث علي
extract (ed) (v)	يستخلص - يجزئ	retire(d) (v)	- بحث
female(n/adj)	أنثي - نسائي	scholarship(n)	يتقاعد - يعتزل
field(n)	مجال - حقل	spark(ed) (v)	منحة دراسية - زمالة
fight - fought (v)	يحارب - يقاتل	special(adj)	بنشأ - يطلق شراره
fight (n)	قتال - شجار	sportswoman(n)	مُتميزة - خاص
first(n)	راند - باكورة	straw(n)	(سيدة) رياضية
gender(n)	الجنس	treat(ed) (v)	تش
generate(d) (v)	يولد	treatment(n)	يعالج / يعامل
honour(ed) (v/n)	يكرم - شرف/امجد	win(n)	علاج/ معالجة/ معاملة
impressive(adj)	مُبهِّر/رائع		فوز
improve(d) (v)	يتحسن - يُحسن		

3 Definitions تعريفات

award (n)	جائزة - منحة	a prize or symbol given to recognise an achievement	إنجاز
contribution (n)	مساهمة/ مساهمة	something you do to help make something successful or someone advance	شيء ما
court (n)	ملعب	an area made for playing games such as tennis	تضلع
Karate(n)	رياضة الكاراتيه	a Japanese sport in which you must defeat a person using hits, kicks or throws	تضلع
lecturer(n)	مُحاضر	a person who teaches at a university	إستاذ
pharmacist(n)	صيدلي	a person who knows medicine you should take to make you better	صيدلي
podcast(n)	إذاعة رقمية - منصة صوتية	a file of recorded sound and sometimes pictures that you can download from the Internet	ملف

physicist(n)	فيزيائي/ خبير في الفيزياء	a scientist who specialises in the field of physics.
prejudice(n)	إنحياز/ تحامل/ ظلم	an unfair or unreasonable opinion because you do not have enough knowledge
qualify (ied) (v)	يتأهل - يتخرج	to successfully finish a training course, so you can do a job
rank (v)	يحتل مرتبة أو تصنيف	to have a particular position in a list of people or things that have been put in order of quality or importance
role model(n)	قدوة - مُثل أعلى	a person young people can look up to and try to be like them
round(n)	جولة	one of the parts of a competition that you have to finish or win before you can go on to the next part
stereotype(n)	فكرة نمطية ثابتة - نموذج نمطي - قالب	a fixed idea about what a person or thing is like, which is often not true in reality
tournament(n)	بطولة رياضية (مجمعة)	a competition in which players compete against each other in a series of games until there is one winner

Exercise On Vocabulary

Understand

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- I want to study medicine and as a doctor.
 - attend
 - qualify
 - innovate
 - obtain
- Women no longer face in our society. They now enjoy their full rights.
 - award
 - contribution
 - prejudice
 - stereotype
- My favourite tennis star was injured and carried out of the
 - court
 - round
 - tournament
 - attention
- My elder sister, Rodayna, is my I hope I will follow on her footsteps.
 - physicist
 - lecturer
 - eyewitness
 - role model
- "My uncle is a brilliant physicist". In this sentence, the word 'physicist' is a/an
 - noun
 - pronoun
 - adjective
 - adverb

6. I don't want to get married because I think I don't fit the of a good husband.
a. award b. contribution c. prejudice d. stereotype
7. Strangely, my team was beaten in the first I wish they had gone further.
a. court b. round c. tournament d. attention
8. Professor Abdulrahman is a/an in Islamic History at Cairo University.
a. physicist b. lecturer c. eyewitness d. role model
9. No one can deny our manager's to the company success.
a. award b. contribution c. prejudice d. stereotype
10. I wish I could qualify to the final of this
a. court b. round c. tournament d. attention
11. My latest film has won the best film
a. awards b. contributions c. prejudices d. stereotypes
- 2 Important vocabulary**
12. You can the information you need from the EKB.
a. assume b. influence c. beat d. obtain
13. Feryal Ashraf's gold medal in the Olympics has had a great effect on the of karate in Egypt.
a. attitude b. obstacle c. podcast d. profile
14. Feryal Ashraf's gold medal in the Olympics has had a great effect on the towards karate in Egypt.
a. attitude b. obstacle c. podcast d. profile
15. Too much stress has a bad effect on your health.
a. nuclear b. mental c. major d. impressive
16. Salah's success as a footballer received a big from the Arab public.
a. condition b. equality c. reaction d. confidence
17. Don't give up to difficulties, them.
a. Compete b. Innovate c. Attend d. Defy
18. I he isn't at home because I can't see his car.
a. assume b. influence c. beat d. obtain
19. My son Ahmed El-Redisseya Egyptian-Japanese School.
a. researches b. innovates c. attends d. defies

20. I have moved to Aswan in 2002 and, at first, I found it difficult to get used to the there.
a. conditions b. equality c. reactions d. confidence
21. The idea of starting this charity was by the need to help homeless children.
a. honoured b. celebrated c. sparked d. demonstrated
22. power stations have serious effects on the environment.
a. Nuclear b. Mental c. Major d. Impressive
23. Mr Mohammed always me at our table tennis matches.
a. assumes b. innovates c. beats d. obtains
24. To succeed in achieving your goals, you must overcome the that you may face every now and then.
a. attitudes b. obstacles c. podcasts d. profiles
25. It's your self-..... that makes us trust you.
a. condition b. equality c. reaction d. confidence
26. Solar power can be used to electricity.
a. honour b. generate c. spark d. demonstrate
27. Sama's exam results are She has come first with full marks.
a. nuclear b. mental c. minor d. impressive
28. Role models like Mohammed Salah their fans.
a. assume b. influence c. beat d. obtain
29. The listening texts are available as on El-Moasser's Website.
a. attitudes b. obstacles c. podcasts d. prejudice
30. My parents and teachers give me confidence to new ideas.
a. compete b. innovate c. attend d. defy
31. She received a big reaction after her win. The word 'win' here is a/an
a. verb b. pronoun c. adjective d. noun
32. The young people who work for charities should be
a. honoured b. generated c. skidded d. plunged
33. My uncle has had a heart surgery recently.
a. nuclear b. mental c. major d. stressed
34. The research the link between poverty and crime.
a. honours b. generates c. sparks d. demonstrates
35. Women are still looking forward to complete with men.
a. condition b. equality c. reaction d. confidence

36. Some investigators are still the cause of the accident.
a. researching b. innovating c. attending d. defying
37. "Mr Munir's influence on his students is clear". In this sentence, the word 'influence' is a/an
a. verb b. noun c. adverb d. adjective

1 Definitions

38. A/An is an unfair or unreasonable opinion because you do not have enough knowledge.
a. tournament b. award c. round d. prejudice
39. A is a fixed idea about what a person or thing is like which is often not true in reality.
a. stereotype b. contribution c. court d. competition
40. To is to successfully finish a training course, so you can do a job.
a. honour b. generate c. extract d. qualify
41. A/An is a competition in which players compete against each other in a series of games until there is one winner.
a. tournament b. award c. round d. prejudice
42. A is a person young people can look up to and try to be like them.
a. lecturer b. physicist c. sportswoman d. role model
43. A is something you do to help make something successful.
a. stereotype b. contribution c. court d. competition
44. A/An is a prize or symbol given to recognise an achievement.
a. tournament b. award c. round d. prejudice
45. A is an area made for playing games such as tennis.
a. stereotype b. contribution c. court d. competition
46. A/An is one of the parts of a competition that you have to finish or win before you can go on to the next part.
a. tournament b. award c. round d. prejudice
47. A is an expert in physics.
a. lecturer b. physicist c. sportswoman d. role model
48. A is someone whose job is to prepare medicines in a shop or hospital.
a. role model b. pharmacist c. lecturer d. physics
49. To is to have a particular position in a list of people or things that have been put in order of quality or importance.
a. rank b. qualify c. stereotype d. lecture

Part II Vocabulary Study

تدرب على استخدام هذه الدقة قريباً بشكل جيد

تدرب

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

achieve	يحقّق الرّيادة / يكون الأول في تحقيق إنجاز	give	the confidence يمنح الثقة
attend	a school يدرس في مدرسة		a contribution to يساهم في
break down	stereotypes and prejudices يقضي على الأفكار النمطية		a decision يقرر
bring	attention to يلفت الانتباه لـ	make	a speech يلقي خطبة
defy	prejudice يتحدى التحيز		history يحقّق مجد / يصنع تاريخ
	stereotypes يتحدى على الصورة النمطية		medical treatment يقوم بالعلاج الطبي
	a job يؤدي عمل	obtain	a PhD يحصل على الدكتوراه
	an activity يمارس نشاط		a big reaction يحصل على مردود قوي
do	some research يقوم بالبحث	receive	a scholarship يحصل على منحة دراسية
	sports يمارس رياضة	recognise contribution to يعترف بإسهامات في
generate	electricity يولّد كهرباء	require	strength تتطلب قوة
	a difficulty يواجه موقف صعب	win	a scholarship يفوز بمنحة دراسية
have	an impact له أثر		an award يفوز بجائزة

Mini Test 1 Collocations

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Confidence helps pioneers firsts.
a. give b. achieve c. do d. make
- Many women prejudices against woman nowadays.
a. have b. defy c. break down d. b & c

3. Fans are supposed to their stars confidence, not attack them.
a. give b. achieve c. do d. make
4. Salah's visit to the charity attention to the importance of donations to help poor people.
a. had b. defied c. brought d. did
5. I was the first in my town to the AUC scholarship.
a. win b. give c. recognise d. make
6. Feryal Ashraf history in 2021 Tokyo Olympics.
a. gave b. required c. did d. made
7. The impact role models on young people is great.
a. have b. defy c. break down d. generate
8. Dr Zewail several contributions to science and technology.
a. won b. made c. recognised d. did
9. The activities students at school help them improve their skills.
a. give b. achieve c. do d. make

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
confidence(n) defy(ied) (v) prejudice(n) win(n)	الثقة يتحدى - يخالف/ يعصي انحياز / تحامل / ظلم فوز trust / belief / reliance challenge / resist / disobey bias / partiality/ discrimination triumph / victory

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
beat (v) confidence(n) defy(ied) (v) defy(ied) (v) equality(n) male (n /adj) mental(adj) win(n)	هزم الثقة يتحدى يخالف/ يعصي المساواة ذكر - ذكوري عقلي/ ذهني فوز lose to distrust/doubt/ uncertainty surrender/ give up obey/follow inequality/prejudice female physical loss يفسر من انعدام الثقة/ الشك يستسلم يطيع عدم المساواة/ التمييز أنثى - نسائي بدني خسارة

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
1. "Equality in rights and duties is the basis of democracy". The antonym of 'equality' in this utterance is
a. inequality b. inequality c. prejudice d. b & c
2. "You can't defy two armed men on your own". The word 'defy' in this sentence can be replaced by
a. resist b. obey c. give up d. surrender
3. "Sama beat me in chess. This means I Sama in chess.
a. won b. triumphed c. lost to d. gained
4. "I have absolute confidence in what he says". The antonym of "confidence" here is
a. trust b. doubt c. belief d. reliance
5. "Your win has made my day". The word 'win' in this context gives an antonymous meaning to
a. victory b. triumph c. lose d. loss

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
award	award المتاحز بالإنجازة	award-winning فائز بالإنجازة
contribute (to)	contribution مساهمة / مساهمة contributor مساهم / مشارك	contributory مساهم - مشارك
inspire	inspiration إلهام - دحي	inspiring مُلهم inspirational تشجيعي - تحفيزي
lecture	lecture محاضرة / محاضرة lecturer أستاذ جامعي	physical بدني / جسدي physicist مادي / ملطوس / طبيعي / فيزيائي

prejudice تحيُّد / تحيز / تمييز	prejudice تحيُّد / تحيز / تمييز	prejudiced متحيِّد / متحيز / متمييز
quality جودة	qualification مؤهل دراسي - تأهل - تخرج - شهادة دراسية	qualified حاصل على مؤهل

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Professor A. Karim is expert at
a. physics b. physical c. physicist d. physically
- Professor A. Karim is an expert
a. physics b. physical c. physicist d. physically
- Professor A. Karim studies the world around us.
a. physics b. physical c. physicist d. physically
- His criminal history has his chance to get a job.
a. awarded b. award c. prejudice d. prejudiced
- In the USA, there's still some cultural against coloured people.
a. awarded b. award c. prejudice d. prejudiced
- We all appreciate 'scientists' which have made our lives better.
a. contribute b. contributions c. contributors d. contributory
- Scientists are the major that made our lives better.
a. contribute b. contributions c. contributors d. contributory
- Scientists to the better lives we have.
a. contribute b. contributions c. contributors d. contributory
- I think the Egyptian team will to the quarter final.
a. qualify b. qualified c. qualification d. qualifies
- I expect the of the Egyptian team to the quarter final.
a. qualify b. qualified c. qualification d. qualifies
- Do you think Omar is a highly candidate?
a. quality b. qualified c. qualification d. qualifies
- I was a prize for my last novel.
a. awarded b. award c. prejudice d. prejudiced
- He got the second actor
a. awarded b. award c. prejudice d. prejudiced

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

2021 Australian Open بطولة أستراليا المفتوحة	a major tournament بطولة كبرى	an equal amount of قدر / كمية متساوية من	be honoured with an award يتم تكريمه بمنحه جائزة	fight through the obstacles يتحدى العقبات	get used to يعتاد على	Grand Slam tournament بطولة جراند سلام	nuclear power الطاقة النووية	opening game/match السيارة الافتتاحية	proud of فخور به	qualify as + وطيفة	the Egyptian public الجمهور المصري	the first round الجولة الأولى	the First-Class Order of Science and Arts وسام العلوم والفنون من الدرجة الأولى	the mental side of competing الجانب الذهني في المنافسة	to be honest صادقا - الحق يقال	up until then حتى ذلك الحين
---	----------------------------------	---	---	--	--------------------------	---	---------------------------------	--	---------------------	-----------------------------	---------------------------------------	----------------------------------	---	---	-----------------------------------	--------------------------------

6 Verb + Preposition حرف جر فعل

believe in يؤمن به	break ... down يُحطَّم - يتحطم	contribute to يساهم في	find out (about) يكشف / يعرف (عن)	look up to ... يُنظر بإجلال إلى ...	move to يتنقل إلى	name ... after يسمى ... على اسم
-----------------------	-----------------------------------	---------------------------	--------------------------------------	--	----------------------	------------------------------------

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My brother was honoured an award in a science competition.
a. of b. with c. from d. at
- I named my elder son his uncle. They both are called Ahmed.
a. in b. to c. before d. after
- Many young people look Salah as their role model.
a. after b. for c. up to d. out of
- She is a remarkable Egyptian woman who has broken stereotypes and prejudices, demonstrating that women's place in society is important.
a. down b. into c. in d. out
- They have contributed completing the task.
a. for b. by c. to d. from

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

be proud of / to = take pride in

- be proud of (something / someone)
- Her parents are very proud of her.
- be proud to do something
- I am proud to receive this award.
- take / have pride in
- She takes / has pride in her respectable family.

reward - award - a ward

- reward
- I got a reward for coming first.
= I was rewarded for coming first.
- award
- Dr Zewail got an award for his great discovery.
= Dr Zewail was awarded for his great discovery.
- a ward
- There is a ward on the first floor for patients with heart problems.

medicine - medical

- medicine (n)
- Dr Abdullah studied medicine at Assuit University.
- medicine(n)
- The medicines I take have dangerous side effects.
- medical(adj)
- Doctors and nurses belong to the medical profession.

competition - tournament

- competition (n)
A competition is an event or situation where people, groups or teams attempt to win or establish superiority over others. A competition can exist in sports, business or any other field.
- المسابقة (المنافسة)
- I won a prize in a short story competition.
- competition - tournament
- There was fierce competition between Al Ahly and Zamalek last year.

• tournament (n) بطولة (مُجَمَّعة)

A tournament is limited to sports. It is a formal series of sport competitions that steadily eliminates people or teams until there is only one winning team or person, who is awarded a prize.
البطولة (tournament) تقتصر على الرياضة، وهي سلسلة رسمية من المسابقات الرياضية التي يتم فيها إقصاء الأشخاص أو الفرق حتى يكون هناك فريق واحد أو شخص فائز واحد يحصل على جائزة.
- Grand Slam is one of the major tennis tournaments.

physicist - physician

- physicist
- Einstein was a great physicist.
- physician = doctor
- Sama was ill and we had to call the physician.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I took part in the inter-school literature
a. champion b. tournament c. competition d. b & c
2. I took part in the inter-school sports
a. champion b. tournament c. competition d. b & c
3. My father is my brother.
a. takes pride of b. takes pride in c. proud d. proud of
4. My father my brother.
a. takes pride of b. takes pride in c. proud d. proud of
5. I'm proud be a member of the national team.
a. to b. in c. of d. a & b
6. A teacher's real is when his/her students reach their goals.
a. award b. awarded c. rewarded d. reward
7. A teacher is really when his/her students reach their goals.
a. award b. awarded c. rewarded d. reward
8. Mahfouz was the Nobel Prize in 1988.
a. award b. awarded c. rewarded d. reward
9. I won a/an for coming first in a sports competition.
a. award b. awarded c. rewarded d. reward

8 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات

contribution

- **contribute (to/towards) (v)** يساهم / يُشارك (في)
 - A lot of my Facebook friends contributed money, clothes or effort for the new charity.
 - No one can deny how much you have contributed to the success of our company.
- **contribution (to/towards) (n)** مساهمة / مشاركة (في)
 - Omar contributed to making the application better. (Not: to make)
 - Zewail got the Nobel Prize for his contributions to the field of chemistry.
- **contribution (of) (n)** مساهمة مالية
 - Each member of the group paid a contribution of 1000 pounds for the charity.
- **contributor (to) (n)** مساهم / يُشارك (في)
 - Mr Ahmed is a basic contributor to the charity.
- **contributory (adj)** مساهم / مُساعد (صفة تُستخدم قبل الاسم فقط بهذا المعنى)
 - Chemical pesticides are contributory factors to cancer.

prejudice

- **prejudice(against) (n)** تحيز / تعصب
 - Do you think the poor face prejudice in our society?
 - In South Africa, there was some prejudice against people of different colour.
- **racial prejudice** التَّعَصُّبُ العرقي (حسب السلالة أو اللون مثلاً)
- **class prejudice** التَّعَصُّبُ الطبقي (حسب الوضع المادي أو الاجتماعي)
- **blind prejudice** التَّعَصُّبُ الأعمى (لا يقوم على مبررات منطقية)
- **face/encounter prejudice** يعاني من / يواجه التَّعَصُّب

- **prejudice(against) (v)** يُؤلِّب / يُحرِّض علي / يؤثر سلباً (ضد)
 - Your loud voice prejudiced the manager against you.
 - Don't do anything to prejudice our chances of winning.
- **prejudiced(against) (adj)** متحيز / لديه تعصب (ضد)
 - The Israeli government is prejudiced against the Palestinians.
- **prejudicial(to) (adj)** ضار / مؤذٍ (ب / ل)
 - This decision is prejudicial to your son's future.

qualified

- **qualify (ied) (v)** يتخرج - يتأهل
 - My wife qualified in 2006.
- **qualify as + موضوع / تخصص**
 - My wife qualified as an engineer in 2006.
- **qualify in + موضوع / تخصص**
 - My wife qualified in engineering in 2006.
- **be qualified to + inf.** يكون مؤهل لكي
 - Omar is qualified to do surgeries.
- **qualify (to) (v)** يؤهل / يجعل ... مؤهل لـ
 - Education qualifies you to life and work.
- **qualify (v)** يتأهل لدور أعلى في المسابقات
 - The Egyptian team last qualified to the final match in 2017.
- **qualified (adj) ≠ unqualified (adj)** غير مؤهل - لديه مؤهلات - متأهل
 - The job market has chances to qualified youth, not the unqualified.
- **qualification (n)** مؤهل (مفرد مؤهلات)
 - Try to improve both your qualifications and your skills.
- **qualification (n)** تأهل (الدور أعلى في بطولة رياضية)
 - The qualification of Al Ahly team to the final match of the Club World Cup is a dream.

stereotype

- **stereotype(of/about) (n)** (عن) فكرة نمطية غير عادلة - تصور نمطي مخالف للواقع (ل / عن)
- Successful women have changed the **stereotype** of women as passive victims. ضحايا سلبية
- **stereotype(as) (v)**
- Women used to be **stereotyped** as passive victims. يتجنني علي / يُصنّف بشكل غير عادل
- **stereotyped (adj)**
- My uncle is a **stereotyped** farmer who spends his whole day working on his farm and looking after his animals. نمطي / تقليدي

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary ▶ تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I asked my friends and followers to their opinions on my new book.
a. contribute b. inspire c. innovate d. spark
- Stop shouting at referees, Ahmed! You are always them against our team.
a. demonstrating b. defying c. stereotyping d. prejudicing
- We tried to our old flat to be Ahmed's private clinic.
a. react b. qualify c. impress d. assume
- I don't like the image of the homeless as criminals.
a. biased b. prejudiced c. stereotyped d. a, b & c
- Which of the following is correct?
a. Using mobiles is contributory in 30% of road accidents.
b. Using mobiles is a factor which is contributory in 30% of road accidents.
c. Using mobiles is a contributory factor in 30% of road accidents.
d. b & c

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	التعبير (contribute ... opinion) يعني (يشارك برأيه / يعطي رأيه)
2.	d	التعبير (prejudice ... against) يعني (يؤلب / يستفز ضد) وهو المقصود في هذا السياق
3.	b	الفعل (qualify) هنا يعني (يؤهل ل) أي (يجعل الشقة القديمة تصلح كعيادة)
4.	d	الصفات الثلاثة تؤدي نفس المعنى (نمطي / متحيز / متجنني) وهو المقصود في هذا السياق.
5.	c	الصفة (contributory) بهذا المعنى (مُشارك / مُساعد) تُستخدم قبل الاسم فقط.

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

People who inspire Firsts for Egyptian women

(58 page 17)

This week, we are celebrating two remarkable Egyptian women who broke down stereotypes and prejudices, demonstrating that women's place in society is important and continues to grow.

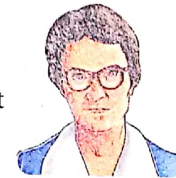
Hilana Sedarous

Born : 1904-1998

Education: London Medical School

Hilana Sedarous was the first Egyptian woman to become a doctor in modern Egypt and scholars believe that she was the first Arab woman to be a doctor, too. She was born in Tanta and was sent to London in 1922 to study mathematics with five other Egyptian students. However, while she was there, she decided to study medicine instead. She was considered⁽¹⁾ one of the first medical students to study in England.

In 1930, after going through many obstacles⁽²⁾ she qualified⁽³⁾ as a doctor and returned to Egypt where she opened a private⁽⁴⁾ clinic⁽⁵⁾ for women. She was treating⁽⁶⁾ patients until she was 70 years old. After retiring⁽⁷⁾, she started writing and translating stories for children.



Check Vocabulary

- يعتبر (1)
- عوائق / عقبات (2)
- يتأهل (3)
- خاص (4)
- عيادة (5)
- يعالج (6)
- يتقاعد (7)

Yasmeen Yehya Moustafa

(58 page 17)

Born : 1998

Awards : 1st place⁽¹⁾ in the Intel Science and Engineering⁽²⁾ competition⁽³⁾, NASA named a minor planet after her family (Moustafa 31910) recognising⁽⁴⁾ her contribution to science.

Education: Maadi STEM School for Girls, Middle East Technical University



Check Vocabulary

- مركز/ترتيب (1)
- الهندسة (2)
- مسابقة (3)
- يتعرف علي (4)

Yasmeen is a role model⁽⁵⁾ for other young Egyptians. Born in Damietta, she defied⁽⁶⁾ stereotypes⁽⁷⁾, by moving to Cairo alone to attend⁽⁸⁾ the Maadi STEM school.

The CEO of Intel Egypt said that Yasmeen has received a "unique"⁽⁹⁾ honour⁽¹⁰⁾, adding that her success in the field of scientific research is considered an achievement for all of the Egyptian society; and for Intel which encourages youth to be creative.

Yasmeen's winning invention was sparked⁽¹¹⁾ by the need for cleaner water in her village. She found that burning rice straw⁽¹²⁾ gave clean water and also produced a natural fuel⁽¹³⁾ which can be used to generate⁽¹⁴⁾ electricity.

She says her school gave her the confidence⁽¹⁵⁾ to innovate⁽¹⁶⁾ and to defy prejudice⁽¹⁷⁾: 'I believe I can change the world', she proudly states⁽¹⁸⁾.

(5) قدوة

(6) يتحدى

(7) الأنماط التقليدية

(8) يدرس في

(9) فريد / متميز

(10) تكريم / شرف

(11) انطلقت شرارته

(12) قش

(13) وقود

(14) يولد

(15) الثقة

(16) يبتكر

(17) التحيز

(18) يصرح / يصرح

2021 : A great year for Egyptian women athletes !

(5B page 10)

2021 was an amazing year for Egyptian female⁽¹⁾ athletes⁽²⁾. At the Tokyo Olympic Games, Ferial Abdelaziz became the first female Egyptian to win the karate gold medal. Ferial studied to become a pharmacist⁽³⁾, and had played karate since she was seven. Before she won the Olympic gold medal, she had already won a bronze⁽⁴⁾ medal at the World Championships⁽⁵⁾ in Spain and a silver⁽⁶⁾ medal at the 2019 Africa Games in Morocco⁽⁷⁾.

However, Ferial was not the only Egyptian to win a medal at the Tokyo Olympics. Giana Farouk won a bronze medal at the same event. Giana had also won a gold medal at the Africa Games in Congo in 2015 and three gold medals at the World Championships (two in Germany⁽⁸⁾ in 2014 and one in Austria⁽⁹⁾ in 2016).



Check Vocabulary

(1) أنثى

(2) لاعبة ألعاب قوى

(3) صيدلانية

(4) برونز

(5) بطولات

(6) فضة

(7) المغرب

(8) ألمانيا

(9) النمسا

Her story

Also in 2021, Egyptian tennis player Mayar Sherif became the first Egyptian woman to be ranked⁽¹⁰⁾ in the top 100 players of the Women's Tennis Association⁽¹¹⁾ (WTA), reaching number 74 in September. This was after she reached the WTA finals in Romania, where she lost to⁽¹²⁾ Andrea Petkovic. Earlier in the year, she beat⁽¹³⁾ Chloe Paquet from France in the first round of the 2021 Australian Open. Up until then⁽¹⁴⁾, no Egyptian woman had won a match in a Grand Slam tournament⁽¹⁵⁾.



(10) يحتل تصنيف

(11) اتحاد

(12) يخسر أمام

(13) يهزم

(14) حتى ذلك الحين

(15) بطولة

(16) يهزم على

(17) وفخر

(18) مصرفة - معادلة

(19) عزم - تصميم

(20) صبر

These great women athletes and many others faced many obstacles and challenges. However, they were able to overcome⁽¹⁶⁾ them and proudly⁽¹⁷⁾ put Egypt on the world map of sports. The secret formula⁽¹⁸⁾ for their success was hard work, determination⁽¹⁹⁾ and a lot of patience⁽²⁰⁾.

(WB page 8)

Dr Tahani Amer grew up in a suburb⁽¹⁾ of Cairo. Her love of engineering⁽²⁾ started while she was watching her father repair a car engine when she was young, although she thought she would study medicine at university.



Check Vocabulary

(1) حي / ضاحية

(2) الهندسة

(3) أعلى الدرجات

(4) يزاوج

(5) خروجه الماجستير

(6) الهندسة الفضائية

(7) مظهر

(8) فرصة

She then married when she was 17 and moved to the USA in 1983.

Although she did not speak any English at that time, this did not stop her from doing well in maths and she got top grades⁽³⁾ in her exams. She took a two-year degree in science while she was bringing up⁽⁴⁾ two young children, and then took a higher degree in engineering. In 1992, she got a master's degree⁽⁵⁾ in aerospace engineering⁽⁶⁾ and another qualification⁽⁷⁾ in engineering after that. It is easy to understand why she believes that education is the key to opportunity⁽⁸⁾!

In 2021 Fatma was 21. Before this time, Fatma had been playing top handball for many years. Before she went to university, Fatma had already played for the Egyptian youth⁽¹⁾ team (the Under-18s) and before she graduated⁽²⁾, she had played for the junior⁽³⁾ team (the Under-20s). She became one of the best women handball players in the country.

In 2021, Egypt did not have a handball team for players over 21. When we spoke to Fatma, she said that in the past the country had spent a lot of money on the men's handball team, which helped it to become very successful. She hoped that the sports organisers⁽⁴⁾ would spend money on a women's team in the future.

She also pointed out⁽⁵⁾ that in the past, women had been very successful in other sports, such as Hedaya Malaak and Sara Ahmed who won medals at the 2016 Olympics. She said there was no reason women handball players could not do extremely⁽⁶⁾ well too.

Let's hope that soon her dream will come true⁽⁷⁾ and that there will be an international⁽⁸⁾ Egyptian handball team for women over 21. We're sure that they will be very successful.

(WB page 9)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) الشباب
- (2) يخرج
- (3) ناشئ / حديث السن
- (4) مُنظَّم / قائم علي
- (5) يوضح / يشير إلى
- (6) للغاية
- (7) يتحقق
- (8) دولي / عالمي

Part IV

Language

تم تقسيم الفوائد اللغوية علي دروس الوحدة ليتمكن الطالب من إتقانها.

تلوية

Past perfect simple & Past perfect continuous

1 Past Perfect simple : active and passive

الماضي التام البسيط : المبني للمعلوم والمبني للمجهول

Active

المبني للمعلوم

Subj. الفاعل + had ('d) + P.P. ...

- I had bought some fruit before going home.

Passive

المبني للمجهول

Object المفعول + had + been + P.P. ...

- Some fruit had been bought (by me) before going home.

تعليمات الماضي التام

Uses of the Past Perfect

التعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقت محدد في الماضي ، وفي هذه الحالة نستخدم تعبيرات مثل:

- by / before / this time / في مثل هذا الوقت / في مثل هذا الوقت / قبل / بحلول

- By eleven o'clock yesterday, the secretary had sent three emails.
 التعبير عن حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي (الحدث الثاني يكون في زمن ماضي بسيط):

- She had done the housework before she went to bed.

- يمكن استخدام (since / for / just / already) مع الماضي التام :

- I was sorry when the company closed. I had worked there since my graduation.

- I had already studied English before I travelled to Scotland.

Mini Test 1

أعطي

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. By 1999, Mr Mohammed his post-graduate studies.

a. did b. was done c. had done d. had been done

2. By 1999, Mr Mohammed's post-graduate studies

a. finished b. was finished c. had finished d. had been finished

3. When I saw Mr Ayman in London last year, he there for three years already.

a. had lived b. had been lived c. lived d. was lived

4. Ahmed was angry because Sana his tablet.

a. has broken b. had broken c. was broken d. had been broken

Important Notes

ملحظات هامة

لاحظ استخدام الماضي التام والماضي البسيط مع الرباط الزمنية :

Time connector
الرابطة الزمنية

Time clause
المادة الزمنية

Main clause
الجملة الرئيسية

before / by the time
عندما / في الوقت الذي

past simple
ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

past perfect
ماضي تام (حدث أول)

as soon as / بمجرد أن

past perfect
ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

past simple
ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

once / بمجرد أن

past perfect
ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

past simple
ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

when / في اللحظة التي

past perfect
ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

past simple
ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

It was only when

past perfect
ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

past simple
ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

It wasn't until

past perfect
ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

past simple
ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

- Before / By the time / When I went to bed, I had checked my email.

= I had checked my email before / by the time / when I went to bed.

- After / As soon as / Once / The moment / When I had checked my email, I went to bed.

= I went to bed after / as soon as / once / the moment / when I had checked my email.

- It was only when / It wasn't until I had checked my email that I went to bed.

لاحظ استخدام (until - till) :

- Past simple ماضي بسيط (ماضي غالبا) + until / till لغاية / حتى + Past perfect ماضي تام (ماضي غالبا) :
- I didn't go to bed until / till I had checked my email.

تذكر :

- يمكن استخدام الماضي التام أو البسيط بعد (until / till) :

- We didn't leave until he arrived / had arrived home.

- عند استخدام (until / till) كحرف جر يأتي بعدها تعبير زمني :

- The match didn't start until nine.

- I waited for you till midday.

يُستخدم (inf.+ing) بعد كل من (after / before) في حال عدم وجود فاعل :

- After checking my email, I went to bed.

= Before going to bed, I had checked my email.

لاحظ استخدام (Having) :

- Having + P.P., past simple ماضي بسيط (ماضي معلوم)

- Having checked my email, I went to bed.

- Having + been + P.P., past simple ماضي بسيط (ماضي مجهول)

- Having been checked, the email was sent to all customers.

لاحظ هذه التركيبة :

- By / Before / this time + ماضي + ظرف زمان ماضي + ماضي تام

- By 2013, he had written 5 short stories.

ⓐ لاحظ استخدام الماضي التام مع الظروف التالية بمعنى (لم يكـد حتى):
ماضي بسيط + **than + past simple**

- Subj. + had + no sooner + P.P. ... **than + past simple**

ماضي بسيط + **when / before + past simple**

- Subj. + had + hardly / scarcely + P.P. + **when / before + past simple**

- I had no sooner checked my email **than** I went to bed.

- I had hardly checked my email **when / before** I went to bed.

ⓑ لاحظ : عندما نبدأ بالظروف السابقة تقدم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل كالآتي :
ماضي بسيط + **than + past simple**

- No sooner + had + subj. + P.P. ... **than + past simple**

ماضي بسيط + **when / before + past simple**

- Hardly / Scarcely + had + subj. + P.P. ... **when / before + past simple**

- No sooner had I checked my email **than** I went to bed.

- Hardly had I checked my email **when / before** I went to bed.

Mini Test 2 Apply

ⓐ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I had eaten a sandwich I went out.
a. after b. before c. as soon as d. a & c
- I had eaten a sandwich, I went out.
a. After b. Before c. As soon as d. a & c
- going out, I had eaten a sandwich.
a. After b. Before c. As soon as d. a & c
- eating a sandwich at home, I went out.
a. After b. Before c. As soon as d. a & c
- I out until I had eaten a sandwich.
a. had gone b. hadn't gone c. went d. didn't go
- I had no sooner eaten a sandwich I went out.
a. when b. that c. than d. then
- Hardly a sandwich when I went out.
a. I had eaten b. had I eaten c. I ate d. was I eating
- midnight, I'd returned home.
a. By b. After c. On d. At

Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

ⓐ لاحظ ان الجملة التي تبدأ بـ (**not until / not since / only after / only when / only**)
يتقدم الفعل المساعد أو الناقص على الفاعل في الجملة الرئيسية:

- **Not until** I had checked my email **did I go** to bed.

ⓑ لاحظ الصيغة التالية في المبني للمعلوم:

ماضي بسيط + **past simple** + ماضي تام مبني للمعلوم + **past perfect** + رابطة زمنية

- Having + p.p. ... + **past simple**

ماضي بسيط + **(inf. + ing) ... + past simple**

- **After I had done** the shopping, I stopped a taxi to take me home.

= **Having done** the shopping, I stopped a taxi to take me home.

= **Doing** the shopping, I stopped a taxi to take me home.

ⓑ لاحظ الصيغة التالية في المبني للمجهول:

ماضي بسيط + **past simple** + ماضي تام مبني للمجهول + **past perfect** + رابطة زمنية

- Having been + p.p. ... + **past simple**

ماضي بسيط + **p.p. ... + past simple**

- **As soon as my car had been repaired** in the garage, it stopped using too much petrol.

= **Having been repaired** in the garage, my car stopped using too much petrol.

= **Repaired** in the garage, my car stopped using too much petrol.

ⓐ عند ذكر توقيت محدد لوقوع الحدث فإن الماضي البسيط يمكن أن يحل محل الماضي التام
(كلاهما صحيح) خاصة مع (**after / before**) :

- She **had visited** her uncle in hospital **last Friday** before she **visited** him again **yesterday**. (✓)

- She **visited** her uncle in hospital **last Friday** before she **visited** him again **yesterday**. (✓)

2 Past Perfect continuous

الإيجابيات والنفي

Affirmation & Negation

subj. + had / hadn't + been + (inf. + ing)

- She **had been watching** TV for two hours when she fell asleep.
- We **hadn't been playing** chess when Omar arrived

السؤال - (هل)

Yes / No Q.

Had + subj. + been + (inf. + ing)

- **Had she been watching** TV for two hours when she fell asleep?

السؤال بأداة استفهام

'Wh__' Q.

Q.W. + had + subj. + been + (inf. + ing)

- How long **had she been watching** TV when she fell asleep?

الاستخدامات

Uses

- يُستخدم الماضي التام المستمر للتعبير عن حدث استمر لفترة قبل وقت معين في الماضي
- I **had been waiting** at the airport for an hour **before your arrival**.
- By **midnight**, I **had been studying** unit 2 for two hours.
- يُستخدم الماضي التام المستمر للتعبير عن حدث استمر لفترة قبل وقوع حدث آخر في الماضي
- She **had been studying** physics for five hours when she **took** a rest.
- يُستخدم الماضي التام المستمر للتعبير عن حدث استمر لفترة وكان له أثر على حدث آخر في الماضي (الأثر ناتج عن استمرارية الحدث الأول)
Mum **looked** tired because she **had been working** hard all day.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

- غالباً لا يُستخدم الماضي التام المستمر مع الأفعال اللحظية (التي لا تستغرق مدي زمني) ونستخدم الماضي التام البسيط:
- break down / stop / close / open / end / receive / arrive / etc.
- My car **had broken** down before I **reached** work.
(Not: had been breaking down)
- لا يُستخدم الماضي التام المستمر عند ذكر عدد مرات حدوث الفعل، بل نستخدم الماضي التام البسيط:
- Before I **went** to bed, I **had sent** five emails. (Not: had been sending)
- في الغالب، يُستخدم الماضي التام البسيط وليس الماضي التام المستمر مع الأفعال التقريرية (أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والتملك والإدراك):

feeling المشاعر	- like, dislike, love, hate, prefer, enjoy, want, wish etc.
senses الحواس	- hear, see, smell, feel, taste, etc.
Perception الإدراك	- appear يبدو - seem يبدو - look يبدو - sound يبدو - realize يدرك - understand يفهم - know - mean يقصد / يعني - think يعتقد - imagine يتخيل - recognize - بتعرف علي - remember يتذكر - forget - ينسى ...
other verbs أفعال أخرى	- be بهم / يتعلق ب - concern - يخص / ينتمي إلي - belong - يكون / يوجد - depend يعتمد - involve يشتمل / يتورط - matter بهم - need يحتاج - owe يملك - have يملك - possess يملك - own يدين بمال ...

- He **had looked** ready before the match **started**. (Not: had been looking)
- I **had needed** to have a drink before I **went** out. (Not: had been needing)
- لاحظ استخدام أزمنة الماضي مع روابط السبب والنتيجة:
ماضي مستمر / ماضي تام مستمر / ماضي تام / ماضي بسيط + because / since / as
- I **didn't play** tennis because I **was** busy.
- He **didn't go** swimming since **he was waiting** for some guests at home.
- He **was** sick because he **had eaten** too much food.
- She **looked** exhausted as she **had been working** hard all week.
- ماضي بسيط + so / that's why / ...
ماضي مستمر / ماضي تام مستمر / ماضي تام / ماضي بسيط
- I **was** busy. That's why I **didn't play** tennis.
- He **was** waiting for some guests at home, so he **didn't go** swimming.
- He **had eaten** too much food, so he **was** sick.
- She **had been working** hard all week, so she **looked** exhausted.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I Getting Started

1. She the city before her school trip.
a. visits b. visiting c. has already visited d. had already visited
2. I had for three hours before I went to bed.
a. been studying b. been studied c. studying d. study
3. they got home; she had already left.
a. By then b. As soon as c. By the time d. Having
4. She went to bed early because she for a long time.
a. had played b. has played c. was playing d. would play
5. By 2012, I three novels. It was a great achievement for me.
a. had written b. will have c. had begun d. was writing
6. We arrived half an hour late. The film half an hour earlier.
a. began b. was beginning c. had begun d. has begun
7. Mona didn't send the message to her father until she it.
a. has been checking b. has checked c. had checked d. checking
8. After the house painted, we furnished it.
a. had b. had been c. has been d. is
9. They to spend the feast with us every year until we moved.
a. use b. are used c. have used d. used
10. She a teacher before she became a journalist.
a. had been b. has been c. was being d. is
11. Montaz for only three weeks, so he failed his driving test.
a. trains b. has trained c. has been trained d. had been driving

12. Was she upset because her mother died recently?
a. has b. was c. had been d. had
13. This book by a famous writer.
a. was written b. had been written c. wrote d. has written

14. I stories very quickly, but I no longer do that.
a. have written b. used to write c. am writing d. write
15. I short stories for five years. Now, I only write novels.
a. had written b. wrote c. have written d. was writing
16. The river was very full because it for a week.
a. rain b. rains c. been raining d. had been raining
17. Yesterday evening, a million people the programme.
a. have watched b. watched c. were watched d. had been watched
18. The windows at school this morning.
a. clean b. were cleaning c. were cleaned d. have cleaned
19. Five trees in the park down.
a. has been cut b. had been cutting c. had cut d. were cut
20. My last novel changed several times before I was happy with it.
a. had been b. had c. has been d. has
21. When it began to rain, the players for ten minutes.
a. are playing b. played c. have been playing d. had been playing
22. My father me to a football match at the weekend.
a. has taken b. was taken c. had taken d. took
23. No sooner the medicine than he left.
a. has he taken b. he took c. had he taken d. he had taken
24. his own company, he took on many workers.
a. Founds b. Founded c. Found d. Founding

II Special Cases

25. As soon as I'd finished my story, I the next one. **d. I will start**
 a. started **b. would start** **c. was starting**
26. When I was sixteen, I going for a swim every day. **d. got used to**
 a. usually **b. used to** **c. used**
27. Luckily, when I the station, the train left. **d. had been reaching**
 a. reach **b. had been reaching** **c. reached**
28. He by a mosquito during the night. **d. was bitten**
 a. has bitten **b. had bitten** **c. bit**
29. had I saved a lot of money when I bought a car. **d. Scarcely**
 a. No sooner **b. After** **c. Before**
30. Before you told me about him, I of that novelist. **d. hadn't ever heard**
 a. hadn't ever heard **b. wasn't hearing** **c. haven't ever heard**
31. My friend for more than an hour when he finally put the phone down. **b. has talked**
 a. has been talking **d. had been talking** **c. are talking**
32. Having in medicine, he became a doctor. **d. graduates**
 a. graduate **b. graduated** **c. graduating**
33. I'd rather you this car. It's a bargain. **d. will buy**
 a. buy **b. to buy** **c. bought**
34. When she suggested the idea, I using a computer. It wasn't new to me. **b. am trying**
 a. have been trying **d. tried** **c. had tried**
35. When she suggested the idea, I using a computer. I took her advice. **b. am trying**
 a. have been trying **d. tried** **c. had tried**
36. I watching a cartoon on my tablet last night. **b. am used to enjoying**
 a. used to enjoy **d. would enjoy** **c. enjoyed**
37. We that we had to give in our homework on Thursday. **d. tell**
 a. were told **b. told** **c. have told**

Check your understanding

38. Having the shopping, mother started to prepare lunch. **b. she did**
 a. do **c. she does** **d. done**
39. How many sandwiches when you felt you were full? **b. had you eaten**
 a. have you eaten **d. had you been eating** **c. had you been eaten**
40. Those old stories are still by many children today. **d. love**
 a. loved **b. loving** **c. being loved**
41. The cake mum made good. **d. smell**
 a. was smelling **b. had smell** **c. was smell**
42. Before I reached my office, my car down. **b. has broken**
 a. breaks **d. had broken** **c. had been breaking**
43. "I had the habit of sleeping with the lights on, but now I don't." This means
 a. I got used to sleeping with the lights on.
 b. I am used to sleeping with the lights on.
 c. I used to sleep with the lights on.
 d. I used to sleep with the lights off.
44. "I used to sleep with the lights on." This means
 a. I am used to sleeping with the lights on.
 b. I was used to sleeping with the lights off.
 c. I used to sleep with no lights on.
 d. I no longer sleep with the lights on.
45. "She had lunch at two". This means
 a. lunch was had at two. **b. lunch was eaten at two.**
 c. lunch had eaten at two. **d. lunch had been eating at two.**
46. "I wish I were a doctor." This means
 a. I am not a doctor.
 b. I wasn't a doctor.
 c. it is possible for me to be a doctor.
 d. I am not a doctor any longer.
47. "I'd rather you didn't ask me for money." This means
 a. I didn't have money. **b. I didn't want to lend you money.**
 c. I don't want to lend you money. **d. I regret lending you money.**

48. "I had my lunch after taking a shower." This means
- I had had my lunch after I took a shower.
 - I had had my lunch before I took a shower.
 - Having taken a shower, I had my lunch.
 - Taken a shower, I had my lunch

Advanced Exercises on Language

توجيه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- This time yesterday, I three coffees.
a. had been drinking b. had drunk c. was drunk d. have drunk
- a small screw, I fastened the switch.
a. Using b. Used c. Being used d. Be used
-, my laptop worked well.
a. Fixing b. Having fixed
c. Having been fixed d. To be fixed
- Cooked for an hour, the meat ready to eat.
a. had been b. were being c. were d. has been
- in the sun, the shirt was ready to be ironed.
a. Drying b. Dried c. Having dried d. Be dried

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	لا يُستخدم الماضي التام المستمر عند ذكر عدد المفعول (تكرار حدوث الفعل).
2.	a	صيغة اسم الفعل هنا هي اختصار لعبارة (By using) أو (With the use of)
3.	c	الصفة (Having been fixed) هي اختصار للعبارة المبنيّة للمجهول : - After it had been fixed.
4.	c	السياق ماضى فلا يمكن استخدام المضارع التام (has been) الحدث الأول هو الطهي، لذلك لا يمكن استخدام الماضي التام (had been) مع الحدث الثاني لا يمكن استخدام الفعل (be) كفعل أساسي بهذا المعنى في الماضي المستمر (was being)
5.	b	صيغة اسم المفعول (dried) هي اختصار للعبارة المبنيّة للمجهول : - After it had been dried.



Part I

Vocabulary & Definitions

اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

توجيه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bar graph = bar chart (n)	رسم بياني بالأعمدة	minority(n)	أقلية
cheerful(adj)	مبتهج/بشوش	miserable(adj)	بانس/تعيس
conclude (d) (v)	يختتم - يستنتج	naughty(adj)	شقي/مُشاغب
conclusion(n)	الخلاصة/الخاتمة - استنتاج	patient (adj - n)	صبور - مريض
cross(ed) (adj/v)	غاضب/مُقاطع - يعبر	impatient(adj)	متعجل/نافذ الصبر
cruel(adj)	قاسي	percentage(n)	نسبة مئوية
eye contact(n)	التواصل البصري	reflect(ed) (v)	يعكس/يُبين - يتفكر في
grumpy(adj)	حاد الطبع/مُتأفف	significant(adj)	هام/ ذو مغزى
majority(n)	أغلبية		

2 Important Vocabulary

across(adv/prep)	بعرض - عبر	trouble(n)	مشكلة/مأزق
adventure(n)	مغامرة	note(d) (v)	يلاحظ
argue(d) (v)	يجادل	noticeable(adj)	ملحوظ/واضح
around(adv/prep)	حوالي/حول	obvious(adj)	واضح
activist(n)	ناشط	pattern(n)	نمط / صيغة
colonial(adj)	استعماري	pause(d) (v)	يتوقف - يوقف
contribution	مساهمة - مشاركة	raise(d) (v)	يرفع - يرفع
disabled(adj)	مُعاق (ذو الهمم)	region(n)	منطقة/إقليم
economic(adj)	اقتصادي	result(n)	نتيجة
encourage(d) (v)	يُشجع	seem(ed) (v)	يبدو
especially(adv)	بصفة خاصة	similar(adj)	مشابه
explain(ed) (v)	يوضح/يشرح	size(n)	حجم
fair(n/adj)	منتدي/معروض - عادل	speculate(d) (v)	يتأمل - يتساءل
figure(n)	رقم - احصائية - صورة	speech(n)	بفضلول - يتفكر
graph(n)	رسم بياني	swing(n)	خطبة - الكلام
march(ed) (v)	يزحف - يتظاهر	vision(n)	أرجوحة
generation(n)	جيل		رؤية
judge(n)	قاضي		

3 Definitions تعريفات

bar graph(n) رسم بياني بالأعمدة	a diagram that uses lines or narrow rectangles (= bars) of different heights (but equal widths) to show different amounts, so that they can be compared happy, or behaving in a way that shows you are happy
cheerful(adj) مبتجع/إبتشروش	happy
conclusion(n) الخلاصة/الختامنة	the end of something such as a speech or a piece of writing
cross(adj) غاضب/ساخط/شاظع	angry or quite angry
cruel(adj) قاسي	deliberately hurting people or animals
eye contact(n) التواصل البصري	when you look directly at someone at the same time as they are looking at you
grumpy(adj) حاد الطبع /شاظف	bad-tempered and easily annoyed
majority(n) أغلبية	most of the people or things in a group
minority(n) أقلية	a small group of people or things within a much larger group
miserable(adj) بائس/تعبس	extremely unhappy, for example because you feel lonely, cold, or badly treated
naughty(adj) شقي/مشاظب	doing something that is not right or good, but is not very serious خطر
patient(adj) صبور	able to wait calmly for a long time or to accept difficulties, people's annoying behaviour etc. without becoming angry
percentage(n) نسبة مئوية	an amount expressed as if it is part of a total which is 100
reflect(ed) (v) يعكس/أعكس	to show or be a sign of a particular situation or feeling
significant(adj) هام/ ذو معنى	having an important effect or influence, especially on what will happen in the future

Exercise On Vocabulary

Understand

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- Sana is a/an..... little girl. Her smile is always illuminating her face.
 - cheerful
 - disabled
 - economic
 - noticeable
- His everyday visits to his parents his love for them.
 - reflect
 - raise
 - speculate
 - pause
- It is a good quality if a person is
 - grumpy
 - cross
 - patient
 - impatient
- Those who don't like the plan are only a They won't be influential.
 - bar graph
 - percentage
 - majority
 - minority
- My little son is always being when we have guests. He makes me really embarrassed. مخرج
 - naughty
 - patient
 - cheerful
 - significant
- Dr Hamid is examining an old right now.
 - award
 - inspiration
 - patient
 - conclusion
- My son is a bit when I wake him up in the early morning; he doesn't like it.
 - grumpy
 - inspiring
 - patient
 - impatient
- A high of teachers have registered سجل to take the coronavirus vaccine. لفاظ
 - bar graph
 - percentage
 - percent
 - minority
- Homeless people lead a/an life.
 - naughty
 - miserable
 - impressive
 - significant
- I want you just to and think carefully before deciding.
 - reflect
 - raise
 - speculate
 - pause
- For a student, being is a quality he/she can't do without.
 - economic
 - cross
 - patient
 - cheerful
- The are against the new plan. Only three people voted for it.
 - bar graph
 - percentage
 - majority
 - minority

13. My father's advice has had a/an influence on my life.
a. naughty b. miserable c. cruel d. significant
14. Dreams and imagination can be an ideal source of for artists.
a. award b. inspiration c. patient d. tomboy
15. Being while in the exam room. Sama always makes silly mistakes.
a. obvious b. significant c. patient d. impatient
16. You restate the topic and thesis of an essay in its
a. introduction b. conclusion c. background d. title

2 Important vocabulary

17. I receive fifteen business calls a day.
a. across b. around c. especially d. prejudicially
18. I am over the moon that there's a/an improvement in your health, grandpa.
a. miserable b. disabled c. economic d. noticeable
19. The of life in the countryside has changed due to social media and education.
a. pattern b. region c. figure d. graph
20. Ashraf the question of fixed salaries الراتب at the last meeting.
a. reflected b. raised c. speculated d. paused
21. The answer to this question is quite I don't know what you are thinking about!
a. grumpy b. miserable c. obvious d. patient
22. The Delta of Egypt is one of the most densely populated كثيفة السكان in Africa.
a. patterns b. regions c. figures d. graphs
23. All my friends have been about the reasons for my decision to leave my job. However, I prefer to keep it secret.
a. reflecting b. raising c. speculating d. pausing
24. The new investment law has reinforced عزز the growth in Egypt.
a. cheerful b. disabled c. economic d. noticeable
25. The shows how house prices have risen since the 1980s.
a. trouble b. region c. figure d. graph

26. The charity wants a donor مُتبرع to buy a wheelchair for a/an old lady.
a. cheerful b. disabled c. economic d. active
27. Sadly, official show that the number of smokers is rising.
a. adventures b. regions c. figures d. troubles

3 Definitions

28. A/An is the end of something such as a speech or a piece of writing.
a. conclusion b. tomboy c. inspiration d. event
29. To is to show or be a sign of a particular situation or feeling.
a. raise b. speculate c. reflect d. pause
30. means extremely unhappy, for example because you feel lonely, cold, or badly treated.
a. Naughty b. Grumpy c. Miserable d. Inspiring
31. The adjective "....." means having an important effect or influence, especially on what will happen in the future.
a. cruel b. cross c. patient d. significant
32. A/An is an amount expressed as if it is part of a total which is 100.
a. prejudice b. eye contact c. percentage d. bar graph
33. means deliberately hurting people or animals.
a. Cruel b. Cross c. Patient d. Significant
34. means a small group of people or things within a much larger group.
a. Minority b. Majority c. Podcast d. Stereotype
35. means annoyed or quite angry.
a. Cruel b. Cross c. Patient d. Significant
36. is when you look directly at someone at the same time as they are looking at you.
a. Prejudice b. Eye contact c. Percentage d. Bar graph
37. To be is to be able to wait calmly for a long time or to accept difficulties, people's annoying behaviour etc. without becoming angry.
a. cruel b. cross c. patient d. significant
38. The adjective "....." means doing something that is not right or good, but is not very serious.
a. naughty b. grumpy c. miserable d. inspiring

39. means most of the people or things in a group. **d. Stereotype**
 a. Minority **b. Majority** **c. Podcast**
40. A/An is a diagram that uses lines or narrow rectangles of different heights to show different amounts, so that they can be compared. **d. bar graph**
 a. prejudice **b. eye contact** **c. percentage**
41. A/An person is bad-tempered and easily annoyed. **d. inspiring**
 a. naughty **b. grumpy** **c. miserable**

Part II Vocabulary Study

تأليفه ساعد فطانت على الرقعة، واستقرت عن طريق استذكر هذا الجزء شيفاً بالشكر.

1 Verbal Collocations مترادفات لفظية

be	a big inspiration to	have	an accident	يتعرض لحادث
explain	why	make	a speech	يلقي كلمة/خطبة
	better grades		eye contact	يتصل بالتراسل البصري
get	dirty		the best of	يقدم بأفضل
	cross with		ideas	يطرح أفكار
	very impatient	raise	a question	يطرح سؤال/موضوع
give	reasons	reflect	the stereotype	يعكس الصورة النمطية

Mini Test 1 Collocations

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- You are always late for work! Can you why?
 a. get **b. make** **c. raise** **d. explain**
 - I don't believe the reasons you have
 a. made **b. given** **c. taken** **d. reflected**
 - It is important how to new ideas to students. That makes the difference.
 a. be **b. have** **c. get** **d. present**

2 Synonyms مترادفات

- When they go to the park, my children always their clothes dirty.
 a. get **b. let** **c. raise** **d. explain**
- This film the stereotype of the Egyptian farmer.
 a. makes **b. gives** **c. takes** **d. reflects**
- Dr Zezail a big inspiration to a lot of young people.
 a. is **b. lectures** **c. gets** **d. speculates**
- It is necessary to eye contact when you are talking to someone.
 a. get **b. make** **c. raise** **d. explain**
- Rodayna always cross quickly with her cousin Zeinab.
 a. is **b. has** **c. gets** **d. presents**
- The question you have is very important.
 a. awarded **b. rose** **c. raised** **d. been**

Word

Synonym (= Meaning)

bar graph(n)	رسم بياني بالأعمدة	bar chart/ diagram
cross(adj)	غاضب/ساخط/مقاطع	angry/ annoyed
cruel(adj)	قاسي	savage/inhuman/barbaric
grumpy(adj)	حاد الطبع / متأنف	bad-tempered/irritable
naughty(adj)	شقي / مُضايغ	badly behaved/disobedient
patient(adj)	صبور	forbearing /even-tempered

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word

Antonym (= Opposite)

cross(adj)	غاضب/ساخط/مقاطع	cheerful/pleased/
cruel(adj)	قاسي	good-humoured
grumpy(adj)	حاد الطبع / متأنف	kind /compassionate/
majority(n)	أغلبية	merciful
naughty(adj)	شقي / مُضايغ	good-natured
patient(adj)	صبور	minority(n)
significant(adj)	هام / ذو مغزى	good/well-behaved/
		obedient
		impatient
		insignificant

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- "Salma is cross with Hany." The word 'cross' in this sentence is a synonym of
a. angry b. miserable c. impatient d. pleased
- 'Patient' is to 'impatient' as '.....' is to 'merciful'.
a. forbearing b. even-tempered c. cruel d. kind
- He is good-natured. This means he is not
a. obedient b. grumpy c. significant d. tomboy
- 'Bar graph' is also known as a/an
a. paragraph b. bar chart c. diagram d. b & c

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
conclude يختتم - يستنتج	conclusion الخلاصة/الخاتمة - استنتاج	concluding ختامي conclusive بات / جازم / قاطع	conclusively بشكل قاطع
cross يعبر / يجتاز / يتقاطع cross بضع علامة (+) أو (x)	cross مزيج cross علامة (+) أو (x)	cross غاضب/ متضابق	crossly بغضب
grump يتذمر - يكثر من الشكوى	grump شخص متذمر (كثير الشكوى) grumpiness التذمر - كثرة الشكوى	grumpy حاد الطبع / متأنف / متذمر	grumpily يتأنف - يتذمر
	naughtiness البذاءة - الشيطنة (الشقاوة)	naughty شقي / مشاغب	naughtily ببداءة (بشقاوة)
	patient شخص مريض patience الصبر	patient صبور	patiently بصبر
reflect يعكس - يوضح / يبين - يتفكر في - يعلق على	reflection انعكاس - التفكير العميق reflector سطح عاكس	reflective عاكس - مُستغرق في تفكير عميق	

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- She refused my offer without giving a reason.
a. crossed b. a cross c. cross d. crossly
- I have all the wrong statements.
a. crossed b. a cross c. cross d. crossly
- I have put in the cell next to the wrong statement.
a. crossed b. a cross c. cross d. crossly
- Amir is about breaking his camera.
a. crossed b. a cross c. cross d. crossly
- is a very good quality.
a. Patience b. Patients c. Patiently d. Impatient
- in this hospital receive ideal health care.
a. Patience b. Patients c. Patiently d. Impatient
- I tried to explain why, but you were
a. patience b. patient c. patiently d. impatient
- My mother is the only person who listens to my complaints.
a. patience b. patient c. patiently d. impatient
- Try to concentrate تركّز on the positive sides instead of
a. grump b. grumpily c. grumpy d. grumpiness
- What a !
a. grump b. grumpily c. grumpy d. grumpiness
- Don't, man. That doesn't solve problems.
a. grump b. grumpily c. grumpy d. grumpiness
- What a woman!
a. grump b. grumpily c. grumpy d. grumpiness
- The report that the new plan is not easy to apply. يُطبّق
a. concluding b. conclusive c. conclusions d. concluded
- The part of the report summarised the findings. النتائج
a. concluding b. conclusive c. conclusion d. conclude
- He was arrested because there's a evidence against him.
a. concluding b. conclusive c. conclusion d. conclude

16. I saw the of clouds on the surface of water in the calm lake.
a. reflect b. reflection c. reflective d. reflectively
17. Mirrors light.
a. reflect b. reflection c. reflective d. reflectively
18. A mirror has a surface.
a. reflect b. reflections c. reflective d. reflectively

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a little bit naughty	شُغَابٌ قَلِيلًا	in other words,	بعبارة أخرى / بشكل آخر
a small minority	أقلية صغيرة	key information	معلومات رئيسية
confident about their abilities		obvious pattern	نمط واضح
	واثقين من قدراتهم	read ... aloud	يقرأ ... بصوت عال
equality at work	السواة في العمل	related to	متعلق بـ
female/woman doctor	طبيبة	significant/big difference	فارق واضح
for a while	لبعض الوقت	special about	مميز في
get into trouble	يقع في الشاكل	the reasons behind the results	الأسباب التي أدت إلى النتائج
in certain given countries	في بلدان معينة	three-quarters	ثلاثة أرباع
in conclusion	الخلاصة		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

argue with	يتجادل مع	look after	يرعى / يعتني بـ
care about	يهتم بـ	seem to	يبدو أن
encourages ... to	يشجع ... أن	speculate about	يتفكر في - يتأمل في

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I'm still trying to find out the reasons these unexpected results.
a. with b. behind c. from d. out of
2. She cares everything related to her children.
a. at b. in c. on d. about
3. To start the final paragraph of an essay, we can use '.....'.
a. In conclusion b. On conclusion
c. To conclude d. a & c

4. It is our role to look our parents when they become old.
a. after b. for c. up d. like
5. Keep safe. Try not to get trouble.
a. to b. on c. into d. up
6. When my phone rang, I asked Rodayna to watch the baby a while.
a. from b. for c. on d. during

7 Clear the Confusion لاحظ الفرق

patient - patience

- **patient (adj)** (صفة) صبور
- Be patient when you face problems.
- **patience (n)** (اسم غير معدود) الصبر
- Patience is needed when you face problems.
- **patient (n)** (اسم معدود) شخص مريض
- There are still three patients waiting for their turn.

cross + with/at/about

- **cross with (adj)** غاضب من / علي خصام مع (شخص)
- Adel was cross with Ramy who broke his camera.
- **cross at/about (adj)** غاضب بسبب (شيء أو تَصَرُّف)
- Adel was cross at/about his broken camera.

little

- يمكن استخدام (little) قبل اسم لا يُعد بمعنى (قليل من):
• **little + اسم** لا يُعد
- She had very little petrol in the tank of her car.
- يمكن استخدام (little) قبل اسم جمع بمعنى (صغير الحجم - قليل الأهمية):
- There are two or three little things that we need to do.
- Little children ask a lot of questions.

Percentages & Phrases

Percentage	Synonymous phrase	Meaning
0%	none of	لا شيء / من
5%	only a few/little of	قليل من
31%	less than a third of	أقل من الثلث
48%	nearly half the number/amount of	أشبه نصف عدد / كمية
79%	over three-quarters	أكثر من ثلاثة أرباع
96%	the majority of	أغلبية

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- A: I've achieved only 47% of the job. B: That's of it.
a. only a little b. nearly half c. the majority d. none
- It is not safe to leave children alone at home.
a. a little b. a few c. little d. few
- Don't ask your father for anything right now. He is cross the high electricity bill.
a. about b. with c. at d. a & c
- helps you overcome difficulties.
a. Patience b. A patience c. Patient d. A patient

8 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات الرئيسية

grumpy

- grumpy (adj)** متأنف / متأنف = irritable
- My brother Ahmed is a bit grumpy when lunch is late.
- grumpily (adv)** يتأنف - يتأنف
- Hossam grumpily said that was not going to argue with me any more.
- grumpiness (n)** التأنف - كثرة الشكوى
- Despite her grumpiness, she agreed to do the job.

- grump (n)** شخص متذمر (كثير الشكوى)
- Our neighbours' son is such a grump. He never stops complaining and crying.
- grump (ed) (about) (v)** يتذمر - يُكثر من الشكوى (من / بسبب)
- He is always grumping about his low salary.

majority

- major (adj)** كبير / رئيسي / خطير \neq minor
- My friend Ali had a major heart surgery last month. (خطير)
- Egypt played a major role in stopping the attack on Gaza. (كبير)
- major (n)** رائد (رتبة عسكرية)
- Major Essam was on top of a team of ten soldiers.
- majority (n)** الأغلبية - الأكثرية \neq minority
- In the last match, Al Ahly fans were in the majority.

لاحظ أن:

- نستخدم فعل جمع بعد (The majority of) إذا كان بعدها اسم جمع:
- The majority of + اسم جمع + فعل جمع
- The majority of football fans are young people.
- نستخدم فعل جمع بعد (The majority) إذا كانت تشير لأفراد مجموعة كل على حدة:
- The majority of + فعل جمع
- I meet several old people every day. The majority have health problems.
- عادة نستخدم فعل مفرد بعد (The majority) إذا كانت تشير للمجموعة كوحدة واحدة (لاحظ أنه في الإنجليزية البريطانية يمكن استخدام فعل جمع في هذا المعنى):
- The majority of + فعل مفرد / جمع
- The majority is/are against the war decision.

reflect

- reflect (ed) (v)** يعكس (الضوء أو صورة مثلاً)
- I saw my face reflected on the surface of water.
- reflect (v)** يوضح - يعكس
- The President's visit reflects the importance of the new project.
- reflect (on) (v)** يُعَمِّن التفكير في
- He reflected on the reasons for his son's low marks.

- reflect (that) (v) ينعكس / يفكر عميقاً
- He reflected that his son got low marks because he had wasted his time.
- reflection (n) انعكاس (الظرفاء أو صورة مثلاً)
- I saw the reflection of the plane on the Nile water.
- reflection (n) التفكير العميق
- After a five-minute reflection, I realized I was wrong.
- reflection (on/of) (n) انعكاس (ل) - دلالة (علي)
- Leen's comment was a reflection of the mood of all the students in class.
- reflector (n) سطح عاكس
- Mirrors are reflectors.
- reflective (adj) عاكس
- Mirrors have reflective surfaces.
- reflective (adj) دال على / عاكس لـ
- Some films are reflective of reality.
- reflective (adj) مُستغرق في تفكير عميق
- Don't disturb your father when he is in a reflective mood.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I have several friends here in Aswan. The majority ready to help me.
a. is b. are c. have d. has
- The majority of my customers objected to the new price policy.
a. is b. are c. have d. has
- At the meeting, the majority against the decision.
a. was b. were c. have d. a & b
- is a destructive quality.
a. Grumpiness b. Inspiration c. Miserable d. Majority
- We have nearly agreed on everything at the of the meeting.
a. contribution b. podcast c. conclusion d. minority

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	تفسير (The majority) هنا إلى (several friends) كل عام، لذلك لابد من استخدام فعل جمع، ولا يمكن استخدام (have) لأنها لا تتفق مع تركيب الجملة أو المعنى.
2.	c	إذا جاء بعد (The majority of) اسم جمع فلابد من استخدام فعل جمع بعدهم، (ولا يمكن استخدام (are) لأنها لا تتفق مع تركيب الجملة أو المعنى.
3.	d	تفسير (The majority) هنا إلى الأغلبية كوحدة واحدة، فيفضل استخدام فعل مفرد، لكن الفعل الجمع أيضاً صحيح في الإنجليزية البريطانية، ولا يمكن استخدام (have) لأنها لا تتفق مع تركيب الجملة أو المعنى.
4.	a	من بين الاختيارات، فإن الاسم (Grumpiness) فقط هي السمة المدمرة، ولا يمكن استخدام الصفه (miserable) لأن الجملة تنقصها اسم.
5.	c	كلمة (conclusion) هنا تعني (خاتمة/نهاية)

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

Book of the week

(SB page 20)

What Katy Did, written by the American Susan Coolidge in 1835, is still an inspiration⁽¹⁾ to many of today's female authors⁽²⁾. The story follows the adventures⁽³⁾ of 12-year-old Katy and her younger brothers and sisters.



Check Vocabulary

- إلهام
- مؤلفين
- مغامرات
- غير صبور
- شقى / مشاغب
- أرجوحة
- غاضب
- معاق

Katy had no mother and her father was a busy doctor, so the children were looked after by their kind aunt.

Katy wanted to be like a mother to her brothers and sisters, but was often impatient⁽⁴⁾, naughty⁽⁵⁾ and liked to have dangerous adventures. One day, she decided to use a new swing⁽⁶⁾, although her aunt had told her not to use it because it was broken. Katy fell from the swing and badly hurt her back. She could not walk and had to stay in bed. This made her very unhappy and cross⁽⁷⁾, until she was visited by her cousin Helen. Helen was disabled⁽⁸⁾ and she taught Katy to be patient. She also showed

her how to be have in a more caring way to her younger brothers and sisters. After her aunt became ill and died, Kary became the head of the family. At the end of the book, she had become a wiser⁽⁴⁾, better person, and she learnt to walk again.

(9) أكثر حكمة

Female doctors by country

(SS page 21)

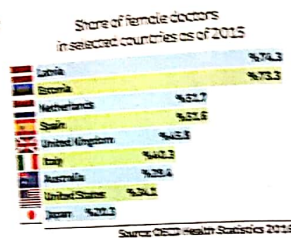
The bar graph⁽¹⁾ shows the percentage⁽²⁾ of female doctors in certain given countries around⁽³⁾ the world. It can be

seen that there is a very significant⁽⁴⁾ difference across⁽⁵⁾ countries, from a majority⁽⁶⁾ of women doctors in some countries to a small minority⁽⁷⁾ in others.

The country with the highest number of women doctors is Latvia, which has nearly three-quarters⁽⁸⁾ of female doctors, while the country with the smallest number is Japan, where less than a quarter of doctors are women.

Netherlands⁽⁹⁾ and Spain have very similar⁽¹⁰⁾ numbers of women doctors; around half the doctors in those countries are women. However, another European country, Italy, has around 10% fewer women doctors.

In conclusion⁽¹¹⁾, the most surprising thing about the figures⁽¹²⁾ is the big differences across different countries, which do not seem to be related to⁽¹³⁾ region⁽¹⁴⁾, or size⁽¹⁵⁾ or economic⁽¹⁶⁾ development⁽¹⁷⁾ of the country. In other words⁽¹⁸⁾, there does not seem⁽¹⁹⁾ to be any obvious⁽²⁰⁾ pattern⁽²¹⁾ to the results. It is especially⁽²²⁾ interesting to note⁽²³⁾ the very low number of women doctors in Japan. That may reflect⁽²⁴⁾ the stereotype that Japanese women are usually expected to look after⁽²⁵⁾ the home, rather than work in medical or other fields.

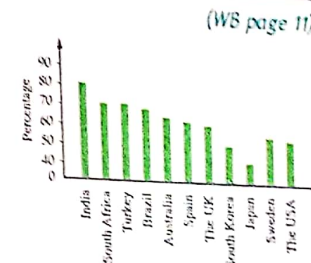


Check Vocabulary

- (1) أعمدة بيانية
- (2) نسبة مئوية
- (3) حول
- (4) ملحوظ / ذو مغزى
- (5) عبر
- (6) أغلبية
- (7) أقلية
- (8) ثلاثة أرباع
- (9) هولندا
- (10) مشابه
- (11) الخلاصة
- (12) أرقام
- (13) متعلق بـ
- (14) منطقة / إقليم
- (15) حجم
- (16) اقتصادي
- (17) التنمية
- (18) بعبارة أخرى
- (19) يبدو
- (20) واضح
- (21) نمط / صيغة
- (22) بصفة خاصة
- (23) يلاحظ
- (24) يعكس / يبين
- (25) يعتني بـ

From the graph, it can be seen that there is a significant difference between people's opinions when asked the question in the graph. The highest number of people who agreed were in India, where the majority of people (80%) thought things would be better if women had more important jobs in government and business. Perhaps the most surprising thing about the figures is that over 70% of people in the less developed countries, such as South Africa and Turkey, agreed with the question. However, in some of the more developed countries such as Sweden and the USA, fewer than 60% of the people agreed nearly, in South Korea, while half the number of people disagreed. It is especially interesting to note that in Japan, only 43% agreed. That may reflect the fact that Japan is a very traditional society.

In conclusion, we can see that in most countries, people believe that things would be better if women had more important jobs in business or government.



2 Listening Texts

(SB page 20)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) شهادة جامعية
- (2) فرص
- (3) التعليم
- (4) يُعيق - يعرقل
- (5) الجنس (ذكر / أنثى)
- (6) تقاليد / أعراف
- (7) تطلعات
- (8) يؤثر على
- (9) البحث
- (10) درجات / تقديرات
- (11) يستمر في / يواصل
- (12) فيما بعد
- (13) رديء / سيئ

Why don't more girls study STEM subjects? Despite the fact that in most countries there are more girls at university than boys, fewer girls than boys complete STEM University degrees⁽¹⁾. More girls are in schools today than ever before, but they don't always have the same opportunities⁽²⁾ as boys to choose the education⁽³⁾ or subjects they want. Too many girls are held back⁽⁴⁾ by gender⁽⁵⁾ biases, stereotypes and social norms⁽⁶⁾ and expectations⁽⁷⁾, which influence⁽⁸⁾ the subject they study. Research⁽⁹⁾ has shown that even though girls often get better grades⁽¹⁰⁾ than boys in STEM subjects in lower school, they choose not to carry on⁽¹¹⁾ studying them later on⁽¹²⁾ because they worry they won't be able to follow classes and they will get poor⁽¹³⁾ grades.

Ayman : Yes Hany, but she was unkind⁽³⁾ to her brothers and sisters. They were always arguing with⁽⁴⁾ her.

Hany : True. But I felt sorry for her after the accident. I would be grumpier if I was unable⁽⁵⁾ to walk.

Ayman : I liked Helen though⁽⁶⁾. She was much better-natured than Katy, even though she was disabled⁽⁷⁾.

Hany : I agree. She was the kindest person in the story. She teaches Katy how to be more patient⁽⁸⁾.

(3) قاسي

(4) يتجادل مع

(5) عاجز

(6) مع ذلك

(7) مُعاق

(8) صبور

3 Video Script

Thousands of women, men and children marched⁽¹⁾ in cities around the world on 20 and 21st January. The Women March was a worldwide⁽²⁾ protest⁽³⁾ that first took place⁽⁴⁾ in 2017 as a result of⁽⁵⁾ some statements⁽⁶⁾ made by American president, Donald Trump, which were considered⁽⁷⁾ to be negative⁽⁸⁾ towards women. This year, the protest focused⁽⁹⁾ attention⁽¹⁰⁾ on how people are standing up against⁽¹¹⁾ inequality⁽¹²⁾, to make sure women are treated the same as men and are given the same opportunities⁽¹³⁾. Thousands of people in cities including London and Washington DC came out⁽¹⁴⁾ in freezing temperatures to give their support⁽¹⁵⁾. One woman was carrying a sign which read "Little Girls with Dreams become women with vision⁽¹⁶⁾". In London there were speeches⁽¹⁷⁾ by women's activists⁽¹⁸⁾ such as Dr Helen Pankhurst, the granddaughter of Emmeline Pankhurst, who played an important role⁽¹⁹⁾ in winning British women's right⁽²⁰⁾ to vote⁽²¹⁾ in 1918. Dr Pankhurst said she thought that today's generation⁽²²⁾ would push⁽²³⁾ for even greater change.

(5B page 21)

Check Vocabulary

(1) يتظاهر - يرحف

(2) عالمي

(3) احتجاج

(4) يحدث

(5) كنتيجة لـ

(6) تصريحات

(7) يُعتبر

(8) سلبي

(9) يركز

(10) الإنتباه

(11) يقاوم/يعارض

(12) اللامساواة

(13) الفُرص

(14) يخرج

(15) يقدم الدعم

(16) رؤية

(17) خطب

(18) نشطاء

(19) دور

(20) حق

(21) يُصوّت/ينتخب

(22) جيل

(23) يدفع

Today I'm going to talk about women's day⁽¹⁾ in Egypt. Egypt's women's day is on the 16 of March, but in 2019 there was a special⁽²⁾ 16 days of Egyptian women from the 1st to the 16th of March. The organisers had chosen these days to remember the events⁽³⁾ in 1919, when women marched⁽⁴⁾ on the street to complain about⁽⁵⁾ colonial⁽⁶⁾ rule⁽⁷⁾.

This event was to remember women's contribution⁽⁸⁾ to Egyptian Society.

In my opinion, women are increasingly⁽⁹⁾ important in Egyptian Society. For example, there are now around 90 women who are members of Parliament⁽¹⁰⁾, more than ever before. In 2021, many women have become judges⁽¹¹⁾ for the first time. The future is bright⁽¹²⁾ for Egyptian women.

(WB page 10)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عيد المرأة
- (2) خاص
- (3) أحداث
- (4) يمشي/يمشي
- (5) في مسيرة
- (6) يشكو من
- (7) مستعماري
- (8) مساهمة
- (9) بشكل متزايد
- (10) البرلمان
- (11) قضاة/قاضيات
- (12) مشرق/مبشر

Part IV Language

Comparative and superlative forms صفات والتفضيل WB page 10

1 Adjectives الصفات

• What is an adjective? ما هي الصفة؟

الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسم:
- a tall tree - an expensive car - young people

• What is the position of an adjective? ما هو موقع الصفة؟

توضع الصفة في الأماكن التالية:
1 قبل الموصوف:

- I bought a digital camera yesterday.
- Ahmed saw a long snake in the garden.

2 بعد الأفعال التقريرية مثل:

- be - look/seem/appear/sound يبدو
- taste يعطي مذاق
- feel يعطي ملمس
- taste يعطي رائحة
- smell ... etc.
- Nada is cheerful.
- This shirt feels soft.
- You look miserable.

1 هناك صفات لا تُستخدم قبل الاسم مطلقاً مثل:

- afraid خائف - awake مستيقظ - asleep نائم - alone وحيد - alight مضاء - alive حي
- The baby that was asleep smiled nicely. (Not: The asleep baby)

2 تُستخدم الصفات بعد الضمائر غير المحددة التالية:

- someone/somebody/something/somewhere
- anyone/anybody/anything/anywhere
- everyone/everybody/everything/everywhere
- no one/nobody/nothing/nowhere

- I met somebody important in the party. (Not: important somebody)

- Let's drink something cold. (Not: cold something)

Extreme adjectives

الصفات القوية

1 هي صفات ذات معنى قوي مثل:

- gigantic ضخم
- furious ساخط
- ancient عتيق / قديم جداً
- excellent ممتاز

2 تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية:

- absolutely بكلاً مطلقاً - utterly / entirely كلياً - completely تماماً - really حقاً
- You are absolutely excellent at maths.
- He was utterly furious.

Absolute adjectives

الصفات المطلقة

1 هي صفات ذات معنى مطلق، بمعنى أنها إما موجودة أو غير موجودة مثل:

- dead ميت
- final نهائي
- main أساسي
- impossible مستحيل

2 لا تُستخدم أي ظروف درجة قبل الصفات المطلقة:

- My grandparents are extremely dead. (X)
- My grandparents are dead. (✓)

3 لا يمكن أن تُستخدم المطلقة في المقارنة والتفضيل:

- My grandfather is deader than my grandmother. (X)
- My grandfather and my grandmother are dead. (✓)

2 Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة

• What is a comparative adjective? ما هي صفة المقارنة؟
هي صفة تقارن بين طرفين (أحدهما أكثر أو أقل من الآخر في نفس الصفة):

- Ahmed is faster than Rodayna.

لي المثال السابق:

- طرفي المقارنة هما (Ahmed) و (Rodayna)

- صفة المقارنة هي (faster)

- حالة المقارنة: أحمد أكثر من رودينا في السرعة

- The Mercedes is more expensive than the Toyota.

لي المثال السابق:

- طرفي المقارنة هما (Mercedes) و (Toyota)

- صفة المقارنة هي (more expensive)

- حالة المقارنة: السيارة المرسيدس أكثر من السيارة التويوتا في الثمن.

The form of comparative adjectives

تكوين صفات المقارنة

يتم تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة ذات المقطع الواحد كالتالي:

① يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة:

- fast - faster

- old - older

② يُضاف (r) فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e):

- large - larger

- close - closer

③ يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة:

- big - bigger

- thin - thinner

- hot - hotter

- fit - fitter

يتم تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (y) بتحويل حرف (y) إلى (ier):

- easy - easier

- happy - happier

- lazy - lazier

- healthy - healthier

تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة كالتالي:

- more + صفة طويلة. adj. + أقل / أكثر (than)

- more beautiful (than) أكثر جمالاً (من)

- less beautiful (than) أقل جمالاً (من)

Notes on comparative adjectives

ملاحظات على صفات المقارنة

① المقطع (er) في نهاية صفة المقارنة يعني أكثر:
- Mariam is taller than Malak.

② عندما نريد أن نقول (أقل) مع الصفات القصيرة فإننا نستخدم (less) قبل الصفة دون إضافة المقطع (er):
- Malak is less tall than Mariam. (Not: less taller)

③ ليس بالضرورة استخدام (than) بعد صفة المقارنة عندما يكون الطرف الثاني للمقارنة مفهوماً من سياق الكلام:
- Malak is tall, but Mariam is taller. (Not: taller than)

- This car is expensive. I want a less expensive one. (Not: less expensive than)

④ يمكن استخدام الظروف التالية بمعنى (كثيراً) قبل صفات المقارنة لتقوية معنى الصفة:

- even - much - a lot - far - ...

- A plan is much faster than a car.

⑤ يمكن استخدام الظروف التالية بمعنى (قليلاً/بدرجة طفيفة) قبل صفات المقارنة لتخفيف معنى الصفة:

- slightly - a little - قليلاً - a bit - بدرجة طفيفة

- Chicken is slightly cheaper than meat.

⑥ لاحظ شكل الضمير بعد (than):

(يُفضل استخدام ضمير فاعل إذا كان بعده فعل وضمير مفعول في حالة عدم وجود فعل):

- My sister is thinner than I am.

= My sister is thinner than me.

⑦ لاحظ استخدام صيغة (كلما كلما) للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة:

جملة النتيجة + صفة مقارنة + the, جملة السبب + صفة مقارنة + The

- Working hard helps you achieve more success.

= The harder you work, the more success you achieve.

⑧ لاحظ عطف نفس صفة المقارنة على أخرى للتوكيد ولتقوية معنى الصفة:

- You are getting more and more nervous nowadays.

- It is getting hotter and hotter here in Aswan.

3 Superlative adjectives

What is a superlative adjective?

يُشار إلى فرد ومجموعة (الفرد هو أكثر أو أقل أفراد المجموعة تميزاً في نفس الصفة):

Ahmed is the fastest student in his class.

العال السابق:

أولئك التفضيل هي: (Ahmed) وباقي الطلاب في (his class)

صفة التفضيل أو التمييز (the fastest)

صفة التفضيل: أحمد (الفرد) هو الأكثر في السرعة من بين طلاب الفصل (المجموعة)

The Mercedes is the most expensive car in this market.

العال السابق:

أولئك التفضيل هي: (Mercedes) وباقي السيارات في (this market)

صفة التفضيل أو التمييز (the most expensive)

صفة التفضيل: السيارة المرسيدس (الفرد) هي الأكثر في الثمن من بين السيارات في هذا السوق (المجموعة)

The form of superlative adjectives

تكون صفات التفضيل

تكون صفة التفضيل من الصفات القصيرة ذات المقطع الواحد كالتالي:

يضاف (the ... + est) إلى الصفة القصيرة:

- fast - the fastest

- old - the oldest

يضاف (the ... + st) فقط إلى الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e):

- large - the largest

- close - the closest

يضاف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوفاً بصوت متحرك فتصير ثم يُضاف (the ... + est)

إلى الصفة القصيرة:

- big - the biggest

- thin - the thinnest

- hot - the hottest

- fit - the fittest

تكون صفة التفضيل من الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (y) يتحول (y) إلى (i) (the ... + iest):

- easy - the easiest

- lazy - the lazier

- happy - the happiest

- healthy - the healthiest

نحو الصفات الطويلة إلى صفة التفضيل كالتالي:

- the most beautiful / the least

- the most beautiful / the least beautiful

- the least beautiful

Notes on Superlative adjectives

ملاحظات على صفات التفضيل

1 المقطع (est) في نهاية صفة التفضيل يعني الأكثر:

- Mariam is the tallest student at school.

2 لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل بدون (the) مع الأعداد الترتيبية مثل:

- the (first / second / third / fourth...last)

- Gold is the second most valuable metal.

3 لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو (s) الملكية:

- my - his - her - your - our - their - its ...'s

- Zewail is Egypt's most famous scientist.

4 تستخدم (most) بدون (the) بمعنى (very):

- Zewail is most famous for discovering the femtosecond.

5 لاحظ أن:

- اسم مفرد + in + صفة تفضيل ...

- I met the oldest woman in the city.

- اسم جمع + of + صفة تفضيل ...

- Ali is the laziest of his brothers.

Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms

لاحظ أن صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل غير المنتظمة تتغير مع الصفات التالية غير منتظمة ولا تتبع القواعد السابقة :

Adj. / adv.	comparative	Superlative
- bad سيء	worse أسوأ	the worst الأسوأ
- badly بشكل سيء	- farther أبعد	- the farthest الأبعد
far بعيد	- further أبعد / أكثر	- the furthest الأبعد / الأكبر
fore سابق / مُسبق	former أسبق	the first الأول
- good جيد	better أفضل	the best الأفضل
- well بصحة جيدة / well		
late متأخراً / متأخراً	- later أكثر تأخراً	- the latest الأكبر تأخراً
	- latter الثاني	- the last الأخير

little القليلة	less أقل	the least الأقل
- many كثير العدد - much كثير الكمية	more (than) أكثر (من)	the most الأكثر

- I have two friends. One of them is a doctor and the latter is an engineer.
- If you want any further information, call me.
- I have so many friends, but Rokaya has more friends.

4 Equalatives صيغ التساوي

١ تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن تساوي طرفين في صفة معينة:

- as + adj. الصفة + as
- Sama is as old as Judy.
- Watching football is as exciting as playing it.

٢ في حالة النفي تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن عدم التساوي:

- not + as / so + adj. الصفة + as
- I am not as fit as you. = I am not so fit as you.

٣ لاحظ أن:

- as + adj. الصفة + as = the same + الاسم من الصفة + as
- Yara is as old as Rodayna.
= Yara is the same age as Rodayna.

لاحظ الاسم الذي يمكن استخدامه بعد (the same + noun + as) من الصفات الآتية:

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
big / small	حجم size	long	طول مسافة أو مدة length
deep	عمق depth	old / young	عُمر age
expensive / cheap	سعر price	strong	قوة strength
far / near	مسافة distance	wide	عَرْض / اتساع width
high / low	ارتفاع / علو / طول height		

- My flat is as big as yours. = My flat is the same size as yours.

General Exercises On Language

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

I Getting Started

- The new wall is not the old one.
a. as high as b. the high as c. high as d. as high
- This is part of all seas and oceans.
a. deep b. deeper c. the deepest d. as deep as
- Burj Khalifa is Cairo Tower.
a. the highest b. highest c. higher d. higher than
- I know that European cars are expensive, but I haven't thought they are as expensive that.
a. than b. so c. as d. the same
- For me, her gold medal was important sporting event of 2020.
a. the most b. the more c. most d. more
- Parachuting is sport ever.
a. most dangerous b. the most dangerous
b. more dangerous d. dangerous
- The Nile is river in the world.
a. longer than b. longest c. the longest d. long
- Perhaps you looked bad this morning, but I looked even
a. badly b. more badly c. the worst d. worse
- This is the test I've ever taken.
a. hardest b. less hard c. harder d. hard
- He is not reliable as his friend.
a. so b. as c. more d. a & b
- The quality of food is not nearly as it was in the past.
a. the best b. worse c. as better d. so good
- For the continuity of life, water is the valuable of all liquids.
a. more b. less c. least d. most
- A donkey is not as a cheetah.
a. as fast b. fastest c. faster d. fast
- Jerry looks much than Tom.
a. the most intelligent b. least intelligent
c. more intelligent d. intelligent

15. It was of her to save some of her money.
a. least wise b. wise c. less wise d. more wise than
16. Tablets are getting popular.
a. more and more b. much and more
c. more and less d. less and more
17. Football is exciting sport ever.
a. even b. most c. the most d. more
18. I have much cousins than him.
a. more b. the least c. most d. many
19. Yesterday was than today.
a. as hot b. more hot c. less hot d. a little hot
20. Salah is currently player in his team.
a. best b. the best c. better d. good
21. Living in a large villa is
a. comfortable b. much comfortable
c. more comfortable than d. the most comfortable
22. Living in a large villa is living in a large flat.
a. comfortable b. more comfortable
c. more comfortable than d. most comfortable
23. Living in a large flat is comfortable, but living in a large villa is
a. comfortable b. more comfortable
c. more comfortable than d. most comfortable
24. Nobody in our office is Hani.
a. as hard-working b. hard-working
c. more hard-working d. as hard-working as

II Special Cases

25. Nobody in our office is Hani.
a. as hard-working b. hard-working
c. more hard-working d. as hard-working as
26. Which do you think is city in the world?
a. the most exciting b. most exciting
c. a more exciting d. more exciting

27. Which do you think is city, Paris or Dubai?
a. the most exciting b. most exciting
c. a more exciting d. more exciting
28. Which do you think is Paris or Dubai?
a. the most exciting b. most exciting
c. a more exciting d. more exciting
29. Helmi's new film is his one.
a. popular b. most popular
c. the most popular d. the least popular
30. A white rose is pretty. However, a red one looks even
a. most pretty b. prettier c. prettiest d. pretty
31. Compared with Kilimanjaro, Everest is Everest is the highest summit in the world.
a. the highest b. less high c. higher d. higher than
32. Compared with Everest, Kilimanjaro is Everest is the highest summit in the world.
a. the highest b. less high c. higher d. higher than
33. This tree is the world's tree.
a. as old as b. older than c. the oldest d. oldest
34. Part two is difficult, but part one was
a. more difficult than b. more difficult
c. most difficult d. the most difficult
35. It is known that women are surgeons than men.
a. worst b. more worse c. worse d. bad
36. The quieter the place you live in is, the you feel.
a. more good b. best c. better d. good
37. Amir didn't do as work as I did.
a. much b. many c. few d. more
38. Mum has so much to do.
a. professions b. jobs c. career d. housework
39. It is warmer here in Egypt than in Canada.
a. a few b. more c. much d. very
40. Yasmeen doesn't have as friends as I do.
a. many b. most c. more d. much

41. My house is than yours. Yours is more spacious.
a. the biggest b. bigger c. less big d. more big
42. Mustafa is engineer than Nagi.
a. better b. much better c. a much better d. good
43. A/An is a word that describes a noun.
a. verb b. pronoun c. adjective d. adverb
44. To make a comparison between two people or things, we use a/an adjective.
a. extreme b. comparative c. superlative d. absolute
45. To express the highest degree of a particular quality that someone or something has in comparison to others, we use a/an adjective.
a. extreme b. comparative c. superlative d. absolute
46. To show that a quality is definite and not likely to change, we use a/an adjective.
a. extreme b. comparative c. superlative d. absolute
47. A/An adjective expresses a quality that is very great in degree.
a. extreme b. comparative c. superlative d. absolute
48. Adjective never come the indefinite article 'everybody'.
a. after b. before c. to describe d. a & b
49. The adjective 'awake' is never used a noun.
a. after b. before c. to describe d. a & b

III Check your understanding

50. "Omar is really a fast runner." The word 'fast' here is a/an
a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. adjective
51. "Omar runs really fast." The word 'fast' here is a/an
a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. adjective
52. "He is patient with his children." In this sentence, 'patient' is a/an
a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. adjective
53. "He is a cancer patient." In this sentence, 'patient' is a/an
a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. adjective

Advanced Exercises on Language

تدريبات التالفة بتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "My grandfather died in 2000. Twenty years later, my grandmother followed him." What does this mean?
a. My grandfather is deader than my grandmother.
b. My grandmother is less dead than my grandfather.
c. My grandmother is as dead as my grandfather.
d. My grandfather died twenty years earlier than my grandmother.
2. My friend Wahid helped me a lot. On the contrary, Adel was not
a. less cooperative b. more cooperative
c. as cooperative d. most cooperative
3. Yasmeen doesn't have as many friends as
a. I have b. I do c. a & b d. me have
4. Ahmed is the of the two brothers.
a. more young b. younger
c. younger than d. young

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	الصفة (dead) من الصفات المطلقة التي لا تُستخدم في المقارنة والتفضيل والتساوي.
2.	c	التعبير (as cooperative) يعني ضمناً في سياق الجملة: - ... as cooperative as Wahid.
3.	c	- الفعل (have) صحيح لأنه الفعل الأساسي للجملة الأولى وهو من الأفعال التي يمكن استخدامها كفعل أساسي لازم ومساعد. - الفعل المساعد (do) صحيح لأن زمن الجملة الأولى مضارع بسيط. - لا يمكن استخدام ضمير المفعول (me) كفاعل بعده فعل.
4.	b	- في هذه الجملة، أحمد هو أحد طرفي المقارنة (التي تتكون من طرفين)، فهو الأقصر من بين الأخوين، وطبيعة بناء هذه الجملة تتطلب استخدام (the) قبل صفة المقارنة

Chapter 2

Part I

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة، لقراءة نص القصة المفردة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

تدوينه

1 Key Vocabulary الرئيسية

ashamed(adj)	خجول / مخزي / مُسْتَح من العروسة	pretty(adj/adv)	جميل - إلى حد ما
bride(n)	شمعة	protagonist(n)	بطل - الشخصية الرئيسية
candle(n)	يغطي - غطاء	rude(adj)	رنج
cover(ed) (v/n)	يُخرج	shake-shook-shaken (v)	يُج (شيء في سائل)
embarrassed(adj)	أملس / ناعم - أتيق	stir(red) (v)	غير مُستخدَم - غير مُستَعْلَم
fine(adj)	ثروة - الحظ	unused(adj)	نقاب - بُرُقِع - حجاب
fortune(n)	شاكِر للجميل / ممتن	veil(n)	بنجول - يهيم
grateful(adj)	قماش - مادة خام	wander(ed) (v)	الشمع
material(n)	الشبورة	wax(n)	
mist(n)			

2 Definitions تعريفات

لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيدًا، فهي موضع امتحان.

تدوينه

ashamed(adj)	خجول / مخزي / مُسْتَح من	feeling embarrassed or bad about something
bride(n)	العروسة	a woman who is getting married
candle(n)	شمعة	something made of wax the you burn to produce light
fortune(n)	ثروة	a lot of money
grateful(adj)	شاكِر للجميل / ممتن	feeling thankful and lucky
shake(d) (v)	يُج	move quickly from side to side or up and down
stir(red) (v)	يُقلب	mix a liquid by moving a spoon around it
veil(n)	نقاب - بُرُقِع - حجاب	a piece of fine material worn to protect or hide your face

3 Idioms التعبيرات

- have a change of heart = change attitude towards something	تغيير مشاعره نحو شيء ما
- have a heart of stone = be very cruel	قاسي القلب
- have a good heart = be very kind	ذو قلب طيب
- have a broken heart = be very sad	حزين جدًا
- tears came to my eyes	ترقرقت الدموع في عيني
- the mist is so thick	الشبورة كثيفة جدًا

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The noun '.....' means a lot of money.
a. fortune b. veil c. candle d. bride
- means feeling embarrassed or bad about something.
a. Miserable b. Ashamed c. Grateful d. Grumpy
- Abdulrahman had not wanted to get married, but later he had
a. a broken heart b. a heart of stone
c. a change of heart d. a good heart
- A is a piece of fine material worn to protect or hide your face.
a. fortune b. veil c. candle d. bride
- To is to mix a liquid by moving a spoon around it.
a. stir b. prejudice c. stereotype d. shake
- After the death of his mother, he lived with
a. a broken heart b. a heart of stone
c. a change of heart d. a good heart
- A is something made of wax you burn to produce light.
a. fortune b. veil c. candle d. bride

8. means feeling thankful and lucky.
a. Miserable b. Ashamed c. Grateful d. Grumpy
9. He is a cruel person who's
a. a broken heart b. a heart of stone
c. a change of heart d. a good heart
10. A is a woman who is getting married.
a. fortune b. veil c. candle d. bride

Part II

Skills

المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متنوعة بالتدريبات في ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة علي حدة.

تدريب

① Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. Modernizing the educational system is the cornerstone on which development and social stability are based.

أ. يُعدّ تحديث النظام التعليمي حجر الزاوية الذي يقوم بتشبيد التنمية والاستقرار الاجتماعي.
ب. يُعدّ تحديث النظام التعليمي حجر الزاوية الذي تقوم عليه التنمية والاستقرار الاجتماعي.
ج. يُعدّ تحديث النظام التعليمي حجر الزاوية الذي تقوم عليه التنمية والاستقرار الاجتماعي.
د. يُعدّ تحديث النظام العلمي حجر الزاوية الذي تقوم عليه التنمية والاستقرار الاجتماعي.

2. Most of the working women shoulder many responsibilities, dividing their time between their work and their families.

أ. تتحمل معظم النساء العاملات مسؤوليات كثيرة، حيث يقسمن وقتهن بين عملهن وأسرهن.
ب. تتحمل بعض النساء العاملات مسؤوليات كثيرة، حيث يقسمن وقتهن بين عملهن وأسرهن.
ج. تتحمل معظم النساء العاملات مسؤوليات كثيرة، حيث يقسمن وقتهن بين عائلاتهن وأسرهن.
د. تتحمل معظم النساء العاملات مسؤوليات كثيرة، بحيث لا يقسمن وقتهن بين عملهن وأسرهن.

3. We urgently need to revolt against bad conduct and we must do our best to modify it.

أ. نحن بحاجة ماسة إلى التمرد على السلوك السيئ، ويجب أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لتعديله.
ب. نحن بحاجة إلى التمرد على السلوك السيئ، ويجب أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لتعديله.
ج. نحن بحاجة ماسة إلى التمرد على السلوك السيئ، ويجب أن نبذل جهداً لتعديله.
د. نحن بحاجة ماسة إلى التمرد على السلوك السيئ، ولعلنا نبذل كل جهدنا لتعديله.

4. Good citizens sacrifice themselves, their time and money for the welfare of both their country and families.

أ. يضحي المواطنون الطيبون بأنفسهم وبوقتهم وأموالهم من أجل رفاهية بلدهم وعائلاتهم.
ب. كان يضحي المواطنون الطيبين بأنفسهم وبوقتهم وأموالهم من أجل رفاهية بلدهم وعائلاتهم.
ج. ضحي المواطنون الطيبون بأنفسهم وبوقتهم وأموالهم من أجل رفاهية بلدهم وعائلاتهم.
د. قد يضحي المواطنون الطيبون بكل أنفسهم وبوقتهم من أجل رفاهية بلدهم وعائلاتهم.

② Choose the best English translation :

١. تولي الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بقضايا المرأة وذلك بتوفير التعليم والرعاية الصحية والاجتماعية من خلال بعض المشروعات القومية.

- a. The government pays great attention to women's issues by providing education, health and social care through some national projects.
b. The government pays great attention to women's issues; it provides them with education, health and social care.
c. The government pays great attention to women's issues by providing education, health and social care through some national projects.
d. The government pays great attention to women's issues by providing education, health and social care through some international projects.

٢. يجب علينا جميعًا احترام الكبار واتباع نصائحهم، فخبراتهم بالحياة كنز ثمين لا يُقدّر بثمن.

- a. We all must respect the elderly and follow their advice. Their experiences in life are a priceless treasure.
b. We all must respect adults and follow their advice. Their experiences in life are a valueless treasure.
c. We all must respect adults and follow their advice. Their experiences in life are an unavailable treasure.
d. We all must respect adults and follow their advice. Their experiences in life are an invaluable treasure.

Test on Unit 2

- Understand

- Apply

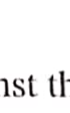
- Create

تَنْوِيَه

يمكنك حل
الاختبار وتصويبه
إلكترونياً



☞ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- 
 1. A/An studies the nature of objects.
a. physicist b. lecturer
c. eyewitness d. role model
 2. "I dream of living in a society where there's no prejudice against the poor". In this sentence, the word 'prejudice' is a/an
a. noun b. pronoun c. adjective d. adverb
 3. A is a person who teaches at a university.
a. lecturer b. physicist c. sportswoman d. role model
 4. I my PhD in 2014.
a. won b. obtained c. recognised d. made
 5. You can't defy two armed men on your own". The word 'defy' in this sentence is an antonym of
a. resist b. obey c. challenge d. escape
 6. I don't know how they have found our secret plan.
a. out b. out about c. out of d. outside
 7. September vs October sales were compared using shown on a large screen.
a. bar graphs b. tomboys c. majorities d. minorities
 8. If you are to children, they don't like you.
a. qualified b. miserable c. cruel d. significant
 9. There were floods because it for three days.
a. had been rained b. had been raining
c. was rained d. has been raining
 10. Ahmed was exhausted when he arrived home yesterday. He hard all afternoon.
a. had worked b. has been working
c. had been working d. was being worked
 11. You look than yesterday.
a. the happiest b. more happy
c. happier d. much happier

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. The main idea of the passage is
 - a. Shakespeare had a difficult early life but later achieved great success.
 - b. Shakespeare was born into a wealthy family.
 - c. Shakespeare admired the theatre at his early life.
 - d. Shakespeare won many awards for his plays.
18. The last paragraph means that shakespeare
 - a. produced more than eleven plays.
 - b. produced only Othello, Macbeth and King Lear.
 - c. wrote less than eleven plays.
 - d. wrote the tempest only to begin with.
19. According to the passage, we can understand that the word "brilliant" means
 - a. boring
 - b. wonderful
 - c. annoying
 - d. illuminated
20. The passage gives us a good lesson that it is better to
 - a. look after horses
 - b. talk to actors
 - c. endure hardships or obstacles
 - d. be a wealthy man
21. Why do you think the actors at the theatre invited Shakespeare to join their company?
 - a. Because his plays were wonderful.
 - b. Because he spoke magnificently.
 - c. He looked after their horses.
 - d. To watch their plays for money.
22. According to the passage, the reason that made Shakespeare left his town was
 - a. unknown
 - b. studying Latin
 - c. watching plays
 - d. being homeless
23. Why did Shakespeare look after the gentlemen's horses when he first arrived in London?
 - a. To help them.
 - b. To earn money.
 - c. To let him act with them.
 - d. To have conversation with them.
24. According the passage, Shakespeare's plays were
 - a. more attractive to the audience
 - b. less interesting than his poems
 - c. more interesting than his novels
 - d. less attractive than other writers' works

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Man's life has been subject to a lot of changes during the last hundred years, particularly in what is connected with his consuming habits. Sixty years ago, before the start of the consumer societies of today's world, people did not throw away so many of the things they used. They used and re-used bottles, jars, cardboard boxes, paper bags, etc much more carefully than we do today. Now, more than fifty years later, we are returning to the same good idea which we now call "recycling".

We can again think about what we throw out. Why do we throw away so much food packaging, so many plastic supermarket bags, old newspapers, old books, bottles and cans? What is all this rubbish doing to our environment, to the world we live in? Can't we use some of it again? The answer is: yes, we can.

New industries, recycling industries, are starting to re-use some of our rubbish. For example, the island of Taiwan now buys waste paper from the USA and recycles it to make newspapers, and for use in offices and homes. Japan takes scrap metal from the USA and makes some new parts with it. Most European and American cities now have "recycling centers" for people's old bottles and newspapers.

All this recycling is not only good for the environment, but it is good business, too. For instance, a recycled aluminium container is 20% cheaper to make than a new one. For both the environment and the economy, recycling makes very good sense.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

25. The best title for this passage is

- a. The pros and cons of recycling
- b. An old habit people need nowadays
- c. Recycling harms the environment
- d. A bad habit to get rid of

26. The second paragraph represents

- a. the idea of recycling
- b. the supermarket bags
- c. our environment
- d. food packaging

27. What "change" does the writer refer to in the first paragraph?

- a. People throw many things all the time.
- b. People became wasteful than before.
- c. People began to recycle old things again.
- d. People refuse consuming habits.

28. The main idea of the last paragraph is

- a. The benefits of recycling are for people only.
- b. The benefits of recycling are for the environment only.
- c. Recycling has benefits for neither people nor the environment.
- d. Recycling has benefits for both people and the environment.

29. Without recycling, people will

- a. suffer from more environmental problems
- b. solve all the environmental issues
- c. decrease industrial products
- d. increase their good habits

30. What is the writer's evaluation about consuming habits ?

- a. He likes to decrease them.
- b. He hates to decrease them.
- c. He likes to throw away what we don't need.
- d. He hates to collect rubbish.

31. Our grandparents were than we are today.

- a. less careful
- b. more careless
- c. more economical
- d. less wise

32. Recycling our rubbish means

- a. throwing it away
- b. keeping it
- c. encircling it
- d. using it again

A. Choose the best Arabic translation :

33. Egypt is in need of wise people capable of modernizing the educational system and achieving justice among students.

أ. إن مصر في حاجة للحكماء القادرين على تحديث النظام التعليمي وتحقيق العدالة بين الطلاب.

ب. إن مصر في أشد الحاجة للحكماء القادرين على تطوير النظام التعليمي وتحقيق العدالة بين الطلاب.

ج. إن مصر في حاجة للحكماء القادرين على تغيير النظام التعليمي وتغيير العدالة بين الطلاب.

د. إن مصر في حاجة للحكماء القادرين على تعديل النظام التعليمي وتحقيق المحبة بين الطلاب.

- ⊗ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- # MASTER YOUR SKILLS



اللغة الانجليزية

فی

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

General Exercises

for Al Azhar students on Unit 2

تنويه

للمزيد من
التدريبات للأزهر
الشريف - بنك
الأسئلة

1. Finish the following dialogue :

Hussein and Ibrahim are talking about the weekend.

Hussein : I'm planning to spend the weekend outdoors,
(1)

Ibrahim : Hey, that's terrific.

Hussein : (2)

Ibrahim : I suggest visiting our uncle in the countryside.

Hussein : (3)

Ibrahim : (4)

Hussein : But this is not the harvest season. And don't forget the long
drive to the countryside.

Ibrahim : You are right.

2. Write a paragraph of one hundred and twenty (120) words on :

"Doctors and their efforts during coronavirus pandemic"

.....

3. Translate into Arabic :

- You will never feel truly satisfied by work until you are satisfied with
your life.

.....

4. Translate into English :

- المرأة الذكية المتعلمة أفضل كثيرًا من تلك التي لا تعرف قيمتها الحقيقية.

.....

5. Answer the following question : (Islamic selections)

- What saved Omar from polytheism ?

(الأزهر - أدبي ٢٠٢١)

.....

Learning Outcomes :

○ Reading :
A scientific text

○ Writing :
Online comments about the impact of technology;
An argumentative essay about green technology

○ Listening :
A discussion about innovations in
medicine

○ Speaking :
Making predictions about the future of
technology

○ Language :
Future tenses; present perfect for future
use

○ Life skills :
Problem solving; Critical thinking



الأسئلة والامتحانات التدريبية.
المعاصر في المهارات.
المعاصر في القواعد اللغوية.
المعاصر اللغوي.
للتأهيل للأهر الشريف في نهاية كل وحدة وبنك الأسئلة.

Part I

Vocabulary

• اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
• المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تدريسه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

approach(ed) (n/v)	نَهَجَ / تَوَجَّهَ - يدنو من	mass-produced(adj)	مُنتَج أَلْبَا بِكميات كبيرة
astronaut(n)	رائد فضاء	planet(n)	كوكب
astronomer(n)	عالم فلك	process(n)	عملية/ نظام
experiment(ed) (v/n)	يُجْري تجربة / يُجَرِّب - تجربة	solar system(n)	النظام الشمسي
immerse(d) (v)	يُبْهِر - يَدْمِج - يَغْمُر	spacecraft(n)	سفينة فضاء
immersive(adj)	مُبْهِر - شديد الجاذبية	speaker(n)	سماعة - مُتَحَدِّث
implement(ed) (v)	يُطَبِّق / يُنْفِذ	spectacularly(adv)	بإبهار / بشكل مذهش
inconvenient(adj)	غير ملائم	surface(n)	سطح
innovation(n)	الابتكار / الإبداع / اختراع	surround sound (n/adj)	الصوت المُجَسِّم - ذو صوت مُجَسِّم
innovative(adj)	إبتكاري / إبداعي	surround(ed) (v)	يحيط بـ / يكتنف
		universe(n)	الكون

2 Important Vocabulary

adapt(ed) (v)	يتكيف - يُكَيِّف	liquid(n/adj)	سائل
3D = three dimensional(adj)	ثلاثي الأبعاد	Mars(n)	كوكب المريخ
advance(d) (n), (v)	تَقَدَّمَ / تَطَوَّر - يتقدَّم	Martian(n/adj)	مَرِّيخِي
advert(n)	إعلان	minus(preposition)	ناقص / سالب
average(n)	متوسط / مُعَدَّل	once(conj.)	بمجرد أن
basic(adj)	أساسي	packaging(n)	التغليف / التعبئة
beyond(adv/preposition)	وراء / أبعد من	paper-thin(adj)	في سماكة الورقة
collect(ed) (v)	يجمع	permanent(adj)	دائم
competitive(adj)	تنافسي	potentially(adv)	بشكل مُتَوَقَّع / مُحْتَمَل
		practical(adj)	عملي

conquer(ed) (v)	يغزو - يتغلب على	printing (n)	طباعة
constantly(adv)	باستمرار - بمعدل ثابت	process(n)	عملية / نظام
cost - cost (n/v)	بتكلفة - يتكلف	provide(d) (v)	يوفر
create(d) (v)	يبتكر - يخلق	quality(n)	جودة
curious(adj)	فضولي / مُتطفل	queue(n)	قائمة انتظار
essential(adj)	ضروري / جوهري	require(d) (v)	يتطلب / يستلزم
evidence(n)	دليل	roll(n)	لفة / بكر
exist(ed) (v)	يوجد	robot(n)	روبوت
expand(d) (v)	يتوسع / يتمدد	robotic(adj)	روبوتي
experience(d) (n/v)	تجربة حياتية / معاشية	robo-bird(n)	طائر روبوتي
extreme(adj)	- يعيش شديداً / مُتطرف (في الارتفاع والانخفاض)	scare(d) (v)	يخيف
flat(adj)	مسطح / مسطح	search(ed) (v/n)	بحث / بحث - عملية
forms(n)	أشكال / صور	sheet(n)	شفرة - ورقة
hidden(adj)	مخفي / مخبأ	support(ed) (v/n)	دعم - الدعم
high-tech(adj)	ذو تقنية عالية	survive(d) (v)	يؤمل / يبقى حياً
hopefully(adv)	بشكل مُشّر	trainers(n)	مدرب رياضي
illustrated(adj)	مُصوّر - موضّح بالصور	tutor(n)	مُدرّس
invention(n)	اختراع	T-ring(n)	حلقة صوتية ورقية دائرية
		visuals(n)	صور بصرية - مرئيات

3 Definitions تعريفات

approach(n)	نُهج / نُهج	a way of viewing or doing something
astronaut(n)	رائد فضاء	someone who travels and works in a spacecraft
astronomer(n)	عالم فلك	a scientist who studies the stars and planets
experiment(ed)(v)	يُجرى تجربة / يُجرب	to use scientific methods to find something out or discover something
immerse(d)(v)	يُغمّر / يُغمر	- to become or make somebody completely involved in something
implement(ed)(v)	يُنفّذ / يُنفّذ	- involve yourself deeply in (SB)
inconvenient(adj)	غير ملائم	to start using a system causing difficulty or problems

innovation(n)	الابتكار / الإبداع / اختراع	- the introduction of new ideas or methods - a new idea, method, or invention
mass-produced(adj)	مُنتج آلياً بكميات كبيرة	made cheaply and in large numbers with a machine
planet(n)	كوكب	a very large round object in space that moves around the sun or another star
process(n)	عملية / نظام	a method of producing something
solar system(n)	النظام الشمسي	the sun and the planets that go around it
spacecraft(n)	سفينة فضاء	a vehicle مَرَكَبَة that is able to travel in space
speaker(n)	سماعة	a device جهاز through which sound is heard
spectacularly(adv)	بإبهار / بشكل مذهش	- in an extremely good, exciting or surprising way - in a very impressive way
surface(n)	سطح	the outside or top layer طبقة of something
surround(v)	يحيط به	be all around (someone or something)
surround sound(n)	الصوت المُجمّع	a system of four or more speakers used so that sounds from a film or television programme come from all directions
surround(ed)(v)	يُحيط به	to be all round (someone or something)
universe(n)	الكون	all space, including all the stars and planets

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- A secondary-three student is always in his study.
a. surrounded b. innovated c. implemented d. immersed
- Of all educational books, El-Moasser is the first to adopt to teaching different subjects.
a. approaches b. adverts c. averages d. evidences

3. There were five expert on a mission to the International Space Station.
a. painters b. astronauts c. innovators d. speakers
4. Do you think scientists are right to on animals?
a. exist b. conquer c. experiment d. experience
5. 2021 was a/an successful year for me. I joined the faculty of medicine.
a. sadly b. unfortunately c. hopefully d. spectacularly
6. It is better if you yourself with good company.
a. surround b. innovate c. implement d. approach
7. Japanese cars are to meet the big demand of the international market.
a. immersive b. mass-produced c. inconvenient d. speakers
8. As a composer, باحث, Baileigh Hamdy was one of the greatest of music.
a. astronomers b. astronauts c. innovators d. speakers
9. The solar system is just a tiny part of the vast
a. universe b. surface c. spacecraft d. process
10. We will solve our economic problems only if we encourage in industry, especially in modern technology.
a. advice b. application c. innovation d. T-ring
11. El-Mouasser always new educational methods.
a. surrounds b. innovates c. exists d. immerses
12. I apologize if I am calling at a/an time.
a. immersive b. mass-produced c. inconvenient d. moon
13. Mars is the nearest to the earth.
a. planet b. star c. orbit d. moon
14. I saw a piece of wood floating on the of the running water.
a. universe b. surface c. spacecraft d. process
15. My car has a surround-sound
a. astronomers b. astronauts c. innovators d. speakers
16. I promise to all the recommendations of the meeting.
a. surround b. innovate c. implement d. immerse

2 Important vocabulary

17. Some online games are so that you feel as if you are actually taking part in it.
a. immersive b. mass-produced c. surrounded d. inconvenient
18. The earth belongs to the
a. printing process b. solar system c. application d. university
19. requires at least three speakers.
a. Innovation b. 3-D c. Solar system d. Surround sound
20. It is a long time for a fat person to get fit.
a. universe b. surface c. spacecraft d. process
21. This man earns an of 6,000 pounds a month.
a. approach b. advert c. average d. evidence
22. Dinosaurs on earth millions of years ago
a. existed b. conquered c. experimented d. experienced
23. speakers are the latest trend in surround-sound technology.
a. Advance b. Application c. Innovation d. T-ring
24. Like most children, I enjoyed stories.
a. illustrated b. imageless c. paper-thin d. permanent
25. This shop sells high-quality clothes at prices.
a. curious b. competitive c. essential d. flat
26. You are lucky to this violent accident.
a. survive b. require c. expand d. surround
27. There's much that this man is the thief who broke into your house.
a. approach b. advert c. average d. evidence
28. You need to your fear of exams. It is something negative.
a. exist b. conquer c. experiment d. experience
29. He ate just a/an slice of meat.
a. illustrated b. visual c. paper-thin d. permanent
30. It is the dream of mankind to into space.
a. survive b. require c. expand d. surround

31. Water is for life.
 a. curious b. competitive c. essential d. flat
32. T-rings have made audio possible.
 a. approaches b. adverts c. averages d. evidences
33. Let your children things to learn how to depend on themselves.
 a. exist b. conquer c. dig d. experience
34. WhatsApp is a digital communication
 a. advance b. application c. innovation d. T-ring
35. The accident left a/an scar ~~of~~ in my skin.
 a. illustrated b. audio c. paper-thin d. permanent
36. 3-D is short for three
 a. directions b. DVDs c. dimensional d. Dolby
37. It is natural that children are They just want to know.
 a. curious b. competitive c. essential d. flat
38. "Children take liquid medicine". In this sentence, 'liquid' is a/an
 a. conjunction b. noun c. adjective d. adverb
39. This heavy box at least three strong young people to carry it down stairs.
 a. survives b. requires c. expands d. surrounds
40. The introduction of computers was one of the best of the 20th century.
 a. advances b. systems c. events d. T-rings
41. I hope 2022 will be a better year for the whole world.
 a. spectacularly b. unfortunately c. hopefully d. a & c
42. The floor is supposed to be, not sloping.
 a. competitive b. flat c. essential d. curious
43. "I'll call you once I've known anything". In this sentence, 'once' is a/an
 a. conjunction b. noun c. adjective d. adverb

3 Definitions

44. To is to start using a system.
 a. experiment b. surround c. implement d. immerse

45. means in an extremely good, exciting or surprising way.
 a. Extremely b. Hopefully c. Potentially d. Spectacularly
46. A is the outside or top layer of something.
 a. surface b. planet c. universe d. solar system
47. A/An is a way of viewing or doing something.
 a. spacecraft b. approach c. process d. innovation
48. means causing difficulty or problems.
 a. Illustrated b. Inconvenient c. Mass-produced d. Essential
49. To is to be all round someone or something.
 a. experiment b. surround c. implement d. immerse
50. The is the Sun and the planets that go around it.
 a. spacecraft b. planet c. universe d. solar system
51. A/An is a method of producing something.
 a. spacecraft b. approach c. process d. innovation
52. A/An is someone who travels and works in a spacecraft.
 a. astronomer b. astronaut c. speaker d. extremist
53. To is to use scientific methods to find something out or discover something.
 a. experiment b. surround c. implement d. immerse
54. The is all space, including all the stars and planets.
 a. spacecraft b. planet c. universe d. solar system
55. A/An is a vehicle that is able to travel in space.
 a. spacecraft b. approach c. process d. innovation
56. A/An is a device through which sound is heard.
 a. astronomer b. astronaut c. speaker d. extremist
57. To is to become or make somebody completely involved in something.
 a. experiment b. surround c. implement d. immerse
58. A is a very large round object in space that moves around the Sun or another star.
 a. surface b. planet c. universe d. solar system
59. means made cheaply and in large numbers with a machine.
 a. Illustrated b. Inconvenient c. Mass-produced d. Essential

Part II Vocabulary Study

ساعد نفسك على الترتيب والتذكر عن طريق استذكر هذا الجزء فسيفسائياً بشكل جيد.

تدوين

1 Verbal Collocations

be	immersed in	يتمتع في	invent	a technology	ابتكار تكنولوجيا
become	practical	يصبح عملياً	look	real	موجود فعلياً
	a new approach	تطور نهجاً جديداً	make	a film	صنع فيلم
develop	a printing process	تطور طريقة طباعة		noise	إيقاع ضجيج
do	an experiment	يجري تجربة	pass	a driving test	جهاز اختبار القيادة
get	a job	يحصل على وظيفة	play	music	يلعب موسيقى
	back	يعود / يرجع للوراء	survive	extreme temperatures	في درجات الحرارة القصوى
go	down	ينخفض - يبطئ	take	a different approach	تتخذ نهجاً مختلفاً
introduce	a technology	تقدم تكنولوجيا	immerse	the audience	تغمر الجمهور

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mr Asfural has a new approach in teaching his students how to be good listeners.
a. immersed b. developed c. survived d. looked
- The experiments Professor Albert aim to find a powerful vaccine against coronavirus.
a. takes b. plays c. makes d. does
- It is not that easy a good full-time job unless you are highly qualified and skilled.
a. doing b. getting c. introducing d. playing
- 3-D technology the audience more in the film experience.
a. immerses b. develops c. survives d. looks

172

Beyond imagination

- The film they are currently is an action one.
a. taking b. playing c. making d. doing
- A team of scientists have a new sound technology.
a. done b. immersed c. introduced d. played
- Surround sound makes films real.
a. immerse b. develop c. survive d. look
- He is a different approach to that of most scientists.
a. taking b. playing c. making d. doing
- Mr Ammar taught us how to music.
a. do b. get c. introduce d. play

2 Synonyms

Word	Synonyms (= Meaning)
approach (n)	نقطة / نهج
approach (v)	يقترب من
approach (n)	طلب
immerse (v)	غمر (في سائل)
immerse (v)	يغمس في / يشغل تماماً به
implement (v)	ينفذ / يطبق
implement (n)	أداة
innovative(adj)	ابتكاري / إبداعي
competitive(adj)	تنافسي
conquer (v)	يغزم
conquer (v)	يغزو
conquer (v)	يتغلب على
conquer (v)	يغلب على

3 Antonyms

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
competitive(adj)	تنافسي
approach (v)	يقترب من
conquer (v)	يغزم
conquer (v)	يغزو
conquer (v)	يتغلب على
conquer (v)	يغلب على

173

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- "I'm currently following a new approach to solve my problems". In this context, 'approach' is a synonym of
a. leave b. go near c. attitude d. proposal
- "She warned me not to approach that large dog". In this context, 'approach' is a synonym of
a. leave b. go near c. attitude d. proposal
- "You need to conquer your hesitation". In this sentence, the antonym of 'conquer' is
a. overcome b. beat c. defeat d. yield to
- is to 'liberate' as 'conquer' is to 'give up'.
a. Conquer b. Yield to c. Surround d. Leave

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
approach يقترب من / يقترب - يطلب	approach نهج / طريقة - طلب - مدخل - اقتراب	approachable ودود / لين الجانب	
experiment يُجري تجربة / يُجرَّب	experiment تجربة experimentation التجريب / إجراء التجارب experimenter مُجرَّب، مُختبر	experimental تجريبي	experimentally شكل تجريبي
immerse يغمر (في سائل) - يتدمج / يندمج في - يستحوذ على / يُبهر	immersion غُمر في سائل - انغماس في	immersed منغمس في - مندمج / مُبهر immersive مُبهر / شديد الجاذبية	
implement يُطبق / يُنفذ	implement أداة implementation التنفيذ / التطبيق		

mass-produce يُنتج ألبا بالجملة	mass-production إنتاج ألبا بالجملة	mass-produced مُنتج ألبا بالجملة	
surround يحيط به / يكتنف - يحلِّس - يتعلق به	surroundings البيئة المحيطة - الجوار	surrounding = nearby قريب / مجاور	

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- This medical laboratory coronavirus vaccines.
a. mass-produce b. mass-produces
c. mass-produced d. mass-production
- Most goods are exported to Arab-Gulf Countries.
a. mass-produce b. mass-produces
c. mass-produced d. mass-production
- is what makes China a giant economical power.
a. Mass-produce b. Mass-produces
c. Mass-produced d. Mass-production
- Professor Jones on this virus to find a vaccine against it.
a. experiment b. experiments
c. experimentation d. experimental
- Professor Jones has conducted an on this virus to find a vaccine against it.
a. experiment b. experiments
c. experimentation d. experimental
- Professor Jones has discovered an vaccine against this virus.
a. experiment b. experiments
c. experimentation d. experimental
- Further is needed to verify the effectiveness of this vaccine.
a. experiment b. experiments
c. experimentation d. experimental
- An important part of the success of any plan is the ability to it.
a. implement b. implementation
c. surround d. surroundings

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Last night, I watched a film 3-D.
a. on b. for c. in d. of
- Do you think it is right to let your son experiment different hair-cuts?
a. with b. of c. from d. about
- The beginning of television in Egypt goes as back as the 1960s.
a. young b. old c. long d. far
- The visuals have immersed the viewers the film.
a. on b. into c. of d. up
- temperatures are either very high or extremely low.
a. Extreme b. Hot c. Cold d. Freezing
- This type of mobiles is sold a competitive price on our website.
a. off b. on c. at d. from
- average, I drink three coffees a day.
a. With b. At c. Of d. On
- A T-ring is a 360-..... paper speaker.
a. a degree b. degree c. degrees d. degrees'
- "I have a question". This means I have a question I need very much to get an answer to.
a. freezing b. frozen c. burning d. burnt

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

T-ring = T-paper

• What is a T-ring (T-paper)?

- It is a type of speakers made from 90 percent conventional paper, which can be printed on either side in colour, and weighs just 150 g. In a T-Ring, an almost four-meter-long track with 56 loudspeakers is connected to form seven segments and shaped into a circle, making a 360-degree surround sound installation possible.

إنه نوع من السماعات مصنوع من ورق تقليدي بنسبة ٩٠ في المائة، ويمكن طباعته على كلا الجانبين بالألوان ووزن ١٥٠ جراماً فقط، وفيه يتم توصيل مسار يبلغ طوله أربعة أمتار تقريباً مع ٥٦ مكبر صوت لتشكيل سبعة أجزاء، ودمجها في دائرة، مما يجعل تركيب الصوت المحيط بزاوية ٣٦٠ درجة ممكناً.

process

- The teaching process needs experience and patience.
- The Palestinian-Israeli peace process hasn't been achieved yet.

process

- The digestive process helps the body get the nutrients it needs.

operation

- The operation was successful and my uncle got better.

operation

- The operation of the machines needs a lot of energy.

invention - innovation

Invention

- Invention is the act of creating, designing or discovering a device, method, process, that has not existed before.

- الاختراع هو عملية إنشاء أو تصميم أو اكتشاف جهاز أو طريقة أو عملية لم تكن موجودة من قبل.

- The invention is related to the creation of new product.

- يتعلق الاختراع بإيجاد منتج جديد.

- The invention is coming up with a fresh idea and how it works in theory.

- يأتي الاختراع بفكرة جديدة وكيف تعمل من الناحية النظرية.

- The invention requires scientific skills.

- الاختراع يتطلب مهارات علمية.

Innovation

- It is the implementation of the idea for a product or process for the very first time.

- الابتكار هو تنفيذ فكرة منتج أو عملية لأول مرة.

- Innovation means adding value or making a change in the existing product.

- الابتكار يعني إضافة قيمة أو إجراء تغيير في المنتج الحالي.

- Innovation is all about practical implementation of the new idea.

- الابتكار هو التنفيذ العملي للفكرة الجديدة.

- Innovation requires a broad set of marketing, technical and strategic skills.

- يتطلب الابتكار مجموعة واسعة من المهارات التسويقية والتقنية والتخطيطية.

- The invention is concerned with a single product or process.

- يتعلق الاختراع بمنتج أو عملية واحدة.

- Innovation focuses on the combination of various products and services.

- يركز الابتكار على دمج المنتجات المختلفة والخدمات.

8 Master your Key Vocabulary

approach

• approach (to) (n)

طَلَب (ل)

- I made an approach to the manager of the company.

• approach (n)

اقترب/دُنُو

- The children's approach frightened the birds.

• approach (to) (n) = مَدْخَل (ل)

- There are three main approaches to the city.

• approach (to) (n)

نَهَج / تَوَجُّه / أسلوب (ل/نحو)

- Try to find a new approach to studying grammar.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- have an approach لديه تَوَجُّه
- take/adopt an approach يتبنى نَهَجاً جديداً

- a traditional/conservative approach أسلوب تقليدي

• approach (v)

يدنو من / يقترب (ل)

- The dog slowly approached the little girl.

• approach (for/about) (v)

يطلب (من)

- Rokaya approached her father for advice.

• approach (v)

يتعامل مع/يواجه

- Try to approach the task in a different way.

• approachable (adj) ≠ unapproachable

- Mr Helmi is very approachable.

experiment

• experiment (with/on/in) (v), (n)

يُجَرَّب - يُجرى تجارب/يختبر (على/في) / تجربة علمية (على/في)

- New medicines are not experimented on humans. (يجرب)

- Scientists are doing experiments on a new medicine for cancer.

نظ التجارب التالية:

- do/carry out/perform/conduct an experiment تجرى تجربة
- an experiment shows/proves/demonstrates أثبت / توضح التجربة أن
- a field experiment تجربة ميدانية
- a practical experiment تجربة عملية
- an experiment to test/measure/find out لاختبار / لقياس / لاكتشاف

• **experimentation (with/in) (n)** تجريب - إجراء التجارب (على/في)
- Experimentation with the online-exam system has achieved partial success.

• **experimenter (n)** مخبر، مختبر
- The Experimenter has made a great discovery.

• **experimental (adj)** تجريبى
- Rats and rabbits are popular experimental animals.

immerse

• **immerse (in) (v)** يغمر / يغطس (فى سائل)
- I immersed the seeds in water for six hours before cooking them.

• **immerse (yourself) in (v)** يغمس / ينشغل تماماً به
- I immersed myself in the job I was doing.

• **immerse ... in (v)** يستحوذ على انتباه / يدمج فى / يخلط لب
- The director succeeded in immersing viewers in the film.

• **immersion (in) (n)** غمر / تغطيس فى سائل
- The immersion of my feet in warm water makes me feel better.

• **immersion (in) (n)** انغماس فى / انشغال تام به
- His strange behaviour is a result of his immersion in bad company.

• **immersed (in) (adj)** منغمس فى / منبهى به
- My son was immersed in the game he was playing.

• **immersive (adj)** مبهى / شديد الجاذبية
- The new medicine has an immersive effect.

implement

• **implement (n)** أداة / آلة
- Keep sharp implements away from children.

• **implement (v)** يُنفذ / يُطبق
- The new law will be implemented on 1st July.

• **implementation (n)** تنفيذ / تطبيق
- The implementation of the new law will be on 1st July.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- implement changes يُنفذ التغييرات
- implement policies يُنفذ السياسات
- implement decisions يُنفذ القرارات
- implement reforms يُنفذ إصلاحات

innovation

• **innovate (v)** يبتكر / يبدع
- I'm sure you'll innovate in this job.

• **innovation (in) (n)** الإبداع (اسم غير معنود)
- We live in the age of technological innovation.

• **innovation (in) (n)** اختراع / ابتكار / فكرة مُبتكرة (اسم معنود)
- The smartphone and the internet are technological innovations.

• **innovator (of/in) (n)** مُبتكر / مُبدع
- Mahfouz was an innovator in novel writing.

• **innovative/innovatory (adj)** إبداعي / مُبتكر
- This is the most innovative design.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary ▶ تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

• ❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- The thief found a/an to the villa through terrace.
a. evidence b. average c. process d. approach
- is the introduction of new ideas or methods.
a. Innovation b. An innovation c. Innovatory d. An innovator
- is a new idea, method, or invention.
a. Innovation b. An innovation c. An innovatory d. An innovator

4. Winners are always in their work. Losers, on the other hand, are always involved in fruitless arguments.

- a. immersed b. implemented c. innovated d. processed

5. Put the children in different situations and leave them to

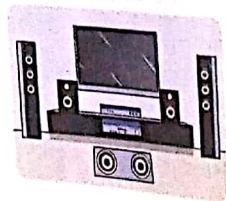
- a. surround b. experiment c. require d. survive

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	الاسم (approach) هنا يعنى (مَدخل)
2.	a	كلمة (innovation) بمعنى (الابتكار) اسم غير معلود لا يأخذ (an)
3.	b	كلمة (innovation) بمعنى (اختراع/فكرة مبتكرة) اسم معلود يأخذ (an)
4.	a	الصفة (immersed) هنا تعنى (مُشغِل تماماً بـ)
5.	b	كلمة (experiment) هنا تعنى (يُجرب/ يخوض التجربة)

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

'Surround sound'⁽¹⁾ is a system that uses 3 or more speakers⁽²⁾ to make you feel like you are 'surrounded'⁽³⁾ by sound. Surround sound experiments go as far back as the 1930s. In fact, the technology was first introduced in 1940 in the Walt Disney Film Fantasia, which used Fantasound⁽⁴⁾. This was a system designed to totally immerse⁽⁵⁾ the audience⁽⁶⁾ in the film like the visuals⁽⁷⁾ did. Unfortunately, it was too expensive to implement⁽⁸⁾ on a big scale⁽⁹⁾, as Fantasound had 54 speakers. It wasn't until 1975, with the introduction of Dolby Stereo, requiring⁽¹¹⁾ just four basic⁽¹²⁾ speakers that



(SB page 27)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) الصوت المُجسَّم
- (2) سماعة
- (3) مُحاط بـ
- (4) نظام صوت مُجسَّم
- (5) يُغمر
- (6) الجمهور
- (7) المؤثرات البصرية
- (8) يُطَبَّق/يُنْفَذ
- (9) علي نطاق واسع
- (10) اختراع
- (11) يتطلب/يستلزم
- (12) أساسي
- (13) عملي

It was used spectacularly⁽¹⁴⁾ in the film Star Wars. True surround sound in the home, however, didn't arrive until 1982, with the introduction of Dolby Surround technology. But this still required four speakers, making it expensive and inconvenient⁽¹⁵⁾.

Now, a whole new approach⁽¹⁶⁾ has been developed by scientists at the Chemnitz University of Technology in Germany, which uses paper instead of speakers.

The team had experimented⁽¹⁷⁾ before; in 2015, they created⁽¹⁸⁾ an illustrated⁽¹⁹⁾ book which had speakers hidden⁽²⁰⁾ inside the pages that made noises as readers turned them over. Now they have developed a printing process⁽²¹⁾ which can print whole rolls⁽²²⁾ of the paper-thin⁽²³⁾ speakers, rather than⁽²⁴⁾ one sheet⁽²⁵⁾ at a time. They have used this to make the T-ring⁽²⁶⁾, a 360-degree paper speaker, a sound experience⁽²⁷⁾ more immersive⁽²⁸⁾ than even a cinema, and can be potentially⁽²⁹⁾ mass-produced⁽³⁰⁾ at a competitive⁽³¹⁾ price. Professor Hubler, from the University predicts that one major use of this new idea will be for audio advertising and packaging⁽³²⁾.

Imagine⁽³³⁾ the packaging on bottles and tins⁽³⁴⁾ playing music or adverts⁽³⁵⁾ for you in your local supermarket!

- (14) بشكل مذهش
- (15) غير ملائم
- (16) نُقُوح / نُقُوحَة
- (17) يُجرب / تجرِبَة
- (18) يبتكر - يَخْلُق
- (19) مُصَوِّر
- (20) مخفي / مُخبأ
- (21) طريقة طباعة
- (22) شائفة / بكرة
- (23) في سماكة الورقة
- (24) بدلاً من
- (25) صنفرة - ورق
- (26) نظام صوتي ورقي دائري
- (27) تجرِبَة
- (28) مُجهر
- (29) مُتَوَفِّع / مُشغِل
- (30) مُنتج بكميات كبيرة
- (31) تنافسي
- (32) التغليف / التعبئة
- (33) يتخيل
- (34) علب صفيح
- (35) إعلانات

(SB page 28)

Teens⁽¹⁾ Astronomers is a website for young people who are interested in finding out about the world they live in. If you have any burning questions⁽²⁾, please email us at teenastronomers@theconversation.edu.au

Why has nobody found any life outside of Earth⁽³⁾?



Check Vocabulary

- (1) مُراهقين
- (2) سؤال مُلِح
- (3) الأرض

- Tarek, age 17, Zagazig, Egypt.

Thank you for your question Tarek. Astronomers⁽⁴⁾ like us are constantly⁽⁵⁾ searching for⁽⁶⁾ planets⁽⁷⁾ which may support⁽⁸⁾ human life, but they're not easy to find. To start with, it's likely that if such a planet exists⁽⁹⁾, it will be outside our solar system⁽¹⁰⁾. Until we have invented⁽¹¹⁾ the technology to get us to these planets, we won't be able to study the conditions⁽¹²⁾ there.

But we'll keep using the technology we have to find out what we can, until we have found some evidence⁽¹³⁾.

One of the most important things is to find a planet with water, because it is essential⁽¹⁴⁾ for all life forms⁽¹⁵⁾.

Scientists recently discovered that there is permanent⁽¹⁶⁾ liquid⁽¹⁷⁾ water on Mars⁽¹⁸⁾, which made a lot of people excited. After all⁽¹⁹⁾, it is the closest planet to Earth. However, on average⁽²⁰⁾, the temperature⁽²¹⁾ on Mars is about minus⁽²²⁾ 60 degrees⁽²³⁾ Celsius⁽²⁴⁾. In winter, it can go down as low as 125 degrees below⁽²⁵⁾ freezing. When we've found a way for astronauts⁽²⁶⁾ to survive⁽²⁷⁾ these extreme⁽²⁸⁾ temperatures, they'll be able to spend enough time on the surface⁽²⁹⁾ of Mars to collect⁽³⁰⁾ useful data⁽³¹⁾.

Mars is hopefully⁽³²⁾ just one step⁽³³⁾ into the universe⁽³⁴⁾. Once⁽³⁵⁾ we've conquered⁽³⁶⁾ Mars, it will be easier to expand⁽³⁷⁾ into the universe beyond⁽³⁸⁾, with future advances⁽³⁹⁾ in space technology.

Technology in the cinema

When you watch a good film, it is easy to forget where you are. Technology, however, in making the film experience even more real⁽¹⁾.



(WB page 14)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) تجربة حركية
- (2) معيشة
- (3) واقع حقيقي

- (4) عالم فلك
- (5) باستمرار
- (6) يبحث
- (7) كواكب
- (8) يدعم
- (9) يوجد
- (10) النظام الشمسي
- (11) اخترع
- (12) ظروف
- (13) دليل
- (14) ضروري
- (15) أشكال
- (16) دائم
- (17) سائل
- (18) كوكب المريخ
- (19) برغم كل شيء
- (20) متوسط
- (21) درجة
- (22) ناقص
- (23) درجة
- (24) سنڤوس
- (25) تحت
- (26) رائد فضاء
- (27) يتجول
- (28) شديد
- (29) سطح
- (30) يجمع
- (31) بيانات
- (32) بشكل
- (33) خطوة
- (34) الكون
- (35) بمجرد أن
- (36) يغزو
- (37) يتوسع
- (38) وراء
- (39) تقدم

In the 1970s, a company called IMAX took a different approach⁽¹⁾. Their films were shown on very large, tall screens⁽²⁾. Special speakers were put behind⁽³⁾ the screen, which helped to make the sound better and louder. In addition, the films were made using a special process⁽⁴⁾ which made the pictures look much more 'real'.

The problem with these types of films was the cost⁽⁵⁾. They had to build special square⁽⁶⁾ cinemas, because people needed to watch the film in seats⁽⁷⁾ which all faced⁽⁸⁾ the screen. You also needed special cameras and couldn't make films of more than an hour long. So, these films were nearly all educational⁽⁹⁾, often about nature. One of the most popular was about climbing Mount Everest and when you watched it, you really felt you were surrounded by snowy⁽¹⁰⁾ mountains.

Since 2000, however, similar technology has allowed traditional films to be made in the same way. These are mass-produced and shown in traditional cinemas.

As a result, many modern films sound great. Many are in 3D⁽¹¹⁾, so that the pictures look real and not flat⁽¹²⁾.

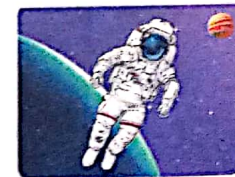
Some cinemas even have seats that move while you watch the film to immerse⁽¹³⁾ you even more into the experience. Other cinemas have even experimented with allowing you to 'feel' the film using smell⁽¹⁴⁾, rain and wind. However, the cost of this will probably mean this technology won't be in most cinemas.

- (1) نهج
- (2) شاشة
- (3) خلف/وراء
- (4) عملية/نظام
- (5) تكلفة
- (6) مربع
- (7) مقعد
- (8) يقع في مواجهة
- (9) تعليمي
- (10) مغطى بالجليد/جليدي
- (11) ثلاثي الأبعاد
- (12) مسطح/مستوي
- (13) يغمور
- (14) الرائحة

2 Listening Texts

(WB page 15)

Earth is one of the eight planets of our solar system. Astronomers have been able to study most of these planets for many years. However, we will start to learn more about them when we can send astronauts further than the moon, where they have been already. Scientists have already sent spacecrafts onto the surface of planets such as Mars, and with each journey, we can learn more and more about the universe around us.



3 Video Script

Presenter: We asked three students to research⁽¹⁾ the latest inventions⁽²⁾ and come back and tell us about their favourites⁽³⁾. OK, first Omar ... what did you find?

Omar : The best invention I read about was these smart trainers⁽⁴⁾. They have 'smart' transport tickets sewn⁽⁵⁾ into the insides of the shoes. This means if you're travelling on public transport⁽⁶⁾ and you're wearing the trainers you can just get on⁽⁷⁾ the bus, tram or underground without having to show your ticket. At the moment, they cost about £140, so I don't think a huge number of people will be wearing them yet. But there were big queues⁽⁸⁾ outside shoe shops when they first went on sale⁽⁹⁾.

Presenter: Eman ... how about you?

Eman : I found out about some amazing inventions, but my favourite invention is this robo-bird⁽¹⁰⁾. It's already been used at the Edmonton international airport in Canada. It's a robot⁽¹¹⁾ bird which chases away⁽¹²⁾ real birds. It seems that in the past real birds have caused problems for planes taking off⁽¹³⁾ and landing⁽¹⁴⁾. These robotic⁽¹⁵⁾ birds look like⁽¹⁶⁾ real falcons⁽¹⁷⁾, which are hunting birds, and scare⁽¹⁸⁾ other types of birds away. They call even move their wings⁽¹⁹⁾ up and down like real birds. They'll make airports much safer.

Presenter: Samir ... what did you discover?

Samir : The best invention I found for sure⁽²⁰⁾ is a high-tech⁽²¹⁾ robot tutor⁽²²⁾. It's about 16 inches tall and has arms, legs and a face. It has a camera which can tell if the student is losing attention⁽²³⁾ and will adapt its style, so you don't get bored⁽²⁵⁾. The best thing is that it asks you questions when you get a question right!

(58 page 27)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يجري أبحاث علي
- (2) الاختراعات
- (3) الأشياء المفضلة
- (4) حذاء رياضي
- (5) مُخِيطَة
- (6) المواصلات العامة
- (7) يركب
- (8) طابور
- (9) يعرض للبيع
- (10) الطائرة الآلي
- (11) آلي
- (12) يطارد - يطرد
- (13) تطلق
- (14) تهبط
- (15) آلي / روبوتي
- (16) يشبه
- (17) الصقر
- (18) يخيف/يفزع
- (19) أجنحة
- (20) من المؤكد
- (21) ذو تقنية عالية
- (22) مُعَلِّم
- (23) يفتقد الانتباه / يتشتت
- (24) يتغير
- (25) يمل

Journalist: Today, I'm talking to a space scientist and astronomer⁽¹⁾, Professor El-Taweel, about where we are most likely to⁽²⁾ find life in our solar system⁽³⁾. So, professor, I suppose⁽⁴⁾ most people think we'll first find life on Mars⁽⁵⁾, is that right?

Professor: Well, many countries are sending spacecraft to that planet⁽⁶⁾ at the moment, so it's possible, yes. I think we'll certainly⁽⁷⁾ find water. But once⁽⁸⁾ we've finished exploring⁽⁹⁾ Mars, I think that we'll find other places that are just⁽¹⁰⁾ as likely to have life.

Journalist: Really? Can you give me an example?

Professor: Yes. Enceladus is one of the planet Saturn's⁽¹¹⁾ many moons, but it is very interesting. In 2005, a spacecraft⁽¹²⁾ took photos of a huge amount of water coming up⁽¹³⁾ from the surface⁽¹⁴⁾ of the moon then flying out into space. Once we've sent a spacecraft back to Enceladus that can take some of this water, we'll know where it comes from and if there is life on the moon.

Journalist: That's amazing. Are there any other places like this?

Professor: Yes, Saturn's largest moon, called Titan, has lakes⁽¹⁵⁾ on the surface. These are probably made from gases⁽¹⁶⁾, not water, but we have already sent a small spacecraft to Titan. When we've sent another one that can study the lakes, we will know more.

Journalist: Anywhere else?

Professor: Yes, there is also one of the planet Jupiter's⁽¹⁷⁾ moons, called Europa. Some scientists think there might be more water here than on earth. The problem is that the water on Europa lies⁽¹⁸⁾ about 15 kilometres below⁽¹⁹⁾ a frozen⁽²⁰⁾ surface. We won't be able to study this until we've got powerful⁽²¹⁾ machines that can dig into⁽²²⁾ the moon.

(WB page 15)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عالم فلك
- (2) من المرجح أن
- (3) النظام الشمسي
- (4) يفترض
- (5) المريخ
- (6) كوكب
- (7) من المؤكد
- (8) بمجرد أن
- (9) يستكشف
- (10) تماماً
- (11) كوكب زحل
- (12) سفينة فضاء
- (13) يتصاعد
- (14) سطح
- (15) بحيرة
- (16) غاز
- (17) كوكب المشتري
- (18) يقع/يوجد
- (19) تحت/أسفل
- (20) متجمد
- (21) قوي
- (22) يحفر/يُنقب في

Part IV Language

تم تقسيم القواعد اللغوية على دروس الوحدة ليتمكن الطالب من إتقانها.

Future time clauses

ما هي العبارة الزمنية؟

هي عبارة تبدأ برابطة زمنية ثم فاعل أو مفعول ثم فعل :

..... verb + فاعل / مفعول subj./obj. + رابطة زمنية Time conjunction

- Before I go out, I will have breakfast.

= I will have breakfast before I go out.

- When the report is prepared, I will call you.

= I will call you when the report is prepared.

تُسمى العبارة الزمنية العبارة الثانوية، ويمكن أن تأتي قبل أو بعد العبارة الرئيسية :

عبارة زمنية Time clause عبارة رئيسية Main clause

When the report is prepared, I will call you.

عبارة زمنية Time clause عبارة رئيسية Main clause

I will call you when the report is prepared.

- عندما تأتي العبارة الزمنية في بداية الجملة يتم الفصل بينها وبين الجملة الرئيسية باستخدام (,) :

- By the time I have arrived home, mum will have prepared dinner.

= Mum will have prepared dinner by the time I have arrived home.

- تُستخدم العبارة الزمنية كظرف زمان يُحدد وقت وقوع الحدث، وهي تكون إجابة للأسئلة التي تبدأ بـ (when) أو (What time) مثلاً :

A: When will you leave the office?

B: I will leave the office after I have finished the report.

Time conjunctions & expressions الروابط والتعبيرات الزمنية

- تبدأ العبارة الزمنية بإحدى الروابط الزمنية مثل :

..... حتى until/till - بعد after - قبل before - بينما while - عندما when

- After I have studied unit 3, I will go to bed.
= I will go to bed after I have studied unit 2.

- يمكن أن تبدأ العبارة الزمنية بإحدى التعبيرات الظرفية مثل :

..... قُبيل by the time - بمجرد أن as soon as - حالاً بعد immediately - بمجرد أن once

..... في اليوم الذي the day - في الدقيقة التي the minute - في اللحظة التي the moment

- Once I have had my breakfast, I will leave for school.

= I will leave for school once I have had my breakfast.

- The day I arrive in Egypt, I am going to visit the pyramids.

= I am going to visit the pyramids the day I arrive in Egypt

- إذا كانت العبارتين الرئيسة والثانوية تبدأ بنفس الفاعل أو المفعول فيمكن استخدام اسم (noun) أو (inf. + ing) بعد الروابط الزمنية :

..... حتى until/till - بعد after - قبل before - بينما while - عندما when

- After Omar has done the shopping, he will go home.

= After doing the shopping, Omar will go home.

- Before my flat is furnished, it will be decorated.

= Before being furnished, my flat will be decorated.

Tenses after time conjunctions & expressions

الأزمنة بعد الروابط والتعبيرات الزمنية

- إذا كان السياق مُستقبل يكون ترتيب الأزمنة بعد الروابط الزمنية كالتالي :

Time conj.	+	Present Simple	+	... will + inf. ...
رابطة زمنية		Present con.		... am/is/are+ going to + inf. ...
		Present Perfect		... can/may/might/must ...+ inf.
		مضارع بسيط / مستمر / تام		... will have + p.p. ...
				... will be + (inf.+ing) ...
				- inf./ don't + inf. (أمر)

When I wash the dishes, I am going to help you with your homework.

= I am going to help you with your homework when I wash the dishes.

- While I am waiting for the bus, I will be drinking my juice.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

I Getting Started

1. After I the office, I will check my email.
a. reach b. have reached c. a & b d. had reached
2. After I the office, I checked my email.
a. reach b. have reached c. a & b d. had reached
3. As soon as I have had my lunch, I to do my homework.
a. will start b. would start c. started d. had started
4. Which of the following is correct?
a. While you are checking the report I will fix the printer.
b. While you are checking the report, I fixed the printer.
c. While you checked the report, I will fix the printer.
d. While you are checking the report, I will fix the printer.
5. A: When are you going to move to your new villa? B:
a. After it had been decorated.
b. After it was decorated.
c. After it has been decorated.
d. After it is going to be decorated.
6. While I am watching the match in the stadium, I some photos of my favourite stars.
a. take b. will take c. was taking d. took
7. The plane to Brazil off tomorrow at 6:00 am.
a. is taking b. takes c. will take d. is going to take
8. I'll go to bed as soon as I my homework.
a. do b. will c. did d. had done
9. He is flying to London at the weekend. His flight. at 5.30 in the morning.
a. leaving b. leaves c. left d. leave
10. When you meet Mr Ashraf, him to phone me.
a. will tell b. is going to tell
c. tell d. has told

11. When you a decision, inform me. **d. a & c**
 a. reach **b. reaches** **c. have reached**
 12. When she a decision, inform me. **d. a & c**
 a. reach **b. reaches** **c. have reached**
 13. Try to solve the problems before the manager **d. had arrived**
 a. has arrived **b. arrive** **c. arrived**

II Special Cases

14. While I asleep, don't play loud music. **d. was being**
 a. am **b. was** **c. am being**
 15. you begin to speak, they will give you their attention. **b. immediately**
 a. At once **d. Immediately** **c. As soon**
 16. After the car will be ready for the long drive. **b. it checks**
 a. checking it **d. you have checked it** **c. you had checked it**
 17. return my money back, I will give you the loan papers. **d. You**
 a. Today you **b. The day you** **c. On you**
 18. return my money back; I will give you the loan papers. **d. You**
 a. Today you are **b. The day you** **c. On you**

III Check your understanding

19. "My father will call you as soon as his guests have left". This means that
 a. the guests have left
 b. the guests haven't left yet
 c. the guests had left
 d. the guests won't leave
 20. "Omar will go back to work once he has got better". This means
 a. he has already got better.
 b. he isn't supposed to get better.
 c. he is still unwell.
 d. he has gone back to work.

LESSONS
3 & 4

58 pages 30 & 31 WB pages 16 & 17

Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

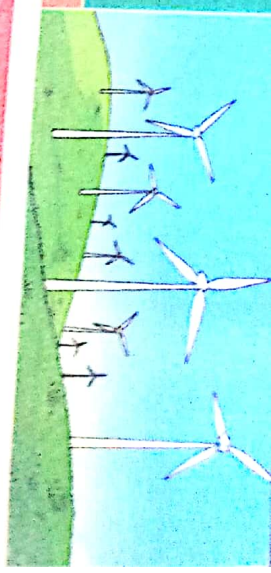
المعاني والمصطلحات الطبية في كل صفحة من الصفحات 30 و 31 في كتاب العمل 58
 المعاني والمصطلحات الطبية في كل صفحة من الصفحات 16 و 17 في كتاب العمل 58

1 Key Vocabulary

drug(n)	دواء - عقار	surgeon(n)	جراح
operation(n)	عملية جراحية	surgery (n)	جراحة
record(n)	سجل	surgical(adj)	جراحي
sensor(n)	جهاز استشعار - مجس	treatment(n)	علاج - معاملة

2 Important Vocabulary

addicted(adj)	مدمن	hacker(n)	قرصان - مخترق
app =	تطبيق حاسوبي	handle(d) (v)	يستعمل / يتناول - يتدبر
application(n)	استطاعي - مُطَافِع (غير حقيقي)	identify(ied) (v)	يحدد
artificial (adj)	بائع - مُساعد	individual(n/adj)	فرد - فردي
assistant(n)	فائدة - يستفيد	intelligence(n)	ذكاء
benefit(ed) (n/v)	مُفيد	issue(n)	قضية - مشكلة
business(n)	شركة - عمل تجاري	last(ed) (v)	يستمر/ يدوم
complicated(adj)	مُعقد	latest(adj)	أحدث
consultant(n)	استشاري	measure(d) (v)	يقيس
cure(d) (n/v)	علاج - يعالج	mission(n)	مهمة
cyber(prefix)	إلكتروني	monitor(ed) (v/n)	يراقب/ يتابع - شاشة عرض
decade(n)	عقد (١٠ سنوات)	operation(n)	عملية جراحية
depend(ed) (v)	يعتمد	opportunity(n)	فرصة
development(n)	تطور	option(n)	خيار / اختيار
diabetes(n)	مرض السكر	organisation(n)	مؤسسة
dishwasher(n)	غسالة الأطباق	recycle(d) (v)	يُعيد تدوير
distant(adj)	بعيد	replace(d) (v)	يحل محل
equipment(n)	مُعَدَّات - مَعَدَّات	safety(n)	أمان
		save(d) (v)	يُخزِّن - يُدخِّر



escape(d) (v)	يهرب	security(n)	القيادة الثانية
everyday(adi)	يومي	self-driving(n/adi)	القيادة - القيادة الذاتية
evolve(d) (v)	يتطور	sensor(n)	جهاز استشعار
green	تكنولوجيا صديقة	swap(pecd) (v)	تبادل
technology(n)	للبيئة	warning(n)	تحذير

3 Definitions تعريفات

drugs(n)	أدوية - عقاقير	medicines or things that make medicines
record(n)	سجل	information about something that is written down on computer, film, etc. or stored down so that it can be looked at in the future
sensor(n)	جهاز استشعار - مجس	a piece of equipment that can find or measure light, heat, sound etc.
surgeon(n)	جراح	a special doctor who is trained to cut open people to make them better
surgery /operation(n)	جراحة	when doctors cut open your body to help repair it or remove something that is damaged
treatment(n)	علاج - معالجة	something to try and make you feel better after an injury or when you are ill

General Exercise On Vocabulary

Understand

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Key vocabulary

- Only use under medical supervision.
a. issues b. drugs c. apps d. sensors
- A famous doctor led the team who did the on my knee.
a. treatment b. intelligence c. operation d. opportunity
- My secretary keeps of everything done in the office.
a. records b. cures c. securities d. surgeries
- AI/An is trained to operate on patients.
a. hacker b. surgeon c. monitor d. astronomer
- There's something wrong with the car temperature
a. issue b. drug c. hacker d. sensor

- Matters got worse because the of the disease was based on a wrong prescription.
a. treatment b. intelligence c. operation d. opportunity
- The I had on my back was a great success.
a. record b. cure c. security d. surgery

2 Important vocabulary

- I want a good job that for life.
a. involves b. measures c. lasts d. recycles
- A professional has managed to steal business secrets from the laptop of a famous businessman.
a. hacker b. surgeon c. monitor d. astronomer
- Many young people have sadly been to online games.
a. addicted b. complicated c. surgical d. artificial
- I used my ruler to the width of my bedroom door.
a. involve b. measure c. last d. recycle
- The price of an object on its quality and the demand on it.
a. handles b. swaps c. depends d. evolves
- Facing terrorism is one of our key social
a. issues b. drugs c. apps d. sensors
- Don't be tricked by the smile on her face.
a. addicted b. complicated c. surgical d. artificial
- The best educational book in Egypt, El-Moasser, is published by a great
a. dishwasher b. robot c. organisation d. warning
- Use your in making the right decision. Don't depend on luck.
a. treatment b. intelligence c. operation d. opportunity
- It is the role of the police to enforce in the society.
a. record b. cure c. security d. surgery
- Our small shop has gradually into a big mall.
a. handled b. swapped c. depended d. evolved
- does not cause any harm to the environment.
a. Benefit b. Process c. Green technology d. Cyberbullying
- Being a manager usually working longer hours.
a. involves b. measures c. lasts d. recycles

21. Is there a mobile that can measure blood pressure accurately?
 a. issue b. drug c. app d. sensor
22. I always paragraphs with my classmates to check each other's work.
 a. handle b. swap c. depend d. evolve
23. Fire alarms give when there's a fire.
 a. dishwasher b. robot c. organisation d. warning
24. It is better for the environment if old plastic, glass, paper and metals are
 a. involved b. measured c. lasted d. recycled
25. When life gives you a/an, make the best use of it.
 a. treatment b. intelligence c. operation d. opportunity
26. Online employment is one of the of modern technology.
 a. benefits b. processes c. green technology d. surround sounds
27. We will employ only the candidates who are intelligent and hard-working to carry out business missions.
 a. addicted b. complicated c. surgical d. artificial
28. Famous people don't like the way their private life is on social media.
 a. handled b. swapped c. depended d. evolved
29. It has always been said that "Prevention is better than".
 a. record b. cure c. security d. surgery
- 3 Definitions**
30. is something to try and make you feel better after an injury or when you are ill.
 a. Treatment b. Surgery c. Operation d. b & c
31. A/An is information about something that is written down or stored on computer, film etc. so that it can be looked at in the future.
 a. approach b. innovation c. record d. process
32. A is a piece of equipment that can find or measure light, heat, sound etc.
 a. speaker b. sensor c. device d. podcast
33. A/An is when doctors cut open your body to help repair it or remove something that is damaged.
 a. treatment b. surgery c. operation d. b & c

34. A/An is a special doctor who is trained to cut open people to make them better.
 a. surgeon b. surgery c. astronaut d. operator
35. are medicines or things that make medicines.
 a. Apps b. Applications c. Drugs d. a & b

Part II Vocabulary Study

1 Verbal Collocations

become	addicted to	have	negative effects
create	opportunities	improve	health care
cause	serious damage to	monitor	your health/fitness
solve	complicated problems	perform	an operation
do	(carry out) an operation	use	green technology
save	lives	discover	new cures

Mini Test 1 Collocations

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
1. The operation Dr Alaa had saved the life of a 10-year-old child.
 a. done b. performed c. carried out d. a, b & c
2. Modern technology some negative effects.
 a. has b. uses c. cuts d. does

3. Serious damage was to the building by the earthquake.
a. made b. performed c. a & b d. caused
4. New cures for diseases are by scientists every day.
a. become b. solved c. discovered d. stayed
5. green technology helps nature.
a. Making b. Using c. Cutting d. Doing
6. It was so complicated a problem that I couldn't it on my own.
a. become b. solve c. discover d. stay
7. The task has perfectly been
a. done b. performed c. a & b d. caused
8. A surgeon has to open patients' bodies to save their lives.
a. have b. use c. cut d. do
9. Building new factories job opportunities for citizens.
a. performs b. creates c. does d. monitors
10. Don't leave your children playing computer games for long or they will addicted to it.
a. become b. solve c. discover d. stay

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
artificial(adj)	اصطناعي - غير طبيعي
artificial(adj)	مُخْتَلَق - مُنْتَعَل - زائف
complicated(adj)	مُعَقَّد - مُرَكَّب
drug(n)	دواء - عقار
operation(n)	عملية جراحية
	synthetic - unnatural - man - made
	pretended- false
	complex
	medicine
	surgery

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
artificial(adj)	اصطناعي - غير طبيعي
artificial(adj)	مُخْتَلَق - مُنْتَعَل - زائف
complicated(adj)	مُعَقَّد - مُرَكَّب
intelligence(n)	ذكاء
safety(n)	أمان
	natural
	genuine
	easy/simple
	stupidity
	danger/risk

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "The computer is a form of artificial intelligence". In this sentence, 'artificial' is a synonym of
a. natural b. unnatural c. pretended d. genuine
2. "He tricks customers with the artificial kindness he shows". In this sentence, 'artificial' is a synonym of
a. natural b. supernatural c. pretended d. genuine
3. Something that is is neither simple nor easy.
a. complex b. complicated c. clear d. a & b
4. 'Complicated' is to 'complex' as 'operation' is to
a. surgery b. treatment c. medicine d. cure
5. "The children were saved to safety". In this utterance, 'safety' is antonymous with
a. security b. risk c. dangerous d. difficult

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
drug يُخَدِّر / يضع مُخَدِّر	druggist صيدلاني drug مادة مخدرة / دواء	drugged مُخَدِّر / تحت تأثير مادة مُخَدِّرَة
operate يُشغِّل (آلة) - يُجري جراحة	operation تشغيل (آلة) - عملية جراحية operator عامل التليفون	
record يُسجِّل	record سجل - محتوى مُسجِّل recorder جهاز تسجيل recording التسجيل	recorded مُسجِّل
	surgeon جراح surgery الجراحة	surgical جراحي
treat يُعَامِل - يعالج	treatment علاج - معالجة - معاملة	treatable قابل للعلاج

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. An evil servant helped the criminals. He his master's food.
a. drug b. drugged c. drugging d. drugging

2. An evil servant helped the criminals by his master's food.
a. drug b. drugged c. drugging d. druggist
3. An evil servant helped the criminals. He put a in his master's food.
a. drug b. drugged c. drugging d. druggist
4. This injury will heal soon if you it well.
a. treat b. treated c. treatment d. treatable
5. This injury will heal soon with good
a. treat b. treated c. treatment d. treatable
6. This injury is That means it is easy that it heals soon.
a. treat b. treated c. treatment d. treatable
7. All our clients' data are
a. record b. recorder c. recorded d. recording
8. We keep a of all our clients' data.
a. record b. recorder c. recorded d. recording
9. The of this piece of equipment is impossible without reading its catalogue.
a. operate b. operator c. operation d. a & c
10. I can't this piece of equipment without reading its catalogue.
a. operate b. operator c. operation d. a & c

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

addicted to	مُدمن لـ	global warming	الاحترار العالمي
AI = artificial intelligence	الذكاء الاصطناعي	health care	الرعاية الصحية
bad for	ضار بـ	in what ways	بأي الطرق
be connected to	متصل بـ	just for you	فقط لأجلك
carry out an operation	يُجري جراحة	just like	شأنه مثل
communicate in any language	يتواصل بأي لغة	keep in touch with	يُحافظ على اتصال بـ
cyber security	الأمن الإلكتروني	maths problems	مسائل الرياضيات
electric cars	سيارات كهربائية	self-driving	السيارة ذاتية القيادة
everyday life/lives	الحياة اليومية	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
evolving technology	التكنولوجيا المتطورة	thanks to	بفضل
		warning systems	نظم إنذار

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

carry out	يُنفذ	prefer ... to	يُفضل ... على
connect to	يتصل بـ	relate to	يتعلق بـ
depend on	يعتمد على	run out of	ينفذ ما لديه من
escape to	يفر إلى	throw away	يُرمى / يتخلص من
last for	يستمر لمدة	work out	يُحل - يحسب

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
1. I hope I will keep touch with my secondary school friends after I join university.
a. of b. with c. to d. in
2. This maths problem can only be worked by the intelligent.
a. in b. out c. for d. with
3. A Polish surgeon carried an operation on my grandmother.
a. out b. of c. from d. to
4. The finals last three weeks.
a. in b. since c. for d. into
5. I can't make a cake as we've run eggs.
a. out b. out of c. from d. for
6. Unfortunately, he became addicted drugs.
a. to taking b. to take c. taking d. take
7. I prefer light meals heavy ones, especially at night.
a. by b. from c. with d. to
8. I warned Sanna not to throw litter in the street.
a. on b. into c. away d. from

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

Expressions with 'on'			
depend on	يعتمد على	on a bigger scale	على نطاق أوسع
on the one hand	من ناحية	on the whole	في المجمل
on the other hand	من الناحية الأخرى	on balance	إجمالاً / إذا أخذنا كل شيء في الاعتبار

- Try to depend on yourself. Rodayna.
- On the one hand they'd love to earn more money, but on the other hand, they don't want to work harder.
- Improve the quality of your goods if you want to sell them on a bigger scale.
- This candidate has good skills, but he lacks experience. On the whole, I think he should be employed.
- We have too many jobs to do today. On balance, it's better to cancel the meeting.

explore - invent - find out - discover

- **explore** (يكتشف شيء / مكان غريب)
- I want to explore that old desert area around my village.
 - **invent** (يخترع شيء جديد لم يكن موجود من قبل)
- The Chinese invented paper.
 - **find out** (يكتشف (مصادفة أو بعد بحث) / يعرف)
- I found out that she keeps a cat in her bedroom.
 - **discover** (يكتشف شيء كان موجود ولكنه غير معروف)
- Isaac Newton discovered gravity.
- لاحظ أن :
- **discover (a medicine / the femtosecond)**
- I hope scientists will discover a medicine for cancer.

sensible - sensitive - sensor

- **sensor** (جهاز استشعار - مجس (لاستشعار أو قياس الحرارة أو الضوء أو غير ذلك)
- The oil sensor in my car does not work.
- **sensitive** (حساس ل/لديه حساسية)
- My skin is sensitive to woolen clothes.
- **sensible** (عقلاني / حكيم)
- We want to find a sensible solution to the problem.

throw + away / out / into

- **throw ... away / out** (يتخلص من / يرمي (لا يُذكر بعدها المكان الذي يتم الإلقاء فيه)
- Sama threw her broken toy away / out.
- **throw ... into** (يتخلص من / يرمي (يُذكر بعدها المكان الذي يتم الإلقاء فيه)
- Sama threw her broken toy into the bin.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Do you know who the internet?
a. explored b. found out c. discovered d. invented
- I'd like very much to the area behind the mountain.
a. explore b. find out c. discover d. invent
- I don't know how he could about our new design.
a. explore b. find out c. discover d. invent
- Dr Zewail's team were able to the femtosecond.
a. explore b. find out c. discover d. invent
- She threw the stone
a. away b. out c. into d. a & b
- She threw the stone the canal.
a. away b. out c. into d. a & b
- Printers have a paper
a. sensitive b. sensible c. science d. sensor
- My eyes are to strong sunlight.
a. sensitive b. sensible c. science d. sensor
- Being, he thinks carefully before making decisions.
a. sensitive b. sensible c. science d. sensor

8 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات

drug

- **drug (n)** (مُخدِّر / مادة مُخدِّرة)
- You may become addicted to drugs if you have bad company. ضحية
- **drug (for) (n)** (دواء / عقار)
- I hope scientists will find effective drugs for cancer.
- **drug (n)** (مادة مُنشِّطة (مفرد مُنشِّطات)
- Some sports people take illegal drugs.

العمليات الثانية

- take/use drugs **تتغاطى المخدرات/المنشطات**
- be addicted to drugs **تُغَمِن على المخدرات/المنشطات**
- experiment with drugs **تُجَرِّب تتغاطى المخدرات/المنشطات**
- come off/get off drugs **تُطْلَع عن تتغاطى المخدرات/المنشطات**
- drug addiction **إدمان المخدرات/المنشطات**
- **drug(ed) (v)** **تُغَمِن/تُطْلَع مادة مخدرة**
 - This criminal **drugged** and killed an old lady.
 - She **drugged** the juice to kill the leader of the gang.

monitor

- **monitor(ed) (v)** **رَاقَب - يَرقُب - يَتحكَّم على**
 - The mall is **monitored** with cameras.
- **monitor (n)** **جهاز عرض**
 - The **monitor** of my PC fell and broke.
- **monitor (n)** **رَاقِب (شخص يراقب وضع معين ليؤكد أن الأمور تسير بشكل صحيح)**
 - The international **monitors** keep open eyes on the situation between the two countries.

operation

- **operate(d) (v)** **يُشغِّل/يُدير (آلة/جهاز...)**
 - Only Ahmed can **operate** this machine.
- **operate(d) (on) (v)** **يُجري عملية جراحية لـ**
 - Dr Rabie **operated** on my cousin.
- **operation (on/for/to) (n)** **عملية جراحية (لـ/بفرض/لكي)**
 - Dr Rabie did an **operation** on my cousin.
- **operation (n)** **إدارة/تشغيل/تطبيق (آلة/نظام)**
 - The machine broke down in the first year of **operation**.
- **operation (n)** **عملية/تشغيل (مهمة)**
 - The company is involved in a laptop manufacturing **operation**.
- do/carry out/perform an operation **يُجري جراحة**
- have/undergo an operation **يُجري له جراحة**
- a transplant operation **عملية زراعة أعضاء**

record

- **record(ed) (v)** **يُسجِّل/يُدون**
 - The accountants **record** the money we spend.
 - I will **record** the match. You can watch it later.
- **record(of) (n)** **سجل (دولي أو الكروي)**
 - The accountants keep a **record** of the money we spend.
 - Don't waste your time listening to silly **records**.
- **record(of/in) (n)** **رقم قياسي (في الرياضة مثلاً)**
 - This swimmer will set a new **record** in the next Olympics.
- **record(of) (n)** **سجل (تفاصيل شخصية/عملية)**
 - Salah has a good **record** in the Premier League.
- **keep/maintain a record** **يحفظ/يسجل**
 - access records **يطلع على السجلات**
 - official records **السجلات الرسمية**
- a written record **سجل مكتوب**
- on record **مُسجِّل / مُدَوَّن**

treat

- **treat(like/as/with) (v)** **يُعامل (مثل / كـ / بـ)** **يُعامل معاملة**
 - I **treat** my father as a friend.
 - My mother **treats** my friend Aya like one of the family.
 - It is polite to **treat** your teachers **with** respect.
- **treat(as) (v)** **يعتبر (كـ)**
 - Don't **treat** what I say as a joke!
- **treat (with) (v)** **يُعالج (بـ)**
 - Can coronavirus patients be **treated with** drugs?
- **treat (to) (v)** **يستضيف/يكرم (على)**
 - I **treated** my fiancée **to** dinner in a five-star restaurant.
- **treatment (of) (n)** **معاملة (لـ)**
 - The violent **treatment** of children will make them behave cowardly.

• **treatment (of) (n)**

- The treatment of homeless children issue in the film is inconvenient.

• **treatment (off/for) (n)**

- The common treatment of cold is to rest and have warm drinks.

- give/provide treatment يعالج
- respond to treatment يستجيب للعلاج

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
- undergo treatment يتلقى علاج

Advanced Exercises on Language

تنويه: التدريبات التالية تتبعها الإجابة مع التوضيح

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I have all my friends to an open buffet meal on the occasion of getting a good job.
a. treated b. drugged c. handled d. benefited
- I appreciate your decision to stop arguing although you were right.
a. sensor b. sensitive c. nonsense d. sensible
- Last summer was the hottest on
a. advance b. treatment c. record d. operation
- The new law will be in as soon as it is published in the official newspaper.
a. sensor b. treatment c. surgery d. operation
- Online computer games are like a/an They keep encouraging you for more.
a. process b. drug c. operation d. sensor

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	الفعل الاصطلاحي (treat ...to) يعني (يعزم...علي) وهو ما يتفق مع معنى الجملة
2.	d	الصفة (sensible) تعني (عقلاني/حكيم) وهو ما يتفق مع معنى الجملة
3.	c	التعبير (on record) يعني (مُسجّل/موجود في السجلات)
4.	d	التعبير (in operation) يعني (قيد التطبيق/التنفيذ)
5.	b	التعبير (be like a drug) يعني (يشبه المخدر لأنه يسبب الإدمان)

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

Possible future uses⁽¹⁾ of AI

{WB page 16}

Experts all agree that we will see more artificial intelligence⁽²⁾ (AI) in the future, but how will this affect⁽³⁾ our lives?



Check Vocabulary

- استخدام
- الذكاء الاصطناعي
- يؤثر على
- عقود
- بائع
- شركات
- ذاتى القيادة
- يحل محل
- تقليدى
- مُذهل
- يتواصل
- بفضل

Factories already use AI to build cars and machines. Work that used to be done by factory workers is now done by computers. In the next few decades⁽⁴⁾, computers will also do some work that is now done by office workers and shop assistants⁽⁵⁾. That means many shops and businesses⁽⁶⁾ won't need to close: they will be open for 24 hours.

When you use the internet, AI quickly knows what you are interested in and sends you advertisements to sell you things. In the future, AI will know enough about you to be able to tell factories to make things just for you: the things won't need to be mass-produced.

Many people think that self-driving⁽⁷⁾ cars will have replaced⁽⁸⁾ traditional⁽⁹⁾ cars within the next few decades. We will all be calling self-driving cars to take us where we want to go, just like we call a taxi today.

Soon, AI will also be helping us to learn new skills. It will help people produce amazing⁽¹⁰⁾ art or music. AI will also help us to communicate⁽¹¹⁾ in any language. Mobile phones have changed the way we live in just a few years. In the near future, our lives will have changed again thanks to⁽¹²⁾ AI.

Posted 11 Sept 2021, 16.30 Joat19

I don't agree with the last comment⁽¹⁾.

The benefits⁽²⁾ of technology in medicine are obvious. People's lives are saved every day because of new technology in hospitals! In the future, it'll be even more important. It will help us discover⁽³⁾ new cures⁽⁴⁾ for lots of diseases. Of course, technology has some negative effects, but on balance⁽⁵⁾, we can't live without it now.

Log in or register to post comments



Check Vocabulary

- (1) تعليق
- (2) فوائد
- (3) يكتشف
- (4) علاجات
- (5) بمراعاة جميع الاعتبارات

The advantages and disadvantages to evolving⁽¹⁾ technology

(WB page 17)

Technology is always changing. Every few years, you can buy televisions that have larger screens or better pictures. Mobile phones can do more and more things. On a bigger scale, computers in businesses, at airports and in almost every organisation become more and more powerful⁽²⁾. We now depend on everything becoming better, bigger and faster.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) مُتَطَوِّر
- (2) قوى
- (3) مُتَّصِل
- (4) يكتشف
- (5) الأحداث
- (6) يرمي/يُلقي
- (7) يُعيد تدوير
- (8) مُعدات

On the one hand, this makes things easier for all of us. It is not very expensive to buy televisions that are almost as good as cinema screens. Mobile phones mean that you can be connected⁽³⁾ to the internet anywhere, so you can always find out⁽⁴⁾ information or know where you are. Planes and cars are safer and businesses work better.

On the other hand, new technology is very bad for the environment. We all want to buy the latest⁽⁵⁾ phone, television or computer game, but that often means throwing away⁽⁶⁾ the old ones. You can recycle⁽⁷⁾ some parts of old equipment⁽⁸⁾, but a lot of it is never used again. Who wants an old phone that does not connect to the internet?

Reuben : Well, this app⁽¹⁹⁾ is connected to a little sensor⁽²⁰⁾ on my arm. It tells me my blood sugar level⁽²¹⁾. I click a button⁽²²⁾ on my phone and place it near the sensor. It makes a little sound, and there you can see my glucose⁽²³⁾ level is 7.3. It's especially helpful for people with diabetes⁽²⁴⁾, which is a disease which occurs⁽²⁵⁾ when your blood sugar is too high.

Presenter: Amazing! So, what next?

Reuben : Well, it's my belief⁽²⁶⁾ that by the next decade⁽²⁷⁾ AI in particular⁽²⁸⁾, will have transformed⁽²⁹⁾ health care⁽³⁰⁾ completely, and will be saving lives. Using data from patient's⁽³¹⁾ medical records⁽³²⁾, AI will be able to identify⁽³³⁾ and name⁽³⁴⁾ illnesses, design treatment plans, and create⁽³⁵⁾ new drugs⁽³⁶⁾ way faster than any doctor or consultant⁽³⁷⁾. Some people worry that AI systems will replace⁽³⁸⁾ doctors and nurses, but I don't think so. They'll be able to concentrate on⁽³⁹⁾ tasks⁽⁴⁰⁾ which depend uniquely⁽⁴¹⁾ on human skills instead⁽⁴²⁾, such as empathy⁽⁴³⁾. But what is certain is that we'll all be healthier and living longer due to⁽⁴⁴⁾ new technology.

- (19) تطبيق
(20) جهاز استشعار
(21) مستوى
(22) زر
(23) جلوكوز
(24) مرض السكر
(25) يحدث
(26) اعتقاد
(27) عقد (١٠ سنوات)
(28) بصفة خاصة
(29) يُغيّر/يحول
(30) رعاية
(31) مريض
(32) سجلات
(33) يُحدّد
(34) يذكر اسم
(35) يبتكر
(36) أدوية
(37) استشاري
(38) يحل محل
(39) يركز علي
(40) مهام
(41) بشكل فريد
(42) بدلاً من ذلك
(43) التعاطف
(44) بسبب/بفضل

Part IV

Language

Talking about the future

سيتم في هذا الجزء شرح صيغ الحديث عن المستقبل من خلال أربع صيغ رئيسية

Talking about the Future

- 1 The future simple المستقبل البسيط
... will + inf. ...
- 2 "Be going to"
form
- 3 The future continuous المستقبل المستمر
... will be + (inf.+ing) ...
- 4 The future perfect المستقبل التام
... will have + p.p. ...

المستقبل البسيط The future simple

Form التكوين

المعلوم

- subj. ناعل + will / shall + inf. ...
- Leen will prepare the family lunch. (إثبات)
- Leen will not (won't) prepare the family lunch. (إنفي)
- Will Leen prepare the family lunch? (سؤال بـ "هل")
- What will Leen do? (سؤال بـ "أداة استفهام")

المجهول

- obj. منهل + will / shall + be + p.p. ...
- The family lunch will be prepared (by Leen). (إثبات)

استخدامات المستقبل البسيط Uses of the future simple

التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلاً في حالة عدم وجود دليل (أي لا يوجد معطيات في المضارع تسمح بوقوع الحدث في المستقبل).

- Egypt will win the next Africa Cup of Nations.
- Rodayna will come first next year.

يمكن في هذه الحالة أن تبدأ الجملة بعبارة تحتوي على أفعال مثل :

assume	يفترض	expect	يتوقع
be afraid	يخشى	hope	بأمل
be/feel sure	يشعر بالتأكد	know	يعرف
believe	يعتقد	suppose	يفترض
daresay	يمكنه القول	think	يعتقد
doubt	يشك	wonder	يتساءل

- I'm sure Ahmed will come back.
- I feel a bit hungry. I think I'll have something to eat.
- I suppose Hossam will sell his motorbike.
- I doubt I'll go out tonight. I'm too tired.

ومن الممكن أن يصاحب المستقبل البسيط بعض الظروف مثل :

certainly
definitely
perhaps

بالتأكيد
بالتأكيد
ربما

possibly
probably
surely

من الممكن
من المحتمل
بالتأكيد

- Perhaps I'll see him at the party.
- She will probably phone me soon.

لاحظ أن الصفات الشخصية لا تعد دليلاً، ويُستخدم معها المستقبل البسيط عادة :

- Malak will pass her exams. She's a clever student.
- Yasmeen and her husband both have green eyes, so their baby will have green eyes.

لكن الصفات الوقتية تُعد دليلاً ويُفضل أن يُستخدم معها 'be going to'

- Mohammed looks exhausted. I think he is going to sleep on his chair.

التعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية (أحداث ليس للفاعل أو رغباته أو إرادته دخل فيها) :

- Ahmed will be ten years old next April.
- Winter will come again.
- One day, other people will enter this office, sit at my desk and do my job.

يمكن أن يُستخدم المستقبل البسيط في الجملة الرئيسية مع الروابط الزمنية والحالة الشرطية الأولى :

- If I drop this egg, it will break.
- When the weather gets hot, we will start the repairs to our old house.

يُستخدم المستقبل البسيط (أو going to) بدلاً من المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الترتيبات

المستقبلية مع أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والإدراك والرغبة والتملك بالإضافة إلى (be) :

- Ayman will arrive at nine. He is knowing the details afterwards. (X)
- Ayman will arrive at nine. He'll know the details afterwards. (✓)

التعبير عن قرار سريع (رد فعل لحظي وقت الكلام) :

- The phone is ringing. I'll answer it.
- Oh, I've left the window open. I'll go and close it.
- A: What would you like to have? B: I'll have a burger, please.
- A: Have you phoned Mustafa?
- B: Oh no, I have forgotten. I'll phone him right now.

2 "be going to" form

Form

Active → - subj. + am/is/are + going to + inf ...

- Sarah is going to do the cooking.

Passive → - Obj. + am / is / are + going to + be + P.P ...

- The cooking is going to be done (by Sarah).

Usage

ونستخدم (be going to) في الحالات التالية :

١ التعبير عن الخطط المسبقة "plans" :

- A : Have you planned anything for the weekend?

B : Yes. I'm going to plant some trees in our garden.

٢ التعبير عن النية (intend/intention) لعمل شيء في المستقبل القريب :

- I'm going to meet Ahmed at the station at nine.

- I intend to meet Ahmed at the station at nine.

٣ التعبير عن شيء على وشك الحدوث :

- Watch out! You are going to fall.

٤ التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلاً في حالة وجود دليل (أى يوجد بالمضارع ما يسمح بوقوع الشيء) :

- Look at those clouds. It's going to rain.

- My aunt is going to have a baby. She is pregnant.

- وبهذا المعنى يمكن استخدام going to بعد أفعال مثل (be sure/be afraid/believe/think) :

- This boy looks very pale. I think he is going to faint.

٥ وتستخدم أيضاً للتعبير عما سيحدث في المستقبل إذا كان هناك قرار مسبق وبدل على ذلك كلمات مثل :

decided/have decided/made a decision/made up ... mind

- They are going to have lunch outdoors. They have decided.

- I've made up my mind that I'm going to do more exercise in the future.

٦ تُستخدم في الجملة الرئيسية مع الروابط الزمنية للدلالة على النية :

- Rodayna is going to be a doctor when she graduates.

- Where are you going to live when you finish your studies?

٧ لاحظ أنه يفضل عدم استخدام الفعلين (go - come) بعد (going to) واستخدام المضارع المستمر الذي يبدو ملائماً أكثر :

Instead of :

- I am going to go / come with you to the cinema tomorrow.

It is much better to say:

- I am going / coming with you to the cinema tomorrow.

3 The future continuous (will / may + be + inf. + ing)

Form	The Future Continuous Tense
Affirmation & Negation الإثبات والنفي	Subj. + will / won't + be + inf. + ing ... - Reem will be doing the housework all morning tomorrow. - At five next Friday, I will be visiting one of my old friends.
Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	Will + subj. + be + inf. + ing ...? - Will Reem be doing the housework all morning tomorrow?
'Wh' Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W. + will + subj. + be + inf. + ing ...? - What will Reem be doing all morning tomorrow?

يستخدم (may) بدلاً من (will) للتنبؤ بأحداث قد تكون مستمرة في المستقبل في حالة عدم التأكد :

may be + inf. + ing

- When Rodayna is 20, she **may be studying** medicine at university.

Uses of الاستخدامات

1 التنبؤ بحدث سيكون مستمراً في وقت معين في المستقبل:

- Omar **will be watching** a football match **at nine tomorrow**.
- **This time tomorrow**, Sama **will be travelling** to Cairo with her family.

2 التنبؤ بحدث سيستمر لفترة في المستقبل:

- The manager **will be interviewing** some applicants **from three to five tomorrow**.

3 التنبؤ بشيء سيكون سائداً ومُعْتَرَفاً عليه في المستقبل:

- In 10 years' time, more people **will be living** in new cities.

4 التنبؤ بحدث سيكون مستمراً عندما سيقع حدث آخر في المستقبل (لاحظ استخدام المضارع البسيط بعد الروابط الزمنية):

- When you **return** home, I **may be preparing** lunch.

5 نستخدم مع روابط السبب والنتيجة لتبرير شيء ما في المستقبل:

- I **can't go** to the club next Friday because I **will be planting** some trees in my garden.

1 نستخدم (may) بدلاً من (will) في حالة التعبير عن عدم التأكد أو الاحتمال:

may be + inf. + ing

- Omar **may be waiting** for you at the airport.

2 نستخدم صيغة الاستفهام للطلب أو السؤال عن معلومة بشكل مهذب:

- **Will you be using** your digital camera tomorrow?

3 نستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن أحداث مستمرة الآن ونتوقع أن تكون مستمرة أيضاً في المستقبل:

will / may + still + be + inf. + ing

- The number of people **may still be increasing** in the future.

4 لا نستخدم المستقبل المستمر أو أي من الأزمنة المستمرة مع أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والإدراك والملكية:

- At seven tomorrow, the pool **will be containing** fresh water. (X)

- At seven tomorrow, the pool **will contain** fresh water. (✓)

4 The future perfect المستقبل التام

Active مبنى للمعلوم	Passive مبنى للمجهول
Subj. + will / won't + have + P.P.	Obj. + will / won't + have + been + P.P.
- She will have answered the test by eleven o'clock.	- The test will have been answered (by her) by eleven o'clock.
1 يستخدم المستقبل التام للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد تم قبل أو بحلول وقت معين في المستقبل ، وعادة ما يُستخدم معه تعبيرات زمنية مستقبلية تبدأ بحرف الجر (by / before):	
- My father will have arrived home before five o'clock.	
- By this time next week, I will have heard my test results.	
2 يستخدم المستقبل التام أيضاً للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى أو تم قبل وقوع حدث آخر في المستقبل ، وهنا يتوقف استخدام المستقبل البسيط أو المستقبل التام أو المستمر على المعنى:	
- When mum arrives home, we will have cleaned our rooms. (سيكون التنظيف قد تم قبل وصول الأم)	
- When mum arrives home, we will clean our rooms. (سنقوم بالتنظيف)	
- When mum arrives home, we will be cleaning our room. (سيكون التنظيف مستمراً لحظة وصولها)	

٢ يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية:

After / As soon as
When / The moment + حدث أول
(مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) → مستقبل / جملة أمر

- After I arrive (= have arrived) home, I'll take a rest.
- Tell Ahmed to call me when you see (= have seen) him.

Before /
By the time + حدث ثان
(مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) → مستقبل / جملة أمر

- Before we leave (= have left) the office, I'll phone some clients.
- Don't leave before you finish (= have finished) the report.

حدث ثان مستقبل بسيط منفى (غالبًا)
/ جملة أمر + till / until + حدث أول مضارع بسيط
أو مضارع تام

- Mum won't set the table for lunch until my father arrives (= has arrived) home.
- Don't put the bread in the shopping bag until it completely cools.

٦ إذا منعك شيء من القيام بشيء آخر في المستقبل القريب فإن ما يمنعك يكون مرتباً له، ويمكن في هذه الحالة استخدام المضارع المستمر أو المستقبل المستمر:

- I can't see you this evening. I'm visiting my uncle in hospital.
- I can't see you this evening. I'll be visiting my uncle in hospital.

عزيزي الطالب : من الضروري مراجعة صيغ المستقبل التي سبق دراستها بالرجوع إلى ملحق القواعد الخاص بكتاب المعاصر.

General Exercises

On Language

● Apply

- ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting Started

1. I think that Youssef a full-time job once he gets his degree.
a. shall find b. is finding c. will find d. finds
2. I'm not sure what I will be doing this time next Monday. I football.
a. will be playing b. may be playing
c. will have played d. am playing

3. Surely, he all this work by two.
 a. won't be finished
 b. won't have been finished
 c. won't have finished
 d. hasn't finished
4. The drinks will already by the time the party starts.
 a. have delivered
 b. have been delivered
 c. be delivering
 d. deliver
5. We in houses on Mars 50 years from now. Who knows?
 a. may have lived
 b. will be lived
 c. may be living
 d. are living
6. In just six months' time, all the old buildings will
 a. have replaced
 b. have been renewed
 c. be renewing
 d. renew
7. You a new car if you come first this year. I promise.
 a. are getting
 b. are going to get
 c. should get
 d. will get
8. I expect our National Team the match tomorrow.
 a. win
 b. will win
 c. are winning
 d. are going to win
9. Sama five next month.
 a. is going to be
 b. will be
 c. is being
 d. will be being
10. Government departments typically at 8 a.m.
 a. open
 b. are going to open
 c. is opening
 d. will open
11. We predict that doctors cancer in the future.
 a. are treating
 b. will treat
 c. are going to treat
 d. will have treated
12. A: We've run out of salt. B: I to the shops and get a bag.
 a. will go
 b. have gone
 c. go
 d. went
13. A: What would you like to start with? B: Mmm, I with some soup.
 a. am starting
 b. am going to start
 c. am start
 d. starts
14. A: Can you come on tomorrow evening?
 B: I wish I could, but I tennis with friends.
 a. will play
 b. shall play
 c. played
 d. will be playing

220

15. I my father at the garage, so I can't visit you at five.
 a. will be helping
 b. will helped
 c. will have helped
 d. will have been helped
16. By the end of this month, the new flat will for us to move in.
 a. be furnished
 b. have been furnished
 c. have furnished
 d. furnish
17. I expect Rodayna an engineer. She's very clever at maths.
 a. is
 b. is going to be
 c. is being
 d. will be
18. From 9 to 11 tomorrow, I an important business meeting.
 a. will have attended
 b. will be attended
 c. will be attending
 d. am going to be attended
19. I the cooking by the time you arrive home. You can have your lunch at once.
 a. win be done
 b. will have been done
 c. will have done
 d. will be doing
20. My karate training at six o'clock.
 a. is going to finish
 b. finishes
 c. is finishing
 d. be finished
21. My dad by lunchtime already.
 a. will have arrived
 b. will have been arrived
 c. will arrive
 d. won't have arrived
22. By the time you return home from school tomorrow, I to London.
 a. am going to fly
 b. will be flying
 c. have flown
 d. am flying

II Special Cases

23. My aunt will call us immediately she to the station.
 a. will get
 b. had got
 c. has got
 d. will have got
24. All Egyptian schools E-learning by 2030.
 a. will apply
 b. will have applied
 c. will be applied
 d. will have been applied
25. I think the global warming worse in the future.
 a. will still be getting
 b. will still have got
 c. is still getting
 d. still gets

221

26. A: your tablet next Sunday?
 B: Yes, I always use it to study my lessons.

- a. Will you have used
 b. Do you use
 c. Are you used
 d. Will you be using your job.

27. Stop coming to work late or you
 a. will lose
 b. lose
 c. are losing
 d. are going to lose

28. This time tomorrow, this flat to us.
 a. will be belonging
 b. is belonging
 c. will have been belonged
 d. will belong

29. When I go to Aswan next winter, I to five of Egypt's governors.
 a. have been
 b. will go
 c. will be going
 d. will have been

30. I haven't seen Mariam for ten years. I'm sure she very tall.
 a. will grow
 b. will be growing
 c. will have grown
 d. will have been grown

31. Our team are known to be very fit and talented. They the championship.
 a. will win
 b. will be winning
 c. are going to win
 d. will have won

32. I can't call you at 10 am tomorrow. I an important exam.
 a. have taken
 b. will have taken
 c. take
 d. will be taking

33. Roaa can't help you tomorrow. She on a science project.
 a. works
 b. will be working
 c. won't be working
 d. will have worked

34. By 2030, the International Space Station in orbit for 32 years
 a. will keep
 b. will be kept
 c. will have been kept
 d. will have been keeping

35. When you all the truth, you'll change your mind.
 a. have known
 b. knew
 c. are known
 d. had known

III Check your understanding

36. "We can't visit you tomorrow since"
 a. we will be having guests at home.
 b. we will have had guests at home.
 c. we may be having mum at home.
 d. a & c

37. "Will you be riding your bike tomorrow morning?"
 This is a polite way to say that

- a. I want you to ride your bike.
 b. I want to borrow your bike.
 c. I want to tell you about the benefits of riding bikes.
 d. I know someone who wants to borrow your bike.

38. "We will still be reading printed papers in the future".
 This means

- a. we want to read printed papers.
 b. we don't read printed papers.
 c. we read printed papers at the present time.
 d. we read paperbacks previously.

39. "It is the doorbell. I will open it". This is a/an

- a. request
 b. quick decision
 c. promise
 d. threat

40. "Will you be using your calculator next lesson"? This is a/an

- a. request
 b. quick decision
 c. promise
 d. threat

41. I'm sure everything will be OK soon. "This is a / an"

- a. arrangement
 b. timetable
 c. intention
 d. prediction

42. "The plane takes off at 13:00." This is a / an

- a. arrangement
 b. timetable
 c. intention
 d. prediction

43. "I'm flying on the plane that takes off at 13:00."

This is a / an

- a. arrangement
 b. timetable
 c. intention
 d. prediction

44. "I am going to have lunch outdoors." The speaker of this sentence

- a. expresses a/an
 b. timetable
 c. intention
 d. prediction



Part I

Chapter 3

هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة، لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات لهاتية الكتاب.

تدوين

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

apprenticeship(n)	تدريب مهني	spider's web(n)	شبكة عنكبوت
apprentice(n)	صبي؛ عامل تحت التمرين	wrap(ped)(v)	يُغلف
argument(n)	جدال - نقاش (حاد)	lay - laid - laid(v)	يُعد المائدة
behave yourself	أحسن التصرف	lead - led(v)	يقود - يأخذ - يؤدي إلى
dusty(adj)	مُغبر / يعلوه الغبار	gloomy(adj)	كئيب / مظلم

2 Definitions التعريفات

لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيداً، فهي موضع امتحان.

تدوين

apprenticeship(n) تدريب مهني	- the job of being an apprentice, or the period of time in which you are an apprentice
argument(v) جدال - نقاش (حاد)	- a situation in which two or more people disagree, often angrily.
behave yourself أحسن التصرف	- to not do things that annoy or offend people
dusty(adj) مُغبر / يعلوه الغبار	- covered with dust الغبار
gloomy(adj) كئيب / مظلم	- dark, especially in a way that makes you feel sad
spider's web(n) شبكة عنكبوت	- a net of thin threads made by a spider to catch insects

3 Idioms التعبيرات

That's your lot ! = You won't get any more.	هذا كل ما يخصك! (لن تحصل علي المزيد)
- could not put my finger on what it was. = I couldn't work out what it was.	لا أعرف ما هو؟

Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. We have to keep up with the new information, scientific or non-scientific, that is available every day.

- أ. علينا مواكبة المعلومات الجديدة، سواء العلمية أو غير العلمية، التي تتاح كل يوم.
- ب. علينا مواكبة المعلومات الجديدة، العلمية أو غير العلمية، المتوفرة كل يوم.
- ج. علينا الحفاظ على المعلومات الجديدة، العلمية أو غير العلمية، المتوفرة كل يوم.
- د. علينا مواكبة المعلومات الجديدة، العملية أو غير العملية، المتوفرة كل يوم.

2. Learning is a never-to-stop process. Lifelong learning helps people to get the skills which help them get promoted.

- أ. إن التعلم هو عملية لا يجب أن تتوقف، كما يساعد التعلم مدى الحياة الأشخاص على اكتساب المهارات التي تساعد على الترويج.
- ب. إن التعلم هو عملية لا يمكن أن تتوقف، كما يساعد التعلم من الحياة الأشخاص على اكتساب المهارات التي تساعد على الترويج.
- ج. إن التعلم عملية لا تتوقف، ويساعد التعلم مدى الحياة الأشخاص على اكتساب المهارات التي تساعد على الترفيه.
- د. إن التعلم عملية لا تتوقف، ويساعد التعلم مدى الحياة الأشخاص على اكتساب المهارات التي تساعد في الحصول على الترقية.

3. Lifelong learning helps people keep up with the ongoing progress in the world of science and technology.

- أ. يساعد التعلم مدى الحياة الناس على مواكبة التقدم المستمر في عالم العلوم والتكنولوجيا.
- ب. يساعد التعلم من الحياة الناس على مواكبة التقدم المستمر في عالم العلوم والتكنولوجيا.
- ج. يساعد التعلم مدى الحياة على مواكبة تقدم الناس المستمر في عالم العلوم والتكنولوجيا.
- د. يساعد التعلم طوال العمر الناس على مقاومة التقدم المستمر في عالم العلوم والتكنولوجيا.

Choose the best English translation :

١. تستخدم الطاقة الشمسية لتوليد الكهرباء في محطة الطاقة العملاقة في صحراء مصر الغربية شمال أسوان.

- a. Solar energy is used to generate electricity in the giant power station in the western desert of Egypt, north Aswan.
- b. Solar energy is used to bear electricity in the giant power plant in the Western Desert of Egypt, northern of Aswan.
- c. Solar energy is used to generate electricity in the giant power plant in the Western Desert of Egypt, north of Aswan.

d. Solar energy is used to generate electronics in the giant power plant in the Western Desert of Egypt, north of Aswan.

- يجب أن يوجه البحث العلمي لحل مشكلات المجتمع مثل التلوث والتخلف عن التعليم.
- a. Scientific search should be directed to solve the problems of society such as traffic congestion, pollution, and school dropout.
- b. Scientific research should be directed only to solve the problems of society such as traffic congestion, pollution, and school dropout.
- c. Scientific research should be direct to solve the problems of society such as traffic congestion, pollution, and school dropout.
- d. Scientific research should be directed to solving the problems of society such as traffic congestion, pollution, and school dropout.

إذا أردنا أن نتقدم في شتى المجالات، فيجب علينا أن نهتم بالتعليم بجميع أركانه: الطالب والمعلم والمنهج والبيئة المدرسية.

- a. If we wanted to advance in various fields, we must pay attention to education in all its corners: the student, the teacher, the curriculum vitae and the school environment.
- b. If we want to advance in various fields, we must pay attention to education in all its pillars: the student, the teacher, the curriculum and the school environment.
- c. If we want to advance in various fields, we must pay attention to education in all its pillars: the student, the teacher, the curriculum and the school environment.
- d. If we want to advance in various fields, we must pay attention to education in each its pillars: the student, the teacher, the curriculum and the school environment.

تسعى الحكومة بكل ما تملك أن توفر الاحتياجات الأساسية للمواطنين في ظل جائحة كورونا الخطيرة.

- a. The government is doing its good to provide the basic needs of the citizens during the Corona pandemic.
- b. The government is striving with everything it has to provide the basic needs of the citizens in shadow of the dangerous Corona virus.
- c. The government is doing its best to provide the basics needs of the citizens during the dangerous Corona pandemic.
- d. The government is doing its best to provide the basic needs of the citizen during the dangerous Coronavirus pandemic.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- The good thing is that scientists have introduced really ideas to reduce pollution.
a. immersed b. produced c. innovative d. inconvenient
- The carrying the astronauts reached the space station.
a. universe b. surface c. spacecraft d. process
- Film makers depend on effects to impress their audience.
a. illustrated b. visual c. paper-thin d. permanent
- A/An is a scientist who studies the stars and planets.
a. astronomer b. astronaut c. speaker d. dentist
- I was shocked when the manager turned down my approach". In this context, 'approach' is a synonym of
a. leave b. go near c. attitude d. proposal
- Film viewers are still by 3-D technology.
a. immerses b. immersed c. immersive d. immersion
- You can email me moasserseries@moasser.com .
a. at b. of c. for d. onto
- It is necessary to sterilise equipment.
a. addicted b. complicated c. surgical d. artificial
- I'm bored with this programme. When?
a. is it finish b. does it finish
c. is it going to finish d. it finishes
- When the book forum, I will have published my second novel.
a. opened b. had opened
c. has opened d. will open
- I'll phone you the minute I your work .
a. have finished b. will finish c. had finished d. finished
- Phone me once you the message.
a. have read b. reads c. was reading d. had read
- By this time tomorrow, my father to England already.
a. will fly b. would fly c. will have flown d. flies

14. By 2050, we hope that oil by clean energy.
 a. will have replaced b. will have been replaced
 c. will replace d. has been replaced
15. Once I home after work, I am going to take a shower.
 a. arrived b. arrive
 c. have been arrived d. had taken
16. At ten o'clock tomorrow, I on a train to Aswan!
 a. travel b. will have travelled
 c. going to travel d. will be travelling

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The application of spreading theories of economics has so far failed to lift developing countries out of the cycle of poverty that has effects on the majority of their inhabitants. Worldwide, there are still an estimated 1.3 billion people earning a dollar or less a day and living in extreme poverty. Decades of huge loans by banks from affluent nations-at interest rates that cripple developing economies-do not appear to be providing a solution to poverty. Professor Muhammad Yunus' Grameen Bank, however, is taking a different approach to the problem.

In 1976, the Bangladeshi economics professor started a microcredit programme with a loan of just 62 cents (U.S.) each to a group of 42 workers. Instead of loaning large amounts of money to well-off debtors, the bank he started made extremely small loans to poor Bangladeshis who were considered a bad risk by the traditional banking system.

He astounded his critics by proving that the poor were more likely to repay their debts than the wealthy. Virtually none of the thousands of women who have been financially assisted by the bank for over 20 years have defaulted on their payments. Yet all are expected to pay interest and stick to the rules of contract. These borrowings have enabled Bangladeshi women to set up numerous small-scale projects which directly benefit their families and the communities where they live. The success of the experiment has brought about a revolution in the anti-poverty programmes.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The best title for the passage is
 a. A common problem with a new solution
 b. A new problem with common solution
 c. A new way of begging money
 d. The developing countries' loans
18. We can infer from the passage that the word "astounded" means
 a. astonished b. provided
 c. admitted d. improved
19. The last lines of the passage represents
 a. the success of the experience b. the failure of the experience
 c. the increase of poverty d. the decrease of interests
20. At the beginning of his experiment, Professor Muhammad Yunus was
 a. supported b. criticised c. suspected d. appreciated
21. Professor Muhammad Yunus' Grameen Bank way to treat poverty was
 a. unique b. common c. unreliable d. dishonest
22. Do theories of economics manage to overcome the poverty in the world? Why?
 a. Yes, as many people live happily and comfortably.
 b. Yes, as there are few developing countries.
 c. No, as there are loans need to be paid by many developed countries.
 d. No, because most developing countries' people suffer from poverty.
23. What did Muhammed Yunus do to face poverty in Bangladesh?
 a. He borrowed from the rich
 b. He lent the young people
 c. He lent the poor people
 d. He borrowed from Bangladeshi Banks
24. What do you think of Mohammed Yunus?
 a. Genius b. Greedy
 c. Selfish d. Helpless

28. The writer thinks that
- using names makes matters easier
 - using names makes confusion
 - using numbers is better than using names
 - using letters is better than using names
29. After reading the passage, what does a meteorologist study?
- The science of the atmosphere and its phenomena.
 - The science of the volcanoes and the earthquakes.
 - The oceans and the marine life.
 - The living things and their lives' cycle.
30. According to the passage, the verb "detect" means
- invent
 - discover
 - float
 - sink
31. Giving the cyclones names helps to
- call for them easily at any time
 - send information about them to the WOM
 - make them known for people to remember them
 - go around like a wheel turning to the left
32. The main idea of the last paragraph is
- Cyclones have different names with the same qualities
 - Hurricanes and typhoons are very different kinds of storms
 - North America doesn't have hurricanes or typhoons
 - Asian typhoons have animals and plants names

❖ Choose the correct Arabic translation:

33. When you buy food, buy it from a reliable restaurant, where you know that you can count on your food being tasty and healthy.

أ. عندما اشترت طعام، اشترته من مطعم موثوق به، حيثما تستطيع أن تثق أن طعامك سيكون حسن الطعم وصحي.

ب. وقتما تشتري طعام، فلتشتره من مطعم معروف، لكي تستطيع أن تتأكد أن طعامك سيكون حسن المظهر وصحي.

ج. عندما تشتري طعام، فلتشتره من مطعم موثوق به، حيثما تستطيع أن تثق أن طعامك سيكون لذيذ وصحي.

د. كلما تشتري طعام، اشترته من مطعم ذو سمعة طيبة، حيثما تستطيع أن تثق أن طعامك سيكون متميز وصحي.

34. Most people agree that there is no place like home. It is more than just a place to stay in. It is part of one's life and personality.

أ. يتفق معظم الناس أنه يوجد مكان مثل الوطن. فهو أكثر من كونه مكان لتسكن فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الواحد وشخصيته.

ب. يتفق معظم الناس أنه لا يوجد مكان مثل المنزل. فهو أكثر من كونه مكان للإقامة فيه. فهو جزء من الفرد وشخصيته.

ج. دائمًا يتفق معظم الناس أن يوجد مكان مثل الوطن. فهو أكبر من كونه مكان لتجلب فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الواحد وشخصيته.

د. لقد اتفق معظم الناس دائمًا أن يوجد مكان مثل المنزل. فهو أكثر من كونه مكان لتجلب فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الفرد وشخصيته.

Choose the correct English translation:

٣٥. عقدت الكثير من المؤتمرات الدولية لمحاولة إيجاد حل لمشكلة الاحتباس الحراري ، ولكننا حتى الآن لم نجد الحل الأمثل.

- Many international conferences have been held to find a solution for the global problem, but we couldn't find the most perfect solution.
- Many international conferences had held to find a solution for the global warming problem, but we cannot find the least perfect solution.
- Many international conferences have held to find a solution for the global warming problem, but we cannot be found the most perfect solution.
- Many international conferences have been held to find a solution for the global warming problem, but we haven't found the most perfect solution.

٣٦. مشكلة نقص الماء أحد أهم المشكلات التي تواجه بلدنا في الفترة الحالية وتحاول الحكومة حلها.

- Water lack is one of the most important problems that forces our country these days and the government had tried to solve it.
- Water shortage is one of the most important problems that faces our continent nowadays and the government will try to solve it.
- Water lack is one of the most important problems that supports our country those day and the government tried to solve it.
- Water shortage is one of the most important problems that faces our country nowadays and the government tries to solve it.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

37. Which of the following sentences has the correct punctuation?

- Opening the door quietly the two officers surprised a thief as he was putting the money in his bag.
- Opening the door quietly, the two officers surprised a thief as he was putting; the money in his bag.
- Opening the door quietly; the two officers surprised a thief as he was putting the money in his bag.
- Opening the door quietly, the two officers surprised a thief as he was putting the money in his bag.

38. Which of the following sentences has the correct punctuation?

- If you don't understand, ask your teacher for help.
- Ask your teacher for help. If you don't understand.
- Ask your teacher for help; if you don't understand.
- If you don't understand; please ask your teacher for help.

39. A/An essay is some sort of a story.

- descriptive
- expository
- narrative
- persuasive

40. Which of the following makes you write a business letter ?

- To make sure a friend attends a wedding.
- To tell a joke.
- To express concern for a product.
- To ask about a cousin's health.

1. Finish the following dialogue :

Rodayna is being interviewed for the job of an accountant.
interviewer : (1)

Rodayna : Thank you, sir.

interviewer : (2)

Rodayna : I have an MSc in accountancy.

interviewer : (3)

Rodayna : I can speak English and French well.

interviewer : (4)

Rodayna : I'm a member of the club's basketball team.

interviewer : Do you have any work experience?

Rodayna : Yes, I worked for an advertising company for three years.

2. Write a paragraph of one hundred and twenty (120) words on :
"Technology and its importance in education"

3. Translate into Arabic :

To be good citizens in the future, children need to grow in an atmosphere of love and family warmth.

4. Translate into English :

يحتاج الطالب الناجح بالصبر والغيرة حتى يصل لهدفه المنشود.

5. Choose the correct answer : (Islamic selections)

- Many Meccans Prophet Muhammed (PBUH).
a. obeyed b. accepted c. believed d. contradicted

1. (a) (b) (c) (d)
2. (a) (b) (c) (d)
3. (a) (b) (c) (d)
4. (a) (b) (c) (d)
5. (a) (b) (c) (d)
6. (a) (b) (c) (d)
7. (a) (b) (c) (d)
8. (a) (b) (c) (d)
9. (a) (b) (c) (d)
10. (a) (b) (c) (d)
11. (a) (b) (c) (d)
12. (a) (b) (c) (d)
13. (a) (b) (c) (d)
14. (a) (b) (c) (d)
15. (a) (b) (c) (d)
16. (a) (b) (c) (d)
17. (a) (b) (c) (d)
18. (a) (b) (c) (d)
19. (a) (b) (c) (d)
20. (a) (b) (c) (d)
21. (a) (b) (c) (d)
22. (a) (b) (c) (d)
23. (a) (b) (c) (d)
24. (a) (b) (c) (d)
25. (a) (b) (c) (d)
26. (a) (b) (c) (d)
27. (a) (b) (c) (d)
28. (a) (b) (c) (d)
29. (a) (b) (c) (d)
30. (a) (b) (c) (d)
31. (a) (b) (c) (d)
32. (a) (b) (c) (d)
33. (a) (b) (c) (d)
34. (a) (b) (c) (d)
35. (a) (b) (c) (d)
36. (a) (b) (c) (d)
37. (a) (b) (c) (d)
38. (a) (b) (c) (d)
39. (a) (b) (c) (d)
40. (a) (b) (c) (d)

Part 1

Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives

advance(d) (v)	يتقدم - يتقدم	handcuffs(n)	يد (كلاصات)
apprenticeship(n)	تدريب مهني	hanging over(adj)	اليد - متدلي
argument(n)	جدال - نقاش (حاد)	immerse(d) (v)	يغمر - يغمغ - يغمغ
astronaut(n)	رائد فضاء	impressive(adj)	مثير - مذهب - يدهش
astronomer(n)	عالم فلك	inaccurate(adj)	خاطئ/ غير دقيق
award(ed) (n/v)	جائزة - منحة - يمنح	including(preposition)	بما في ذلك
	جائزة	inspiring(adj)	مهم - يستلهم
balanced(n)	متوازن - عادل - موضوعي	involve(d) (v)	يتضمن/ يشتمل
ban(ned) (v/n)	يحظر - يحظر	knowledge(n)	علي - يستلهم
bias(ed) (v)	يتحيز/ يتحيز - يميل	misleading(adj/n)	المعرفة
bias(n)	تحيز/ تحيز - تحيز	mission(n)	مطل - التحليل
bride(n)	العروس	objective(adj/n)	ثيمة
chemist(n)	عالم كيمياء/ صيدلاني	physicist(n)	موضوعي - هدف
competition(n)	مسابقة		فيزيائي/ خبير في
computing(n)	علم الحاسبات		الرياضة
confusing(adj)	مُعْزِل - مُربِك		رأي/ وجهة نظر
contribution(n)	مساهمة/ مشاركة		أخبار/ تحصيل / ظلم
convict(n)	مُسْجُون - مُذْنِب		ذمية
cost - cost (v/n)	يتكلف - التكلفة		
CV = Curriculum Vitae(n)	السيرة الذاتية		
detect(ed) (v)	يتحسس - يكتشف		
development(n)	تطوير		
difficulties(n)	صعوبات		
digital theatre(n)	السميح الرقمي		
duties(n)	الواجبات		
electric-powered(adj)	يعمل بالكهرباء		
ESA Robotics(n)	علم الروبوتات الوسيطة		
placemetry(adj)	علم الروبوتات الوسيطة		
	كتاب / مخطط		

2 Extra Vocabulary

actress(n)	ممثلة	musical(n)	عرض موسيقي
basis(n)	أساس	overcome – overcame – overcome(v)	يتغلب على
career(n)	حياة مهنية	present(ed) (v)	يقدم بعرض تقديمي
climate(n)	المناخ	presentation(n)	عرض تقديمي
communication(n)	اتصال	purpose(n)	غرض
create(d) (v)	يخترع	racing(adj)	سياق
definitely(adj)	بالأكيد	reality(n)	حقيقة/ واقع
degree(n)	شهادة جامعية	recommend(ed) (v)	يُوصي / يُؤيّد
electronics(n)	علم الإلكترونيات	review(n)	عرض نقدي
expert(n)	خبير	show(n)	عرض
fascinating(adj)	رائع/ جذاب	software(n)	برنامج تشغيل
field(n)	مجال	target(n)	هدف
hopefully(adj)	من المتفطر	theatre(n)	مسرح
invented (v)	يخترع	wireless(adj)	لاسلكي
inventor(n)	مُخترع	wooden(adj)	خشبي
key skills(n)	المهارات الأساسية		

Part II

Language Study

1 Verbal Collocations

ملاحظات لفظية

avoid	prejudice	overcome	the difficulties and prejudice
	يتجنب التحيز		يتغلب على الصعوبات والتحيز (التحيز)
develop	key skill	prepare	a presentation
	يطوّر المهارات الأساسية		
focus	attention on	present	a view
	يركز الاهتمام على		
get	lost	present	an idea
	يفقد، يفقد الطريق		
have	... in common	share	knowledge with
	لديهم شيء مشترك		
invent	a technology	take	place
	يخترع تكنولوجيا		
make	important contribution	tell	the story of
	يقدم إسهامات هامة		
make	predictions	win	the chance
	يتنبأ		

تعبيرات و مصطلحات

2 Expressions & Idioms

a news story at the top of be made up of come to life degree in Computing and Electronics dream of electric-powered racing cars famous for feel about get messages across to hear from in two different fields	موضوع إخباري في ذروة/ في أوج يمكن من يمشأ/ يعود للحياة شهادة جامعية في الحاسبات والإلكترونيات يعلم به سيارات سباق تعمل بالكهرباء مشهور به يشعر بالنسبة ل يعلم ودرس مستغادة ل يتلقى أخبار من في مجالين مختلفين	immerse ... in inspiring women key facts on a journey on your own space travel take off target audience travel into space wireless communication wooden puppets work best for write down	مع ... مع بلهجات نسأ، بلهجات هائل أساسية في رحلة بجزءك الحفر للفننا نطلع الطائرة - يخلع ملابس الجمهور المستهدف ينظر إلى الفننا الإبحال الأساطير جرائن خفية تناسب علي أكمل وجه مع يذلل/ يسجل
--	---	--	---

3 Enrich your knowledge

Signal-hopping = Frequency-hopping

It is a method of transmitting radio signals by rapidly changing the carrier frequency among many distinct frequencies occupying a large spectral band.

إنها طريقة لإرسال ترددات الراديو عن طريق التغيير السريع لتردد الموجة الحاملة بين العديد من الترددات المتميزة التي تشغل نطاقًا طيفيًا كبيرًا.

STEM

Science, technology, engineering, and mathematics

Swarm Robotics

In swarm robotics multiple robots collectively solve problems by forming advantageous structures and behaviors similar to the ones observed in natural systems, such as swarms of bees, birds, or fish.

تعمل الروبوتات متعددة السرير على حل المشكلات بشكل يشكّل جماعي من خلال تكون هياكل وسلوكيات طبيعية مشابهة لتلك التي لوحظت في النظم الطبيعية، مثل أسراب النحل أو الطيور أو الأسماك.

ESB Robotics

ESB = Enterprise Service Bus (ESB) is a middleware tool used to distribute An enterprise service bus (ESB) is a middleware tool used to distribute work among connected components of an application. It offers applications the ability to connect to the bus and subscribe to messages based on simple structural and business policy rules.

الوسيط الإلكتروني البسيط (ESB) هو أداة وسيطة تُستخدم لتوزيع العمل بين المكونات المتضمنة بالنظام، وهو يوفر للتطبيقات القدرة على الاتصال بالوسيط الناقل وتبادل الرسائل بناءً على قواعد هيكلية وسياسة عمل بسيطة.

Reading & Listening Texts

1 Reading Text

DIGITHEATRE⁽¹⁾ REVIEW⁽²⁾

56 page (36)

Scientists from history come to life in a new online show⁽³⁾ involving⁽⁴⁾ wooden⁽⁵⁾ puppets, ⁽⁶⁾ music and theatre⁽⁷⁾ called Jina and the Stem Sisters.



It's a musical⁽⁸⁾ with great songs and a wonderful message. The show tells the story of some of the most inspiring⁽⁹⁾ women in science and mathematics.

In the story, Jina is on a journey and gets lost⁽¹⁰⁾ in a forest. There she meets women who have made important contribution⁽¹¹⁾ to the history of STEM.

The women include Hedy Lamarr, who was both an actress⁽¹²⁾ and inventor⁽¹³⁾. Whilst⁽¹⁴⁾ at the top of her film career⁽¹⁵⁾, she invented⁽¹⁶⁾ a technology called signal-hopping⁽¹⁷⁾, which later was the basis⁽¹⁸⁾ for all modern wireless⁽¹⁹⁾ communication⁽²⁰⁾, including⁽²¹⁾ that found in mobile phones.

Check Vocabulary

- المسرح الرقمي
- عرض تقني
- عرض
- يقضمن/يشتمل علي
- خشبي
- قيمة
- مسرح
- عرض موسيقي
- ملهم
- يضل الطريق
- مساهمة/مشاركة
- ممتلئة
- مُفقد
- بينما
- حياة مهنية
- يقترع
- التوقع الترددي
- أساسي
- لاستغلي
- اتصال
- بمافي ذلك

Other women that Jina meets are Marie Curie, who was a physicist⁽²²⁾ and chemist⁽²³⁾ famous for her research and experiments⁽²⁴⁾ on radioactivity⁽²⁵⁾, and Mae Jemison, an American engineer and astronaut⁽²⁶⁾. Marie Curie was the first woman to win the Nobel Prize award in two different fields⁽²⁷⁾. Mae Jemison was the first black woman to travel into space.

The scientists share their knowledge⁽²⁸⁾ with Jina and help her to develop key skills⁽²⁹⁾ to become a future STEM expert⁽³⁰⁾ herself. On her journey, Jina also meets computer scientist Ada Lovelace and astronomer⁽³¹⁾ who show Jina the stars.

The show has been created⁽³²⁾ for schools. It will hopefully⁽³³⁾ encourage young people to find out more about these inspiring women in science and how they overcome⁽³⁴⁾ the difficulties⁽³⁵⁾ and prejudice⁽³⁶⁾ in their way.

"The puppets were beautiful and completely immerse⁽³⁷⁾ me in the characters", Mona, aged 12. "I definitely⁽³⁸⁾ recommend⁽³⁹⁾ it."

(22) علم فيزياء

(23) كيميائية

(24) تجربة معملية

(25) نشاط الإشعاعي

(26) رائدة فضاء

(27) مجال

(28) المعرفة

(29) خبير

(30) عالم فضاء

(31) اخترع

(32) من المفاهيم

(33) يفتخر على

(34) صعوبات

(35) التحدي

(36) فهم - يسمع

(37) يتحدى

(38) يبتدئ

(39) يوصي

CV

SB page (36)

Check

Vocabulary

(1) شهادة جامعية

(2) علوم الحاسوب

(3) علم الإلكترونيات

(4) علم روبوتات السرب

(5) نموذج خبير

(6) علم الروبوتات الوسيطة

(7) الواجهات

(8) برنامج تشغيل



Name : Sara Ahmed

Education : Degree⁽¹⁾ in Computing⁽²⁾ and Electronics⁽³⁾Engineering PhD in Swarm Robotics⁽⁴⁾Job : Senior developer⁽⁵⁾, ESB Robotics⁽⁶⁾Duties⁽⁷⁾ : Developing software⁽⁸⁾ for robots

Biggest achievement : developed a new robot which will teach young people about programming

CV

SB page (36)

Check

Vocabulary

(1) سباق

(2) متسابقو سيارات

(3) تطوير

(4) وصل بالأكبرياء



Name: Amani Safwat
Education: Degree in mechanical engineering
Job : Car engineer, Mahindra Racing⁽¹⁾
Duties: Prepares cars for race days

Biggest achievement: made a contribution⁽²⁾ to the development⁽³⁾ of electric-powered⁽⁴⁾ racing cars

Competition time

SB page (39)

Do you dream of becoming a journalist? If so, enter our competition to win the chance to see your story in our magazine. If you've got a fascinating story to report from your local area, we want to hear from you.

Here are some top tips from our Editor to get you started. The winning story will be published in In the News, find out more: www.IntheNewsnews.com

Top tips for writing a news story

- Present a view which is objective.
- Include the key facts, and make sure you check them.
- Try to avoid any prejudice.
- Don't include information that is inaccurate (not correct).
- Be careful not to include confusing figures.
- Interview people involved to get different opinions.

2 Listening Texts

Presenter : Hi and welcome to the Tech Show.

(SB page 37)

Today, we'll be talking about space travel⁽¹⁾.

If you dream of⁽²⁾ going into space, the moment seems to be getting closer⁽³⁾.



Check

Vocabulary

(1) السفر للفضاء

(2) يحلم بـ

(3) يقترب/يأخذ

Presenter : And how do you think space travel in general⁽³²⁾ will have advanced⁽³³⁾ by the end of the decade?

Tony Gates: Let's hope we'll have made our first human journey to Mars.

Presenter : That's an exciting thought⁽³⁴⁾!

(32) برمجة عامة

(33) يتقدم / يتطور

(34) فكرة

Interviewer: How did you get into⁽¹⁾ working with robots?

Have you always wanted to be an engineer?



(58 page 38)

Check Vocabulary

(1) يخرط في

(2) يجزئ

(3) في الواقع

(4) هندسة الحاسبات والإلكترونيات

(5) يستمر في

(6) مستقل

(7) يؤدي مهمة

(8) وقت فراغ

(9) ترويز

(10) يجارس

(11) مبدع

(12) علم الروبوتات

(13) يلهي

(14) نشاط / صناعة

Interviewer: And you studied computer science at university?

Sara : Yes, actually⁽³⁾ it was computing and electronics engineering⁽⁴⁾. Then I carried on⁽⁵⁾ studying and did a PhD in Swarm Robotics.

Interviewer: What's that?

Sara : It's using groups of autonomous⁽⁶⁾ robots to work together to perform a task⁽⁷⁾.

Interviewer: And what do you do in your spare time⁽⁸⁾?

Sara : I love music; it's very similar to engineering in some ways. Like computer coding⁽⁹⁾, it's a type of language used to communicate, and you need to work hard and practise⁽¹⁰⁾ a lot before you can be creative⁽¹¹⁾ with it.

Interviewer: And what advice would you give to other girls who want to go into robotics⁽¹²⁾?

Sara : Go for it! I want to inspire⁽¹³⁾ more women to go into the industry⁽¹⁴⁾ because robots are fun, and they'll enjoy it!

Revision on Units 1, 2 & 3

قسط
مراجعة
الوحدات الأولى
الثاني والثالث

Choose the correct words to complete the sentences :

- We think that the person who won the quiz is a He looked up the answers online, which was not allowed.
a. chat b. bias c. cheat d. spin
- You must be of yourself; you have made a silly mistake!
a. proud b. pleased c. afraid d. ashamed
- The of some planets in our solar system is rocky.
a. impact b. face c. sent d. surface
- It is a to think that women always do housework.
a. prejudice b. stereotype c. type d. incident
- What is the best for a headache ?
a. cause b. treatment c. illness d. surgeon
- People who leak books and join in are punished for their crime.
a. piracy b. pirates c. cheat d. chat
- While I dinner, someone knocked on the door.
a. had b. was having c. did have d. am having
- Doctors keep the health of all their patients, so they know what illnesses they have had in the past.
a. paper b. records c. placements d. figures
- After he had examined the athlete, the doctor him permission to join the competition.
a. gave b. given c. had given d. gives
- The train before we arrived at the station.
a. had left b. has left c. was leaving d. will leave
- Mr Ali at a shop for ten years before he got a job at the bank.
a. has worked b. is working c. will have been working d. had been working
- The bridge over the valley is built on a scale than the one over the river.
a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. the biggest
- When the bus plunged off the bridge, it was the experience of my life. We were lucky that nobody was hurt.
a. most shocking b. shocking c. more shocking d. less shocking

Revision 1 on units 1, 2 & 3

- For the next year, Ahmed on an engineering project in Alexandria.
a. was working b. will have worked c. will be working d. had been working
- By 2050, I think that astronomers new planets outside our solar system.
a. will have found b. find c. have found d. are finding
- We won't be able to live on Mars until we enough water there.
a. will find b. have found c. will be finding d. found
- I felt really sick the party, so I went home.
a. while b. when c. during d. on
- She has made a great contribution to social work in her neighbourhood. Contribution here is a synonym for
a. deprivation b. donation c. estimation d. relation
- My brother was finally that he had been selected for the new position as Sales Manager.
a. asked b. said c. informed d. ordered
- You should your foot in ice-cold water to reduce the swelling.
a. appear b. float c. inverse d. immerse
- This is the most difficult situation I
a. had ever been faced b. have ever faced c. had ever faced d. have ever been faced
- Which of the following is punctuated correctly ?
a. The teacher said, "You must follow school rules, Hatem."
b. The teacher said, "You must follow school rules, Hatem".
c. The teacher said "You must follow school rules, Hatem."
d. The teacher said, "You must follow school rules, Hatem."
- Pollution has a serious effect on our health. However, a lot of people are still ignorant of the importance of keeping the environment clean. This shows in ideas.
a. addition b. contrast c. possibility d. reason
- In a hook sentence, you need to
a. sum up your essay by briefly revisiting the information covered
b. grab the reader's attention to read the essay
c. support, explain, illustrate, or provide evidence for the idea expressed in the topic sentence
d. analyze two points of view by either comparing them, contrasting them, or both

Read the text and answer the questions :

Few women had become pharaohs of ancient Egypt before Hatshepsut, who is one of the most important females in Egyptian history.

She was pharaoh from around 1479 BCE to 1458 BCE, making her one of the longest ruling females. During her 21 years of rule, she improved trade with other countries, which had stopped for many years during a war.



Pictures from the walls of ancient temples show Hatshepsut's ships trading with a country called Punt (now part of East Africa), from where her ships brought back gold, valuable stones and animal skins. They also brought back trees, which were planted when they returned to Egypt. This is believed to be the first time foreign trees were grown in a different country. The journey to Punt was probably the first of other trading trips, which included visits to Byblos (now in Lebanon) and Sinai.

Money from this trade helped Hatshepsut to build many amazing buildings and bring many years of peace and wealth to Egypt.

The many buildings that Hatshepsut had built were usually larger and more impressive than buildings of the past. Her most famous buildings include the temples at Beni Hasan and at Deir el-Bahri, which some people call one of the wonders of the ancient world. But she also helped to repair other older monuments that had been damaged and started a period of artistic creativity.

Hatshepsut had many statues made of herself and you can find them in many of the world's greatest museums today. Many of the statues that were made at this time were in the Thutmoside style (named after her father Thutmose I), which people today consider as the typical ancient Egyptian style.

The mummy of Hatshepsut and lots of information about her can be found at the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

25. What was Hatshepsut's main contribution to ancient Egypt ?
- a. She had statues built.
 - b. She brought peace and wealth to the country.
 - c. She helped women become pharaohs.
 - d. She was a female stereotype.

248

26. Which of the following do we not learn about Punt from the text ?

- a. Many trees grew there.
- b. People hunted animals there.
- c. It was a rich country.
- d. It had many wars with ancient Egypt.

27. How could Hatshepsut afford to build so much during her rule ?

- a. She improved trade with other countries.
- b. She won wars with other countries.
- c. She planted trees from other countries.
- d. She had many statues made of herself.

28. What do we know about the statues that were made of Hatshepsut ?

- a. They are unusual.
- b. They are in a style that people expect.
- c. They are more impressive than other statues.
- d. They are in a very unpopular style.

29. Why do you think many of ancient Egypt's older monuments had been damaged before Hatshepsut's rule?

30. In what ways is Hatshepsut a good role model for women today ?

31. According to the article, gold, valuable stones and animals were

- a. finally kept in Punt
- b. sold to African countries
- c. brought back to Egypt
- d. restored before the reign of Hatshepsut

32. People consider Deir el-Behri one of the wonders of the ancient world. Wonders is similar in meaning to

- a. obstacles
- b. myths
- c. marvels
- d. superstitions

33. Which of the following is incorrect according to the passage ?

- a. Not many women had become pharaohs of ancient Egypt before Hatshepsut
- b. Hatshepsut improved trade with other countries, built many amazing buildings and made wars with others during her reign.
- c. We can see the statues made for Hatshepsut in many of the world's greatest museums today.
- d. Thutmose III was Hatshepsut's stepson.

249

34. We can see the mummy of Hatshepsut
 a. at the National Museum of Egyptian Civilisation
 b. in East of Africa
 c. in the temples at Beni Hassan
 d. at a museum in Punt
35. Trade with other countries during Hatshepsut's rule.
 a. flourished
 b. declined
 c. stopped
 d. was the same as
36. According to the article, which of the following gives incorrect information?
 a. During the reign of Hatshepsut, foreign trees were planted in Egypt.
 b. Hatshepsut had older monuments repaired.
 c. Hatshepsut ruled Egypt for more than twenty years.
 d. Today, people consider the Thutmoside style of making statues as a typical modern one.
37. Hatshepsut during her reign.
 a. had a lot of amazing buildings built
 b. achieved peace
 c. brought wealth to the country
 d. all of the above
38. Innovation is endless. The more man seeks progress and welfare, the more he invents things that make life easier. However, do you think all inventions don't have negative aspects?
39. Choose the correct Arabic translation:
38. Innovation is endless. The more man seeks progress and welfare, the more he invents things that make life easier. However, do you think all inventions don't have negative aspects?
- الابتكار لا نهاية له، فكلما ابتكر الإنسان أشياء، تجعل الحياة أسهل، كلما سعى إلى التقدم والتطور، كلما انتهى إلى اختراعات لا تملك جوانب إيجابية؟
 مع ذلك، هل تعتقد أن كل الاختراعات، ليس لها جوانب إيجابية؟
 الابتكار لا نهاية له، فكلما سعى الإنسان إلى التقدم والرقي، كلما انتهى إلى اختراعات لا تملك جوانب سلبية؟
 مع ذلك، هل تعتقد أن كل الاختراعات ليس لها جوانب سلبية؟
 الابتكار لا نهاية له، فكلما سعى الإنسان إلى التقدم والرقي، كلما انتهى إلى اختراعات ليس لها جوانب سلبية؟
 مع ذلك، هل تعتقد أن الاختراعات ليس لها جوانب إيجابية؟

39. Women have played a pivotal role in the renaissance of ancient and modern societies. Through this role, they demonstrated their ability to achieve positive change in those societies.
- لقد أظهرت المرأة دوراً محورياً في نهضة المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، وأظهرت من خلال هذا الدور قدرتها على تحقيق التغيير الإيجابي في بنا، المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، وأظهرت من خلال هذا الدور قدرتها على تحقيق التحسين الإيجابي في تلك المجتمعات.
- لقد لعبت المرأة دوراً محورياً في نهضة المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، وأظهرت من خلال هذا الدور قدرتها على تحقيق التفسير الإيجابي في نخبة المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، وأظهرت من خلال هذا الدور قدرتها على تحقيق التفسير الإيجابي في تلك المجتمعات.
4. أعتقد أننا سنتوقف عن طاعة الصحف في العقود القليلة القادمة. ستقرأ الأخبار عبر الإنترنت، لذلك سنحتاج إلى معرفة المزيد من المواقع الإلكترونية الجديدة التي يمكن أن تعطيتنا وجهة نظر متوازنة.
- a. In the next few decades, I think that we will have continued printing newspapers. We won't be reading the news offline, so we will need to know about new books that can give us a balanced point of view.
- b. In the next few decades, I think that we will have stopped painting newspapers. We will be borrowing the news online, so we will need to know about new websites that can give us a fixed point of view.
- c. In the next few years, I think that we will have stopped printing books. We will be reading the news online, so we will need to know about new websites that can give us a true point of view.
- d. In the next few decades, I think that we will have stopped printing newspapers. We will be reading the news online, so we will need to know about new websites that can give us a balanced point of view.
٤١. يهدف منتدى الشباب العالمي للشباب بعض سنواتياً إلى الرعاية الكاملة للشباب وتحديد وحل كل المشاكل التي تواجههم الاستفادة بشكل فعال من مهاراتهم وإمكانياتهم في تطوير المجتمع وتحقيق التنمية الشاملة.
- a. The International men Forum, which is held in Egypt annually, aims to fully care for young people and identity and solve all the problems they face to effectively benefit from their scales and capabilities in developing society and achieving comprehensive improvement.

- b. The International Youth Forum, which is held in Egypt annually, aims to fully care for young people and identify and solve all the problems they face to effectively benefit from their skills and capabilities in developing society and achieving comprehensive development.
- c. The International Youth Forum, which is holding in Egypt annually, seems to fully care for young people and simplify and solve all the problems they face to effectively benefit from their skills and capabilities in improving society and achieving comprehensive development.
- d. The local Youth Forum, which is help in Egypt annually, aims to fully look for young people and identify and postpone all the problems they face to effectively benefit from their skills and capabilities in developing society and achieving comprehensive development.

٤٢. تقيم الدولة دائماً بحماية حقوق الملكية الفكرية للمواطنين والتأثيرين. لذا تفرض عقوبة صارمة على القرصنة الفكرية وتسريب الكتب حفاظاً على حقوق المستجيبين ودور النشر.

- a. The estate is always takes care of protect the intellectual property rights of authors and publishers, so it imposes a strict penalty on intellectual piracy and book leak in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing houses.
- b. The state is always interested in protecting the intellectual property rites of authors and publishers, so it propose a strict penalty on intellectual privacy and book diversion in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing houses.
- c. The state is always interested in protecting the intellectual property rights of authors and publishers, so it imposes a strict penalty on intellectual piracy and book leak in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing houses.
- d. The estate is always interested in protecting the intellectual liberty rights of authors and publishers, so it imposes a strict penalty on intellectual piracy and book lake in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing houses.

43. Write an essay of about 200 words on one of these topics :

1. Write about the advantages and disadvantages to international sports competitions such as the FIFA World Cup and the Olympic Games.
2. Write a report about something that has been in the news recently. Write it for a tabloid newspaper.

Vocabulary

Part I

• اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المفردات التفاعلية.
• المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

burnout(n)	الإرهاق / نفاذ الطاقة	promote(d) (v)	يُزجج ل - يُرقي
cope(d) (v)	يساير / يتصدى / يتدلى	promote(d) (v)	يُزجج / يدعم / يُتَوَدَّر
exhausted(adj)	مُنهك / مُجهد / مُرهق	scold(ed) (v)	يُذم / يُؤخ
frown(ed) (v)	يعبس / يقطب جبهة	self-care(n)	العناية الذاتية
improve(d) (v)	يتحسن / يحسن	stress(n)	إجهاد / الضغط
manage(d) (v)	يدير - يتجعب / يتحكم	stressed(adj)	مُتعب / مُجهد
management(n)	إدارة / تحكم	stressful(adj)	مُرهق / شاق / ضاغط
mental health(n)	الصحة النفسية / العقلية	suppose(d) (v)	يتصور / يتصور
mental(adj)	ذهني / عقلي	time management(n)	إدارة الوقت
pout(ed) (v)	يستاء - يجهم	well-being(n)	الرفاهية / السلامة / السعادة

2 Important Vocabulary

advance(d) (n/v)	تقدم - يتقدم	message(n)	رسالة
affairs(n)	شئون - أحداث	normally(adv)	شكل طبيعي
alarm(ed) (n/v)	منبه - يُزعج	pain(n)	ألم
alter(ed) (v)	يغير - يتغير	paint(ed) (v)	يُدهن / يدهن
avoid(ed) (v)	يتجنب / يتحاشى	perfectly(adv)	شكل مثالي
back(n)	الخلف	please(d) (v)	يُهدئ / يهدئ
basis(n)	أساس	poor(adj)	مزم - فقير
behaviour(n)	سلوك / تصرف	pour(ed) (v)	يُسكب / يتدفق - يصب
benefit(ed) (v/n)	يستفيد - فائدة	prepare(d) (v)	يُعد / يُعد
brainstorm(ed) (v)	يستبر الفكر	pressure(n)	ضغط
brave(adj)	شجاع / مقام	priority(n)	أولوية

category(n)

coding(n)

clear off (phr. v)

concentrate(d) (v)

consider(ed) (v)

counsellor(n)

creation(n)

divide(d) (v)

dress(ed) (v)

endorphins(n)

experience(d) (v)

experiment(ed)(n/v)

frustrated(adj)

exhausted(adj)

issue(n)

تصنيف

الترميز

ينقشع / يزول

يركز

يتفكر - يأخذ في الاعتبار

مُستشار / مُرشد

الخلق / الكون

يُقسَم

يرتدي / يلبس

الإندورفين

يتعرض ل / يعاني

تجربة - يجري تجربة

مُحبط

مُرهق

شان - قضية

react(ed) (v)

reaction(n)

reduce(d) (v)

regret(ed) (n/v)

regular(adj)

relax(ed) (v)

responsibility(n)

robotics(n)

snack(n)

stretch(ed) (v)

surprise(d) (v)

tips(n)

unhealthily(adv)

urgent(adj)

wise(adj)

يستجيب / يتجاوب مع

رد فعل - استجابة

يُقلل

الندم - يندم على

مُنظم

يسترخي

المسؤولية

علم الروبوتات

وجبة خفيفة

يُمدد - يمتد

يفاجئ - يدهش

نصائح

بطريقة غير صحيحة

عاجل / مُلح

حكيم / ذكي

3 Definitions تعريفات

burnout(n)	a situation where you can't do anything because you're so tired and stressed
cope(d) (v)	to deal successfully with difficult situations
exhausted(adj)	describing the feeling of being very tired
frown(ed) (v)	to make an angry, unhappy, or confused expression, moving your eyebrows together
improve(d) (v)	to get better
mental health(n)	how we handle stress, relate to others and make choices
pout(ed) (v)	to push out your lower lip because you are annoyed or unhappy
promote(d) (v)	to tell people about something

promote(d) (v) يُعزِّز / يدعم / يُطوِّر	support and encourage the development of something
scold(ed) (v) يُعَنِّف / يُؤَنِّخ	to angrily criticize someone, especially a child, about something they have done
self-care(n) العناية الذاتية	taking care رعاية of your body and how you feel
stress(n) الإجهاد / الضغط	a feeling of being very worried and scared خائف
suppose(d) (v) يفرض	to think that something is probably true, based on what you know استناداً إلى
time management(n) إدارة الوقت	organising when you do things and for how long
well-being(n) العافية / السلامة / السعادة	- how good you feel in your body and how happy you are - the state of being comfortable, healthy and happy

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- To their goods, producers advertise them online, on TV and even in streets.
a. frown b. pour c. alter d. promote
- When some people are, they eat too much.
a. exhausting b. stressful c. stressed d. frustrating
- Long work hours with no time for refreshment will surely lead to
a. burnout b. management c. message d. category
- Everybody must put as a priority in their lives. A sound mind is in a sound body.
a. stress b. self-care c. creation d. regret
- You need to improve your skills to with the changes in the labour market سوق العمل.
a. please b. brainstorm c. suppose d. cope

256

- This campaign الحملة aims to awareness الوعي of the importance of health-care.
a. react b. concentrate c. promote d. pout
- Work-life balance leads to physical and mental
a. pressure b. well-being c. counsellor d. responsibility
- I know it is a difficult mission, but I am sure you will
a. manage b. avoid c. stretch d. experience
- Good is a top necessity in business administration. Each single minute makes a difference.
a. priority b. reaction c. mental health d. time management
- When children grow up, they don't like it when you them in public على الملأ.
a. consider b. scold c. improve d. clear off
- It was clear that he was angry at what I said. He but said nothing.
a. frowned b. poured c. altered d. promoted
- Everything will be OK, I
a. please b. brainstorm c. suppose d. cope
- I was completely after twelve hours of hard work.
a. exhausted b. stressful c. stressing d. frustrated
- Studying for ten hours nonstop may affect your health.
a. mental b. urgent c. brave d. stressful
- plays a vital role in leading a business to success.
a. Burnout b. Management c. Message d. Category
- Having regular time off work is necessary for both your as well as your physical fitness.
a. priority b. reaction c. mental health d. time management
- I shouted at my daughter, who her lips and tears ran down her cheeks.
a. exhausted b. concentrated c. promoted d. pouted
- Those who suffer from should reduce work pressure they put on themselves.
a. stress b. self-care c. creation d. regret

257
الكتاب لغة إنجليزية / ٥٣ / ترم ١ (١٧ : ٢٠٢٠)

2 Important Vocabulary

19. I hope these clouds will soon. I miss the warmth of sunshine.
a. consider b. scold c. improve d. clear off
20. Although my wife is a successful chemist, our family is her first
a. priority b. reaction c. mental health d. time management
21. Nothing can the fact that El-Moasser is the best educational book.
a. frown b. pour c. alter d. pout
22. It is advisable that you making friends with such bullies. نشرين
a. manage b. avoid c. stretch d. experience
23. Don't make much on children. Let them have their space and monitored freedom of action.
a. pressure b. well-being c. counsellor d. dress
24. His management skills made him a failure.
a. mental b. urgent c. brave d. poor
25. The injured man needed a/an surgery on his broken leg.
a. mental b. urgent c. brave d. stressful
26. "I should have worked hard." This sentence expresses past
a. stress b. self-care c. creation d. regret
27. A: What is the of this novel?
B: It teaches us that patience is a good quality.
a. burnout b. management c. message d. category
28. The purpose of the meeting is to ideas, not to make speeches.
a. please b. brainstorm c. suppose d. cope
29. Don't stay sitting in your chair for more than 25 minutes. Stand up and
a. manage b. avoid c. stretch d. experience
30. It is your to look after your family when your father is away.
a. pressure b. well-being c. counsellor d. responsibility
31. Rain was down while we were driving home.
a. frowning b. pouring c. altering d. promoting
32. I was shocked by his violent I don't know what annoyed him!
a. priority b. reaction c. mental health d. time management
33. Reclaiming desert land and building new factories contribute to job
a. stress b. self-care c. creation d. regret

34. I was as nobody seemed to understand what I was trying to say.
a. exhausted b. stressful c. plunged d. frustrated
35. It a mother when her sons or daughters achieve success.
a. pleases b. brainstorms c. supposes d. copes
36. Everyone difficulties in their lives every now and then. Only winners overcome them.
a. manages b. avoids c. stretches d. experiences
37. Being a 75-year-old man, Dr Ali retiring from his medical career.
a. considers b. scolds c. improves d. clears
38. You need to find a to help you with your son's mental disorder. اضطراب
a. pressure b. well-being c. counsellor d. responsibility

3 Definitions

39. To is to think that something is probably true, based on what you know.
a. pout b. frown c. scold d. suppose
40. means organising when you do things and for how long.
a. Time management b. Stress
c. Well-being d. Mental health
41. '.....' is an adjective that describes the feeling of being very tired.
a. Mental b. Exhausted c. Poor d. Urgent
42. To is to deal with difficult situations.
a. cope b. promote c. alter d. pour
43. means how good you feel in your body and how happy you are.
a. Mental health b. Well-being c. Self-care d. Burnout
44. To is to angrily criticize someone, especially a child, about something they have done.
a. pout b. frown c. scold d. suppose
45. means how a person thinks and the emotions they feel.
a. Mental health b. Well-being c. Self-care d. Burnout
46. To is to help something to develop or increase.
a. cope b. promote c. alter d. prove
47. To is to make an angry, unhappy, or confused expression, moving your eyebrows together.
a. pout b. frown c. scold d. suppose

48. To is to get better.
a. cope b. promote c. alter d. improve
49. means taking care of your body and how you feel.
a. Mental health b. Well-being c. Self-care d. Burnout
50. is a feeling of being very worried and scared.
a. Time management b. Stress c. Well-being d. Mental health

Part II Vocabulary Study

تلميذ ساعد معلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

avoid	burnout	يتجنب الإنهاك	improve	well-being	يزيد من سعادة
cause	burnout	يُسبب الإنهاك		notes on	يُسجل ملاحظات عن
	exams	يحل امتحانات	make	suggestions about	يقدم اقتراحات بخصوص
	exercise	يتمرن		time for	يوفر الوقت لـ
do	hobbies	يمارس هوايات	manage	time	يدير الوقت
	revision	يُراجع	pay	attention to	يولي اهتمام بـ
	the best you can	يبدل أقصى ما بوسعه	promote	the importance of	يُعزز أهمية
experience	a lot of stress	يتعرض لكثير من الضغط	reduce	stress	يقلل الضغط
	burnout	يتعرض للإنهاك	suggest	a special technique	يقترح تقنية خاصة
	afraid	يشعر بالخوف		a rest	يأخذ استراحة
feel	exhausted	يشعر بالإرهاق		care of	يرعى - يعتنى بـ
	frustrated	يشعر بالإحباط	take	exercise	يتمرن
	good	يشعر أنه بخير		responsibility for	يتولى مسئولية
	lonely	يشعر بالوحدة		some snacks	يتناول وجبة خفيفة
follow	advice	يعمل بالنصيحة		your best	تبدل ما بوسعك
get	enough sleep	ينام بشكل كاف	try		

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Why don't you the advice your parents give you?
a. follow b. avoid c. make d. cause
- You may experience as a result of too much work.
a. burnout b. stress c. a & b d. attention
- You can do
a. revision b. sleep c. a snack d. suggestions
- The exams you've aim to measure the progress you have achieved in learning.
a. followed b. felt c. reduced d. done
- I responsibility for the office when Mr Ayman was abroad.
a. made b. took c. did d. got
- The new system has the importance of teachers' role in the educational process.
a. made b. promoted c. done d. experienced
- You can take
a. lonely b. good c. a snack d. well-being
- Please stop talking and pay to what I say.
a. burn out b. stress c. a & b d. attention
- I time for some activities I enjoy to avoid burnout.
a. make b. feel c. do d. experience
- You should your best. Never give up.
a. follow b. avoid c. try d. cause

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
exhausted (adj)	مُنْهَك / مُجْهَد / مُرْهَق
improve(d) (v)	يُحَسِّن
improve(d) (v)	يَتَحَسَّن
mental (adj)	ذهني / عقلي
scold(ed) (v)	يُعَنِّف / يُؤَنِّخ
stress (n)	الإجهاد / الضغط
worn out	
make ... better/ enhance	
get better/ become better/ develop	
intellectual/psychological	
tell off	
pressure	

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
improve(d) (v) يُحسِّن	worsen/impair يُخَفِّض
improve(d) (v) يُتَحَسَّن	worsen/deteriorate يَنْقُصُ/يَنْهَارُ
mental(adj) ذهني/عقلي	physical بدني
promote(d) (v) يُرَفِّع	demote يُخَفِّضُ الرتبة
scold(ed) (v) يُعَنِّفُ/يُؤَيِّخُ	praise/compliment يَمْدَحُ
stress(n) الإجهاد/الضغط	relaxation الراحة

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- "His health improved when he moved to the fresh air of the countryside".
We can replace the verb 'improved' in this context with
a. made better b. enhanced c. a & b d. got better
- His health improved when he moved to the fresh air of the countryside".
The verb 'improved' in this context is the antonym of
a. worsened b. deteriorated c. a & b d. enhanced
- When one is under stress, this means they suffer from
a. pressure b. relaxation c. a & b d. compliment
- 'Mental' is to 'physical' as '.....' is to 'praise'.
a. compliment b. scold c. thank d. greet
- '.....' is to 'intellectual' as 'scold' is to 'tell off'.
a. Bodily b. Physical c. Mental d. Praise

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
exhaust(ed) يُرهق - يستنفد	exhaust شكمان - عادم السيارة exhaustion إرهاق - استنفاد	exhaustive شامل - كلي exhausted مُرهق/مُتعب بشدة exhausting مُرهق/مُسبب للإرهاق	exhaustively بشكل شامل

frown يعبس/يقطب جبينه	frown/ frowning عبوس/قُطِب الجبين		
improve يُحسِّن/يُتَحَسَّن	improvement تَحْسِين - تحسّن	improved مُحَسَّن/مُعَدَّل	
manage يُدِير - يَنْجِج/يتمكّن	management إدارة manager مدير	manageable مُطِيع - مُدْعِن - سهل	
	mentality العقلية/القدرة على تَعَقُّل الأمور	mental عقلي/ذهني	mentally عقلياً/ذهنياً
pout يُؤْوِز/يُكْثِر	pout تكشيرة/تبويزة	pouty مُؤْوِز/مكشر	
promote يُروِّج لـ - يُرَفِّع - يُعَزِّز	promotion ترقية - ترويج promoter مُتَعَهِّد (مُنظَّم) - مُؤَيِّد		
scold يُعَنِّفُ/يُؤَيِّخُ	scolding التوبيخ		
suppose يُفترض/يُتَصَوَّر	supposition افتراض - تَصَوُّر	supposed مُفترض	supposedly مِنَ الْمُفترض

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Ahmed is supposed to be
a. promote b. promotion c. promoter d. promoted
- Ahmed is supposed to get the
a. promote b. promotion c. promoter d. promoted
- Mr Ashraf is a of teachers' rights.
a. promote b. promotion c. promoter d. promoted
- I can't do this job alone. It would be
a. exhaust b. exhaustion c. exhausted d. exhausting
- I would be if I did this job alone.
a. exhaust b. exhaustion c. exhausted d. exhausting
- Doing this job on my own would me.
a. exhaust b. exhaustion c. exhausted d. exhausting

7. Doing this job on my own would lead to complete
 a. exhaust b. exhaustion c. exhausted d. exhausting
8. It is clear that your health has
 a. improved b. improvement c. improve d. improvingly
9. The in your health is clear.
 a. improved b. improvement c. improve d. improvingly
10. I am confident about your ability to the team.
 a. manage b. management c. manager d. manageable
11. I am confident that you will be a good of the team.
 a. manage b. management c. manager d. manageable
12. I am confident about your good of the team.
 a. manage b. management c. manager d. manageable

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a five-minute break	استراحة لمدة خمس دقائق	just for you	من أجلك أنت فقط
afraid of	خائف من	late last night	في وقت متأخر من الليلة الماضية
angry at	غاضب بسبب	mental health problem	مشكلة صحة نفسية
go for a walk	يذهب للمشي	more often than usual	أكثر جداً من المعتاد
in danger of	في خطر	on a regular basis	بشكل منتظم
in order of priority	بترتيب الأولوية	past regret	الندم على الماضي
instead of	بدلاً من	poor time management skills	سوء مهارات إدارة الوقت

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

benefit from	يستفيد من	pour down	يغمر/يتدفق
clear off	يقف - يزول/ينقش	stay up	يسهر
concentrate on	يركز على	suffer from	يُعاني من
cope with	يواجه - يساير	talk to	يتحدث إلى
divide ... into	يُقسم ... إلى	think about	يُفكر في
forget about	ينسى ما يخص		

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The referee angrily told the player to clear
 a. up b. of c. off d. down
2. The child was danger of falling down from the balcony.
 a. on b. in c. at d. with
3. My grandfather suffered from a mental problem.
 a. healthy b. healthier c. healthiest d. health
4. You need to do exercise a regular basis.
 a. of b. in c. on d. for
5. It is unhealthy to stay late at night.
 a. up b. of c. off d. down
6. I went on a five-..... holiday to Sharm.
 a. a day b. day c. day's d. days'
7. Do your jobs in order priority.
 a. that b. to c. of d. from
8. You have to retrain to cope the requirements of your new job.
 a. up b. of c. off d. with

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

frown - pout

• frown (at) (v)

يقطب جبينه (حركة تدل على الغضب أو الضيق يقترب فيهما الحاجبان من بعضهما)

- Mr Ayman **frowned** as he was reading my essay.
- Don't **frown at** the child. You scare her.

• frown (n)

قُطب الجبين / انعقاد الحاجبين

- Your **frown** scares the child.

• frown on/upon (phr. v)

يستهجن - يستنكر

- Using chemical insecticides is allowed, but it is **frowned upon**.

• pout (v)

يستاء / يُكثّر (يُبْزِر) (حركة بالشفاه تدل على الغضب أو الضيق أو أشياء أخرى)

- She **pouted** in a childish way.

mental - physical

- **mental (adj)** (صفة تُستخدم فقط قبل اسم بهذا المعنى)
- This old woman suffers from an illness which is **mental**. (X)
- This old woman suffers from a **mental** illness. (✓)
- **physical (adj)** (بدني / جسدي)
- He lost his leg in a car accident and now he suffers from a **physical** disability.

8 Master your Key Vocabulary الرئيسية المفردات

promote

- **promote (v)** (يُجسِّن / يُرقي - يُرقي لوظيفة أعلى - يُروج لمنتج معين)
- Adding fertilizers **promotes** the growth of plants.
- My father was **promoted** to general manager of the company.
- The factory tries to **promote** its new product by putting posters in the streets.
- **promotion (n)** (ترقية لوظيفة أعلى - ترويج لمنتج معين)
- My father's **promotion** to general manager will get him more money.
- The **promotion** plan of the new mobile made it sell well.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary التمرين: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Although divorce is legal, it is sometimes frowned
a. on b. upon c. a & b d. at
- Autism is a type of
a. mental disorder b. disorder mental
c. disorder which is mental. d. disorder that is mental
- The manager that the new employees needed much retraining.
a. scolded b. stressed c. pouted d. altered
- My mother us off for starting our lunch before our father did.
a. told b. scolded c. frowned d. pouted
- When the children saw the large dog, they soon
a. concentrated on b. coped with c. set up d. cleared off

No. Answer & Explanation

No.	Answer	Explanation
1.	c	- الفعل الإصطلاحي (frown on/upon) هنا يعني (يستنكر)
2.	a	- الصفة (mental) بمعنى (عقلي/ذهني) تُستخدم فقط قبل الاسم الموصوف.
3.	b	- الفعل (stressed) هنا يعني (أكد على).
4.	a	- الفعل الإصطلاحي (tell ... off) يعني (يبريح/يُعنف).
5.	d	- الفعل الإصطلاحي (clear off) هنا يعني (يلوذ بالفرار).

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

How to avoid⁽¹⁾ burnout

(SB page 43)

Burnout⁽²⁾ is a mental⁽³⁾ health problem that is affecting more and more people today because there's so much pressure⁽⁴⁾ on us to work hard and do everything perfectly⁽⁵⁾. When you experience⁽⁶⁾ burnout, you feel exhausted⁽⁷⁾ and you usually don't spend enough time doing things you enjoy. You might stop doing hobbies that you used to enjoy and you may become ill more often than usual. As a result, people experiencing burnout feel like⁽⁸⁾ they can't live their lives normally⁽⁹⁾ anymore⁽¹⁰⁾.

Burnout is usually caused by both decisions⁽¹¹⁾ you make about things that you can control⁽¹²⁾, for example, the amount of homework you have to do, and situations you can't control, for example if you spend a lot more time on your homework than you have to because you want to do it perfectly. This is your choice⁽¹³⁾ or the result of poor⁽¹⁴⁾ time management⁽¹⁵⁾ skills.

If you're in danger⁽¹⁶⁾ of suffering from burnout, you will usually experience a lot of stress⁽¹⁷⁾, find it difficult to sleep and have a lot of headaches⁽¹⁸⁾ or pain⁽¹⁹⁾ in your shoulders⁽²⁰⁾ and back⁽²¹⁾.

Check Vocabulary

- يتجنب/يتحاشى
- الإنهاك
- ذهني/عقلي
- الضغط
- بشكل مثالي
- يتعرض لـ/يعاني
- منهك/المجهد/أفرق
- يشعر وكأنه
- بشكل طبيعي
- أكثر من ذلك
- قرارات
- يتحكم في
- اختيار
- سما
- إدارة الوقت
- خطر
- الضغط
- صناع
- ألم
- أكتاف
- الظهر

In order to improve⁽²²⁾ your mental health, you need to take responsibility⁽²³⁾ for the things that you can control.

For example, if you find it difficult to say 'no' when people ask you to do activities⁽²⁴⁾ outside of school and you feel exhausted because of this, you could change this behaviour⁽²⁵⁾. Then you can start thinking about activities you really enjoy doing. These should be activities that help you to forget about everything else that is happening, such as drawing or painting⁽²⁶⁾, doing a sport or having 'real' conversations⁽²⁷⁾ with your friends and family. Activities like these are examples of self-care⁽²⁸⁾. They help to promote⁽²⁹⁾ better mental health and increase⁽³⁰⁾ your well-being⁽³¹⁾.

Log in or register to post comments

- (22) يُحسِّن
(23) المسؤولية
(24) أنشطة
(25) سلوك/تصرف
(26) التلوين
(27) مُحادثات
(28) العناية الشخصية
(29) يُعزِّز
(30) يزيد
(31) العافية

Studying can be stressful⁽¹⁾.

Here are four tips⁽²⁾ to make life easier.

Tip 1: Divide⁽³⁾ the things you need to do into four categories⁽⁴⁾. These are: (1) urgent⁽⁵⁾ and important⁽⁶⁾ (2) important but not urgent (3) not important but urgent (4) not important and not urgent. Using this system, you will quickly be able to see what you have to do now and what can wait.

Tip 2: When studying for a long time, you should know when to take a rest. This will help you to avoid burnout and continue⁽⁷⁾ studying. Use a clock with an alarm⁽⁸⁾. After every twenty-five minutes, take a five-minute break⁽⁹⁾ and stand up and stretch⁽¹⁰⁾.

Tip 3: You should do exercise on a regular⁽¹¹⁾ basis⁽¹²⁾. Exercise will produce endorphins⁽¹³⁾, which are chemicals that help to reduce⁽¹⁴⁾ stress⁽¹⁵⁾. If the exercise is outside, you will also benefit⁽¹⁶⁾ from some fresh⁽¹⁷⁾ air.

Tip 4: You should not eat unhealthily⁽¹⁸⁾ when you are studying. A salad is quick to prepare⁽¹⁹⁾ and fruit is a better snack⁽²⁰⁾ than chocolate. You should also avoid having too much caffeine⁽²¹⁾. Water is much healthier.

(WB page 26)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) برفق/أشاق/اضاغط
(2) نصائح
(3) يُقسِّم
(4) تصنيفات
(5) عاجل/ مُلح
(6) مهم
(7) يستمر
(8) منبه
(9) استراحة
(10) يُعَدِّد - يُتمصِّل
(11) مُنْتَظِم
(12) أساس
(13) الإندورفين
(14) يُقلِّل
(15) الشفط/الإجهاد
(16) يستفيد
(17) نقي
(18) طريقة غير صحية
(19) يُعِدُّ
(20) وجبة خفيفة
(21) الكافيين

Suppose

(SB page 44)

by Phoebe Cary

1 Suppose⁽¹⁾ you're dressed⁽²⁾ for walking,

And the rain comes pouring down⁽³⁾,

Will it clear off⁽⁴⁾ any sooner

Because you scold⁽⁵⁾ and frown⁽⁶⁾?

2 And wouldn't it be nicer

For you to smile than pout⁽⁷⁾, And so make sunshine⁽⁸⁾ in the house When there is none without?

3 And suppose the world don't please⁽⁹⁾ you, Nor the way some people do, Do you think the whole creation⁽¹⁰⁾

Will be altered⁽¹¹⁾ just for you?

4 And isn't it, my boy or girl, The wisest⁽¹²⁾, bravest⁽¹³⁾ plan, Whatever comes, or doesn't come, To do the best you can?



Check Vocabulary

- (1) يفرض
(2) يرتدي/يلبس
(3) ينهمر/يتدفق
(4) يذوب/يزول
(5) يُعَيِّف/يؤيِّب
(6) يعبس/يتوجَّه/يكتشر
(7) وسماء / يتجهج
(8) ضوء / إنشراح
(9) يُسَرِّد/يُسَرِّز
(10) الخلق/الكون
(11) يُغَيِّر - يَتَغَيَّر
(12) الأكثر حكمة
(13) الأشجع

2 Listening Texts

(WB page 27)

Leila : Hi Nadia. I haven't seen you for a long time. How are you ?

Nadia : Hi Leila. Thanks for asking. I'm a bit stressed.

Leila : Oh no! Why don't you sit down and tell me about it ?

Nadia : Well, I have three exams this week and don't know when I can revise because I have a big project for science, too. I also promised my parents I would help them in the shop in the evenings.

Leila : That sounds like a lot. Have you considered telling your parents you are stressed ?

Nadia : I don't want to worry them.



Leila : You could write down everything you have to do this week in order of priority⁽¹⁾ and say "no" to the things at the bottom of your list. Also, how about doing your revision while you are in the shop. It's usually quiet in the evenings, isn't it ?

Nadia : Have you thought about becoming a student counsellor⁽²⁾ ? You're very good at giving advice !

Leila : Oh, thank you.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) أولوية
(2) مستشار

1 **Nour** : At the moment, I just feel exhausted⁽¹⁾ all the time. I play computer games with my friends after school every evening. Then I don't start doing my homework until about 9 o'clock in the evening. By the time I finish my homework, it's 11 o'clock or even midnight. So, I don't get to bed until it's really late and then I'm exhausted the next day at school and I can't keep up⁽²⁾ in my lessons.



(SB page 45)
Check Vocabulary

- (1) مُرهق
(2) يواصل/يستمر
(3) يرعى
(4) هدف
(5) درجات/تقديرات
(6) استراحة/فسحة
(7) اضافي

2 **Ibrahim** : I spend a lot of time looking after⁽³⁾ my grandfather, who's seventy-four years old and is ill at the moment. I go to school and then as soon as I get home, I spend the next few hours making him something to eat, reading to him and helping him to wash, things like that. I have to get up early in the morning to do my homework before school and I never seem to have any time to do anything for myself.



3 **Heba** : It's always my goal⁽⁴⁾ to get the best grades⁽⁵⁾ that I possibly can at school. It seems that the only way to do that is to spend all of my time on my schoolwork. So, I work as hard as I can when I'm at school and then in the breaks⁽⁶⁾ we have at school, I do some extra⁽⁷⁾ reading or look at my notes again. Then, when I get home, I do my homework all afternoon and evening. I just keep going even if I'm feeling exhausted.



3 Video Script

Whilst⁽¹⁾ it's important to keep informed about⁽²⁾ current affairs⁽³⁾, reading the news when its mostly bad can cause anxiety⁽⁴⁾ and stress⁽⁵⁾. Bad news seems to get more attention, so this is what the media⁽⁶⁾ give us.

One 16-year-old said he had started worrying constantly⁽⁷⁾ about things he was reading in the news and it had affected his sleep. He told researchers⁽⁸⁾ that he had started avoiding⁽⁹⁾ the news completely. He said he generally⁽¹⁰⁾ felt better, but on the downside⁽¹¹⁾, he wasn't able to contribute to⁽¹²⁾ conversations with friends, and felt left out⁽¹³⁾ when they were talking about current affairs. This solution⁽¹⁴⁾ may seem a little bit extreme⁽¹⁵⁾, but there are ways we can reduce⁽¹⁶⁾ stress and anxiety caused by negative news. We spoke with psychologist⁽¹⁷⁾ Alison Carey about the issue⁽¹⁸⁾. She advised young people to take a break⁽¹⁹⁾ sometimes, or to limit⁽²⁰⁾ the amount of time they spend reading news to once every two days, or once a week. She also suggested that we interact⁽²¹⁾ more with positive news sources⁽²²⁾, such as the goodnewsnetwork or positivenews.com.

Most importantly⁽²³⁾, she said that getting out into nature, listening to music, spending less time on your screen and more time in face-to-face⁽²⁴⁾ conversations would all help reduce stress and anxiety caused by bad news.

(SB page 45)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) بينما
(2) يبقى على وعي بـ
(3) الأحداث الجارية
(4) القلق
(5) الضغط / التوتر
(6) وسائل الإعلام
(7) باستمرار
(8) باحث
(9) يتجنب
(10) بشكل عام
(11) في الجانب السلبي
(12) يساهم في
(13) مُستبعد
(14) حل
(15) شديد / متطرف
(16) يقلل
(17) عالم نفس
(18) قضية/مشكلة
(19) يأخذ استراحة
(20) يحد من / يقلل
(21) يتفاعل
(22) مصدر
(23) الأكثر أهمية
(24) مباشر / وجهاً لوجه

(WB page 27)

Leila : Hi Nadia. I haven't seen you for a long time. How are you?

Nadia : Hi Leila. Thanks for asking. I'm a bit stressed.

Leila : Oh no! Why don't you sit down and tell me about it?

Nadia : Well, I have three exams this week and don't know when I can revise because I have a big project for science too. I also promised my parents I would help them in the shop in the evenings.

Leila : That sounds⁽¹⁾ like a lot. Have you considered⁽²⁾ telling your parents you are stressed⁽³⁾ ?

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يبدو
(2) يفكر في
(3) مضغوط

9 May I suggest + (inf. + ing) ...?

هل يمكنني أن أقترح ...؟

- May I suggest having fish for lunch?

10 Wouldn't it be better to + inf. ...?

ألن يكون من الأفضل أن ...؟

- Wouldn't it be better to have fish for lunch?

2. Making Suggestions with statements تقديم اقتراحات باستخدام الجمل الخبرية

1 Let's + inf. ...

هيا بنا

- Let's have fish for lunch.

2 You / we can/could/should + inf.

بإمكانك / بإمكاننا أن

- We could have fish for lunch

3 I (would) suggest + n / (inf. + ing) ...

أقترح ...

- I suggest having fish for lunch.

- I would suggest having fish for lunch.

4 I suggest you / we + inf. / (should + inf.) ...

أقترح أنك / أننا ...

- I suggest that we have (should have) fish for lunch.

5 I think you / we should+ inf. ...

أعتقد أنه ينبغي عليك / علينا ...

- I think we should have fish for lunch.

6 I would recommend + (inf. + ing) ...

إنني أوصي بـ / أزكي ...

- I would recommend having fish for lunch.

7 We should probably consider + (inf. + ing) ...

قد يكون من الواجب أن نفكر في ...

- We should probably consider having fish for lunch.

8 Perhaps/Maybe + you / we could/should+ inf. ...

ربما يمكنك يمكننا أن ...

- Maybe we should have fish for lunch.

9 It is just an idea a suggestion, but you / we could+ inf. ...

إنها مجرد فكرة/توصية أنه يمكنك/يمكننا أن ...

- It is just a suggestion, but we could have fish for lunch

10 My suggestion / recommendation would be to + inf. ...

إنها مجرد فكرة/توصية أنه يمكنك/يمكننا أن ...

- My suggestion would be to have fish for lunch.

suggest / recommend يوصي به / يقترح

١ الفعلان (suggest/recommend) يأتي بعدهما (inf. + ing) :

- suggest/recommend + (inf. + ing) ...
- I **suggest** spending the weekend in the countryside.
- I **would recommend** spending the weekend in the countryside.

٢ في حالة النفي توضع (not) قبل (inf. + ing) :

- suggest/recommend + not + (inf. + ing) ...
- I **recommend** not eating in this restaurant.

٣ في حال وجود جملة بعد (suggest/recommend) يكون فعلها (inf.) أو (should + inf.) :

- consider / recommend + (that) + subj. + inf. / (should + inf.) ...
- I **suggest** that Mahmoud join the school team.
- I **suggest** that Mahmoud should join the school team.

How about Vs What about

٤ يُمكن استخدام كل من (what about/ How about) لتقديم الإقتراحات ويأتي بعدهما (inf. + ing) :

- **What/How about** going out for a swim?

٥ تُستخدم (What about) وليس (How about) عند ابداء الاعتراض أو التعبير عن مشكلة مُحتملة؟

A: I think Mohammed Mahmoud is the best midfielder in Egypt?

B: You may be right, but what about his too many injuries?

Replying to Suggestions الرد على الاقتراحات

Agreeing	Disagreeing
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Yes, let's. - Why not ? - That's a good / fantastic idea - I'll go along with that. - I agree. - OK - That sounds fine. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I'm not very keen. - I'm not sure about that. - Maybe some other time. - I'd rather.... - No, I'd prefer to

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I Getting Started

1. What about a cold drink together in the break?
a. have b. having c. no word d. b & c
2. Let's a cold drink together in the break.
a. have b. having c. no word d. b & c
3. go for a walk.
a. Let's b. Why don't we c. Shall we d. b & c
4. go for a walk?
a. Let's b. Why don't we c. Shall we d. b & c
5. Let's the match in the stadium. It is much more exciting there.
a. watch b. to watch c. not watch d. watching
6. Let's the match in the stadium. It is better on TV.
a. watch b. to watch c. not watch d. watching
7. Have you joining a sports club to practise football professionally?
a. thought b. considered c. seen d. avoided
8. May I suggest a snack break?
a. take b. to take c. taking d. to taking
9. Let's about this problem later.
a. talking b. to talk c. to talking d. talk
10. we could support our country by helping with charity work.
a. Perhaps b. My suggestion c. Let us d. Let's
11. My would be to prepare chocolate cake for our guests.
a. suggest b. suggestion c. recommend d. a & c

II Special Cases

12. A: If you ask me, Mai is the best applicant for the job of the secretary?
B: Mmm. her bad English?
a. How about b. What about c. Shall we d. Why don't we
13. ask father for the trip money right now. He is in a good mood.
a. Let's b. Let's not c. Don't let's d. b & c
14. ask father for the trip money right now. He is furious because the team has lost the match.
a. Let's b. Let's not c. Don't let's d. b & c

15. I would suggest my aunt for dinner.
a. to inviting b. to invite c. inviting d. invite
16. I suggest mum my aunt for dinner.
a. to inviting b. to invite c. inviting d. invite
17. I having falafel to eating this badly-prepared pizza?
a. recommend b. would recommend
c. a & b d. object
18. I consider how our poor neighbours.
a. to help b. help c. helping d. to helping
19. I recommend Sama the Egyptian Japanese School.
a. joining b. join c. joined d. to join
20. I suggest that Rodayna ready to join the team.
a. was b. be c. should be d. b & c
21. I suggest out until the rain stops. We don't have raincoats.
a. to go b. do not go c. not going d. we go
22. I suggest out when the rain stops, not now.
a. to go b. do not go c. not going d. we go

III Check your understanding

23. "....." is/are used to make suggestions in formal language only.
a. Let's b. Let us c. lets d. a & b
24. "....." is used to show objection to an idea or suggestion.
a. Let's b. I suggest c. How about d. What about
25. "Let's go for a walk". In other words, the speaker says, ".....".
a. You could go for a walk. b. I suggest you go for a walk.
c. I suggest we go for a walk. d. a & b
26. "Have you considered going for a walk?". In other words, the speaker says, ".....".
a. You could go for a walk. b. I suggest you go for a walk.
c. I suggest I go for a walk. d. a & b
27. A: - B: Yes, let's.
a. Perhaps you can go out on your own.
b. Why don't you go out on your own?
c. Let's go out together.
d. I recommend you go out alone.

Part I

Vocabulary & Definitions

اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المفردات التفاعلية.
المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تنويه

Important Vocabulary

accept(ed) (v)	يقبل	influence(d) (v/n)	يؤثر على - تأثير
adapt(ed) to (v)	يتأقلم / يتكيف مع	maybe(adv)	ربما
alert(n-adj)	إشعار / تنبيه - يقظ / متنبه	memo(n)	مذكرة
alert(ed) (v)	يُنْبه / يُحذِر	negative(adj)	سلبي
anxious(adj)	قلق / متوتر	normal(adj)	طبيعي
athletics(n)	ألعاب القوى	particular(adj)	مُحدّد - مُعيّن
behave(d) (v)	يتصرّف / يَسْلُك	perceive(d) (v)	يُلاحِظ / يَدْرِك
change(d) (n-v)	التغيّر - يتغيّر	perception(n)	إدراك
contagious(adj)	مُعدي - ينتقل بالعدوى	psychologist(n)	عالم نفس
cope(d) with (v)	يُساير - يتعامل مع	remain(ed) (v)	يبقى / يظل
deal - dealt (v)	يتعامل / يواجه	results(n)	نتائج
demonstrate(d) (v)	يُوضّح	routine (n)	روتينة يومية
efficient(adj)	كفء	self(n)	النفس - الذات - جوهري الشخص
external(adj)	خارجي	sign(n)	علامة - إشارة
factors(n)	عوامل	solution(n)	حل
focus(ed) (v)	يركّز	specific(adj)	مُحدّد - مخصص
go on (phr. v)	يحدث - يستمر	struggle(d) (n/v)	بصراع - يقاوم
grateful(adj)	شاكر / مُمتن	teenager(n)	مُراهق
gratitude(n)	امتنان - شكر	thinking(n)	التفكير
identify(ied) (v)	يُحدّد	upload(ed) (v)	يرفع على الإنترنت
impact(n)	أثر - انطباع		

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key & Important vocabulary

- Can you kindly tell me what is ? Why does everybody look anxious?
a. feeling like b. coping with c. adapting to d. going on
- Be alert to the danger of looking at the tablet screen for too long. The word 'alert' in this utterance is a/an
a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb
- I am really for your priceless support while I was facing some problems.
a. normal b. efficient c. grateful d. specific
- Smoking and addicting to drugs have a negative on both physical and mental health.
a. teenager b. impact c. self d. solution
- A person who is flexible مرن by nature will find it easy to changes, not to reject them.
a. demonstrate b. remain c. perceive d. accept
- High body temperature and dry cough are two of coronavirus common
a. alerts b. memos c. routines d. factors
- Winners are always and hopeful.
a. anxious b. external c. positive d. negative
- I couldn't the file onto El-Moasser website because my laptop was offline.
a. behave b. identify c. influence d. upload
- I throwing the mobile into the sea when its battery went dead during an important call.
a. felt like b. coped with c. adapted to d. went on
- Being a/an doctor, his clinic is always full of patients.
a. normal b. efficient c. grateful d. specific
- Small projects are a good to the problem of unemployment.
a. teenager b. impact c. self d. solution

26. usually object to elderly authority. سلطة الكبار
 a. Teenagers b. Impacts c. Selves d. Solutions
27. Salah was as a talented player when he was a little child.
 a. demonstrated b. remained c. perceived d. excepted
28. Mr Ayman, my boss, sent me a/an about the meeting.
 a. alert b. memo c. routine d. a & b

Part II Vocabulary Study

ساعد فاعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

accept	change	يقبل بالتغيير	have	fun	يتمتع - يستمتع
feel	like	يشعر وكأنه - يرغب	identify	the reasons	يُجد الأسباب
follow	advice	يأخذ بالنصيحة	look	exhausted	يبدو منهكاً
get	stressed about	يتوتر من	make	a study plan	يُعدّ خطة مذاكرة
	together	يلتقى - يتجمع	make	changes	يُحدث تغييرات
	wet	يصيبه البلل	move	house	ينتقل من بيت لآخر
have	a big impact on	له أثر كبير على	pass	exams	يجتاز الامتحانات
	a problem with	لديه مشكلة في	perceive	change	يلاحظ التغيير
	a talk about	يتحدث عن	show	... how to	يوضح لـ ... كيف
	control over	يسيطر على	take	action	يتصرف

Mini Test 1 Collocations

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I'm still thinking. I haven't action yet.
 a. identified b. taken c. perceived d. got
- You have no choice but to the changes. There's nothing you can do.
 a. perceive b. make c. accept d. do

3. I have all my final exams with full marks.
a. followed b. looked c. moved d. passed
4. The reasons of the problem have already been
a. identified b. taken c. received d. got
5. The new owner some changes to the decoration of the flat. It looks a bit different now.
a. perceived b. made c. accepted d. did
6. My father's advice is always by me without any discussion.
a. followed b. looked c. moved d. passed
7. The change is clear enough for everybody to
a. pass b. take c. perceive d. accept
8. I like a bridegroom عريس in my new suit.
a. perceive b. make c. accept d. feel
9. I got tired of houses. I wish I could have my own flat.
a. following b. looking c. moving d. passing
10. All family members are together to discuss my sister's marriage offer.
a. identifying b. taking c. perceiving d. getting

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

as a result of	كنتيجة لـ	mental health	الصحة النفسية/العقلية
as normal	كشئ طبيعي	news alerts	إشعارات الأخبار
at the weekend	في العطلة الأسبوعية	on social media	على وسائل التواصل
back then	في ذلك الحين	out of control	لا يمكن التحكم به/خارج عن السيطرة
be aware of	يكون على وعي بـ	positive thinking	التفكير الإيجابي
be kind to	يكون طيباً مع	possible signs	أعراض محتملة
be your normal self	تكون بحالتك الطبيعية	react differently	تصرف بشكل مختلف
external factors	عوامل خارجية	reason for	سبب في
find it difficult to	يجد صعوبة في أن	signs of burnout	أعراض الإنهاك
get to sleep	يستغرق في النوم	solution to	حل لـ
grateful for	شاكر/ممتن لـ	spend time on	يقضي الوقت في
health problems	مشكلات صحية	voice memo	مذكرة صوتية
instead of	بدلاً من	whether .. or ..	سواء .. أو ..
find the time to	يوفر وقت لـ		
make time for	يوفر الوقت لـ		

3 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

adapt to	يتأقلم/يتكيف مع	move to	ينتقل إلى
calm down	يهدأ	offer to	يُعرض أن
deal with	يتعامل/يتعامل مع	seem to	يبدو أن
find out	يكتشف/يعرف	set up	يُضبط - يُنشئ
focus on	يركّز على	share with	يشارك في
go on	يحدث - يستمر	suffer from	يُعاني من
help .. with	يساعد .. في	worry about	يقلق على
meet up	يلتقي - يتلاقى	write to	يبعث برسالة إلى

Mini Test 2 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Accepting changes normal helps us adapt to conditions well.
a. by b. from c. like d. as
2. Go, Ahmed. Don't let anything stop you achieving your goal.
a. out b. in c. on d. up
3. I'm really grateful your useful support.
a. for b. to c. in d. with
4. I want to set a new Windows 11 version.
a. out b. in c. on d. up
5. I hope I will be able to for doing some useful hobbies.
a. look forward b. make time c. make up d. go into
6. I haven't adapted living here yet.
a. out b. in c. to d. up
7. I have written her three times but she won't reply.
a. to b. in c. on d. up
8. A good citizen is aware the dangers that threaten their country.
a. from b. with c. of d. at
9. Just focus what you are doing and everything will be OK.
a. out b. on c. in d. up

1 Reading Texts

(SB page 46)

When I talk to teenagers⁽¹⁾ who are suffering⁽²⁾ from burnout, I start by talking to them about the negative⁽³⁾ effects of their mental health problems. It's a good idea to ask how they're feeling, for example, they may feel exhausted or they may not have any time for self-care. Then I ask them about their routine⁽⁴⁾ because I want to find out how much time they spend doing their homework and how much time they spend on other activities. After that, we can find out if there's anything we can change, for example to have better time management. A final important thing to look at is what activities the student really enjoys. We can talk about these and think about how the student can make more time for⁽⁵⁾ them.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) المراهقين
(2) يعاني
(3) سلبي
(4) وتيرة يومية
(5) يوفر مزيداً من الوقت

(WB page 28)

One way to help you deal with⁽¹⁾ life's problems is to focus⁽²⁾ only on the things you can change. There are many external⁽³⁾ factors⁽⁴⁾ which may influence⁽⁵⁾ how well you can cope with⁽⁶⁾ a particular⁽⁷⁾ problem. However, you should accept⁽⁸⁾ that there are some things you just do not have control⁽⁹⁾ over. It is not helpful to worry about these things. For example, when it rains do you get stressed about getting wet⁽¹⁰⁾? Or do you buy a good raincoat⁽¹¹⁾ to keep you warm⁽¹²⁾ and dry in bad weather? This is an example of how you can find a quick and simple solution⁽¹³⁾ to what others might see as a problem. This is also the first step⁽¹⁴⁾ to accepting change as something normal⁽¹⁵⁾. It is a simple way to make sure you remain⁽¹⁶⁾ positive⁽¹⁷⁾ when you face⁽¹⁸⁾ life's difficulties.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يتعامل مع / يواجه
(2) يركز
(3) خارجي
(4) عامل
(5) يؤثر على
(6) يتسبب
(7) معين
(8) يقبل
(9) تتحكم / سيطرة
(10) مبلل
(11) معطف المطر
(12) دافئ
(13) حل
(14) خطوة
(15) طبيعي
(16) يبقى / يظل
(17) إيجابي
(18) يواجه

(SB page 47)

To : Mohamed@mail.com

From : Karim@mail.com

Hi Mohamed

I wanted to write because I've noticed⁽¹⁾ that you don't seem to be your normal self⁽²⁾ at the moment. You used to have so much energy, but now you look exhausted a lot of the time at school. I think I can understand how you're feeling because I was suffering⁽³⁾ from a lot of stress last year too.

I couldn't cope with all of the homework I had.

Instead of⁽⁴⁾ doing the work, I used to just sit at my desk and worry about it for hours. I remember that I was exhausted all the time and my teachers weren't very happy with my schoolwork. Time management was something I didn't know anything about back then, but I asked my sister for help and she showed me how to plan my study time better.

Is there something that you're worrying about which is stopping you getting to sleep? Or maybe⁽⁵⁾ you're doing too many things at the moment. Everyone suffers from stress and finds it difficult to cope with life sometimes, so don't worry about it. When you understand that, you can start to identify⁽⁶⁾ the reasons⁽⁷⁾ for your problems.

Why don't you think about what is happening in your life at the moment? Is there anything that you're spending too much time on? How often do you make the time to do something you really enjoy? We could get together⁽⁸⁾ to have a talk about what's going on⁽⁹⁾ if you want. Just let me know when.

Talk soon,

Karim

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يلاحظ
(2) في حالتك الطبيعية
(3) يعاني
(4) بدلاً من
(5) ربما
(6) يحدد
(7) أسباب
(8) يلتقي
(9) يحدث

A

Imad

I am very worried about passing all my exams and although I can't spend much time with friends, I still follow what they are doing on social media. For the last few weeks, I've been feeling like⁽¹⁾ I can't cope with everything in my life. My friends are getting great marks⁽²⁾ at school and after school they meet up⁽³⁾. But I don't have time to join them. On social media they always upload⁽⁴⁾ photos and videos of themselves having fun in the park and around town. I don't know how they find the time to do all these things and study too.

B

Seleem

I think it's important to know what is happening in the world, whether it's good or bad. I like to know what is happening in the world and I have set up⁽¹⁾ my phone to send me news alerts⁽²⁾. Recently⁽³⁾ though, there have been so many problems happening around the world and it's making me feel stressed. It's having a big impact⁽⁴⁾ on my well-being. I often feel quite anxious⁽⁵⁾ and don't want to leave the house.

C

Wael

I have moved house and school and it's had an impact on my well-being. I have just started doing sport to calm down⁽¹⁾ because recently I've been quite angry. We have just moved to⁽²⁾ a new city because of my dad's new job. I had to leave all my best friends, the athletics⁽³⁾ club I was in and all this happened during an important year at school. I want to study medicine⁽⁴⁾, so I have to get good results⁽⁵⁾ in my exams. I often get angry about small things.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يشعر وكأنه
- (2) درجات
- (3) يلتقي
- (4) يرفع على الإنترنت

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يضبط
- (2) إشعارات
- (3) مؤخرًا
- (4) أثر
- (5) قلق / متوتر

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يهدأ
- (2) ينتقل إلى
- (3) ألعاب القوى
- (4) الطب
- (5) نتائج

2 Listening Texts

1

Nevine: This is Nevine and six months ago I was really struggling with⁽¹⁾ my mental⁽²⁾ health. I was suffering from⁽³⁾ burnout, and I wasn't spending any time on self-care⁽⁴⁾ at all. Fortunately, I'm feeling a lot better now. The first step was to work out⁽⁵⁾ what was causing the burnout. In my case⁽⁶⁾, I was doing too many things and I couldn't cope. For example, I was trying to do all of my homework perfectly⁽⁷⁾ while also playing in four sports teams and volunteering⁽⁸⁾ at an old people's home on Saturdays. I realised that if you're not spending enough time doing things to promote⁽⁹⁾ your own wellbeing, you'll feel exhausted and sad. I decided to stop being such a perfectionist⁽¹⁰⁾ with my homework, only play in one sports team and only volunteer at the old people's home two weekends a month. I always get enough sleep now. Now, at the weekend when I don't have to do anything, I just relax at home and enjoy spending time with my friends and family. I always get enough sleep. Recently⁽¹¹⁾, I've learnt how to draw animals, but that's just for fun⁽¹²⁾ – I don't put any pressure on⁽¹³⁾ myself to do it perfectly!

2

Hany: My name's Hany. I didn't think that I would ever have any mental health problems. I used to be so happy and relaxed all the time. Then last year, I started to feel under a lot of pressure at school because we had some important exams. I was so worried about not doing very well in the exams. I didn't want to disappoint⁽¹⁴⁾ my parents who thought I was a really good student. I suffered from a lot of stress, and it was so bad that I couldn't sleep. Of course, that meant that I was exhausted at school the next day and found it hard to concentrate in my lessons. One day I fell asleep⁽¹⁵⁾ in the library at school and a teacher had to come and wake me up.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يصارع/يقاوم
- (2) عقلي/ذهني
- (3) يعاني من
- (4) العناية الذاتية
- (5) يستنتج/يعرف
- (6) في حالتي
- (7) بشكل مثالي
- (8) التطوع
- (9) يُعزز/يدعم
- (10) شخص مثالي
- (11) حديثًا/مؤخرًا
- (12) للاستمتاع فقط
- (13) يضع أي ضغط على
- (14) يُحبط
- (15) يستغرق في النوم

We talked about how I was feeling, and the teacher helped me to make a study plan⁽¹⁶⁾ I could follow and still get enough sleep! I now spend less time studying, but I learn more than I used to because I manage⁽¹⁷⁾ my time better and take regular breaks⁽¹⁸⁾. I always get at least eight hours sleep as well.

Presenter: Hello and welcome to this week's edition⁽¹⁾ of 'Positive Thinking'.

In the studio with us today we have psychologist⁽²⁾ and popular author George Mitchell. Hello George and welcome to the show.



George : Thank you for having me⁽³⁾. I'm very happy to be here today.

Presenter: Let's talk about your new book called 'Positive thinking is easy' which was published just last month and has already sold 30,000 copies. Congratulations⁽⁴⁾!

George : Thank you.

Presenter: So, tell me. How can I be more positive?

George : Well, there are many things we can do automatically⁽⁵⁾ so they become habits⁽⁶⁾. The first one is something I have done twice already while talking to you.

Presenter: Really? What's that?

George : Saying 'thank you'.

Presenter: Ahh, yes. So, you mean we should say 'thank you' more?

George : Well, what I mean is we should be more grateful⁽⁷⁾ for everything we have. We need to focus more on all the good things and less on the negative. For example, in one study by psychologists in American Universities two groups of students were asked to keep a diary⁽⁸⁾ and each week group one wrote a few sentences about the things they were grateful for that week and group two wrote about the things that caused them stress. After just 10 weeks the first group were more optimistic⁽⁹⁾, did more exercise and visited the doctor less!

(WB page 28)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) نسخة / طبعة
- (2) عالم نفس
- (3) تكرا علي استضافتي
- (4) مبروك
- (5) تلقائياً
- (6) عادة
- (7) ممتن / شاكر
- (8) مفكرة / يوميات
- (9) متفائل

Presenter: Wow! That reminds me of a saying my grandmother used to tell me about how some people see the glass half empty⁽¹⁰⁾ and others half full⁽¹¹⁾.

George : Your grandmother was right. We should be happy for the good things in our lives and extending⁽¹²⁾ this gratitude⁽¹³⁾ to other people will also make us feel better.

Presenter: That's an interesting point. Could you tell us more?

George : Of course. We naturally feel more positive when we are kind to others. A study in 2017 showed that being kind to others or observing⁽¹⁴⁾ others being kind improved the well-being of the participants⁽¹⁵⁾.

Presenter: Let me check I have understood. So, not only being kind to other people but also watching others being kind to other people can make you feel more positive?

George : That's right. The impact⁽¹⁶⁾ is huge. Just imagine, if you are kind to someone and a third person observes you, that's three people who immediately feel more positive and they might do something good for another person which will impact on⁽¹⁷⁾ others and so these positive feelings become contagious⁽¹⁸⁾.

Presenter: Well, George Mitchell, this conversation has been very interesting and I'm sorry to have to end it there. We have heard how our own perception⁽¹⁹⁾ of things and being grateful can make us feel more positive. I guess there is just one important thing to say and that is ... 'thank you'!

George : Thank you for having me on the show. I've really enjoyed talking to you today.

Presenter: Well, listeners. That's all we have time for today. Remember being positive all begins with how you see things. Thank you for listening and stay happy and healthy.

- (10) نصف فارغ
- (11) نصف مملوء
- (12) ينقل
- (13) امتنان / عرفان
- (14) يلاحظ
- (15) مشترك
- (16) أثر / انطباع
- (17) يؤثر في
- (18) مُعدي
- (19) إدراك / تصور

يجب أن / ينبغي أن / يفترض أن 1 Should / shouldn't + inf.

نستخدم (should/ought to + inf.) لإعطاء النصيحة المُثَبِّتة:

- You **should take** a break between work hours.
- = You **ought to take** a break between work hours.
- = I **advise you to take** a break between work hours.
- = It is **advisable that you take** a break between work hours.

نستخدم (shouldn't/oughtn't to + inf.) لإعطاء النصيحة السلبية:

- You **should not eat** much rice. (OR: shouldn't eat)
- = You **ought not to eat** much rice. (OR: oughtn't to eat)
- = I **advise you not to eat** much rice.
- = It is **inadvisable that you eat** much rice.

نستخدم (should... inf.) لطلب النصيحة:

- **Should I take** a taxi to the train station?
- **What should I do** to keep fit?

نستخدم (should + inf.) لعمل اقتراحات:

- You **should try going** on holiday; it will refresh you.

نستخدم (should + inf.) لإبداء الرأي الشخصي:

- You **should do more revision**. It will improve your understanding.
- = It is a good idea that you **do more revision**. It will improve your understanding.

لاحظ ما يلي:

- ... **should / shouldn't + inf. ...**
- You **should do** a sport to keep fit.
- You **shouldn't eat** junk food.

= ... **ought to / ought not to + inf. ...**

- You **ought to do** a sport to keep fit.
- You **ought not (oughtn't) to eat** junk food.

= ... **had better / had better not + inf. ...**

- You **'d better do** a sport to keep fit.
- You **'d better not eat** junk food.

تذكر أن:

١. الاختصار ('d) في ('d better) هو اختصار لـ (had) وليس (would):

- You **'d better take** a rest.
- = You **had better take** a rest. (NOT: would better)

٢. نفي (had better) هو (had better not) وليس (hadn't better):

- You **'d better not waste** your time. (NOT: hadn't better)

2. Should / shouldn't + have + p.p.

- عند التعبير عن الندم على شيء حدث في الماضي (past regret) أو اللوم (blame) نستخدم الصيغ التالية:

١. نستخدم الصيغ المثبتة التالية للتعبير عن اللوم أو الندم على عدم حدوث شيء كان من المفترض أن يحدث في الماضي لكنه لم يحدث:

... **should/ought to/could + have + p.p. ...**

- I **should have saved** my money.
- = I **ought to have saved** my money.
- = I **could have saved** my money.

- والمتحدث في المثال السابق يشعر بالندم على عدم إدخاره لأمواله في الماضي، فهو يريد أن يقول:

- I **didn't save** my money and **now I regret** it.
- I **regret not saving** my money.

٢. نستخدم الصيغ المنفية التالية للتعبير عن اللوم أو الندم على حدوث شيء كان من المفترض ألا يحدث في الماضي لكنه حدث:

- ... **shouldn't/oughtn't to + have + p.p. ...**

- I **shouldn't have wasted** my money.
- = I **oughtn't to have wasted** my money.

- والمتحدث في المثال السابق يشعر بالندم على تضيقه لأمواله في الماضي، فهو يريد أن يقول:
- I wasted my money and now I regret it.
- I regret wasting my money.
- لاحظ أن (could have + p.p.) تُستخدم هنا في صيغة الإثبات فقط وليس النفي لأنه يزيد
معني مختلف.
- والمتحدث هنا في المثال السابق يقول أنه كان بإمكانه الذهاب للخارج ولكنه لم يفعل.
- I could have gone out but I stayed at home.

2 يمكن أن / يُفترض أن may / might + inf.

- هناك حالات كثيرة لإستخدام (may/might + inf.) منها:

1. Possibility: present and future

التعبير عن احتمالية/إمكانية حدوث شيء في المضارع أو المستقبل:

- ... may/might/ can / could + inf.
- We might meet at Omar's wedding party.
- = We can/could meet at Omar's wedding party.
- = We will possibly meet at Omar's wedding party.
- = It is possible that we will meet at Omar's wedding party.
- Sama may help mum with the housework.
- = Sama can / could help mum with the housework.
- = Sama will probably help mum with the housework.
- = It is probable that Sama will help mum with the housework.

Remember:

What is the difference between 'may' and 'might'?

ما الفرق بين كل من 'may' و 'might' في التعبير عن الإمكانية في المضارع أو المستقبل؟
- بالرغم من التشابه الكبير بينهما في هذا الإستخدام ، فإن (may) تُستخدم للتعبير عن حدث مُرجح
طَوْنَهُ، بينما تُستخدم (might) مع حَدَثٍ إِمكَانِيَةٍ حُدُوثُهُ ضَعِيفَةٌ:

- I may go shopping.
- = I probably will go shopping.
- = It is more likely that I will go shopping.
- I might go shopping.
- = It unlikely that I will go shopping.

2. Request الطلب

- May I make a comment, Sir?
- Might I go out for a minute, please?

3. Giving Permission إعطاء الإذن / السماح لشخص بالقيام بشئ

- You may leave early, Fady.
- Sara might have half-an-hour break.

4. Making Suggestions (only might) تقديم الاقتراحات

- You might prefer to have a look at our menu.

لاحظ أن صيغة النفي السائدة من (may) هي (may not)

- Headache may not be the reason why he didn't go out with his friends.

لاحظ أن صيغة النفي من (might) هي (might not/mightn't)

- Headache might not(mightn't) be the reason why he didn't go out with his friends.

2. may/might/could + have + p.p.

Possibility: past

تُستخدم الصيغة التالية في التعبير عن احتمالية/إمكانية أن شيء ما ربما يكون قد حدث في الماضي (استنتاج يقوم علي دليل ضعيف):

- ... may/might/could + have + p.p.
- I don't know where Leen was. She may/might/could have gone shopping.
- لاحظ أن (could have + p.p.) تُستخدم هنا في صيغة الإثبات فقط.
- Hesham mightn't have remembered the time of the meeting.
(That was possible)
- Hesham couldn't have remembered the time of the meeting.
(That was impossible)
- لاحظ أن (could have + p.p.) لها استخدامين آخرين مُختلفين:
١. التعبير عن استنتاج ضعيف في الماضي بمعنى (ربما يكون قد فعل):
- Nada could have gone to bed. I am not sure.
(ربما تكون قد ذهبت للفراش.)

- = Nada may have gone to bed. I am not sure.
- = Nada might have gone to bed. I am not sure.

١. التعبير عن عدم قيام الفاعل بشيء رغم أنه كان يستطيع:
- Mr Hossam could have travelled by train, but he preferred to take the bus.
(كان يستطيع السفر بالقطار لكنه لم يفعل.)

3 can / could / be able to. يستطيع / يمكنه أن.

1. Ability : Present

- ... can + inf. (إثبات)
- Ahmed can speak English.
- ... am/is/are able to + inf. (إثبات)
- Salah is able to make a difference in tomorrow's match.
- ... can't (cannot) + inf. (نفي)
- Ahmed can't speak French.
- ... am not / isn't / aren't not able to + inf. (نفي)
- Salah isn't able to play tomorrow's match.

= ... am / is / are unable to + inf. (نفي)

- Salah is unable to play tomorrow's match.

يمكن استخدام (could + inf.) للتعبير عن القدرة في المضارع، لكنها تعني أن الفاعل لديه القدرة على القيام بالفعل لكنه لا يفعل ذلك:

- You could do much more to help poor people in your town.

2. Ability : past

- ... could + inf. (إثبات)
- Amir could fix his bike.
- ... was/were able to + inf. (إثبات)
- Amir was able to fix his bike.
- ... couldn't (could not) + inf. (نفي)
- Amir couldn't fix his bike.

- ... wasn't / weren't not able to + inf. (نفي)
- Amir wasn't able to fix his bike.

= ... was / were unable to + inf. (نفي)
- Amir was unable to fix his bike.

3. Ability: future

التعبير عن القدرة في المستقبل:

- ... will/shall be able to + inf. (إثبات)
- Yara will be able to pass the exam.
- ... won't/shan't be able to + inf. (نفي)
- Yara won't be able to pass the exam.

4. Giving Permission

إعطاء الإذن / السماح لشخص بالقيام بشيء

- ... can/could + inf. (إثبات)
- You can/could leave early, Fady. (You are allowed to leave early.)
- ... can't/couldn't + inf. (نفي)
- You can't/couldn't leave early, Fady. (You aren't allowed to leave early.)

5. Request

الطلب

- Can/Could you help me understand this lesson, mum?

6. Making suggestions

تقديم الاقتراحات

- You can/could ask your teacher for help.

1 يجب أن / من الضروري أن. must + inf.

١ لاحظ الصيغ المختلفة لجملة (must):

- We must help our parents. (إثبات)
- You mustn't be late for work. (نفي)
- Must you wear this red shirt? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- When must I hand in the report? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

٢ تُستخدم (must + inf.) للتعبير عن الالتزام الشخصي أو تذكير النفس بقوة بعمل شيء مع (I / We):

- We must buy a present for Ali's birthday.
- I must call my parents to say that I'm going to be late.

نُستخدم (must + inf.) لتوجيه الدعوة القوية (الشخص مقرب):

- You must visit me at the weekend!
- You all must come and have lunch with us.

نُستخدم (must + inf.) لإعطاء النصيحة القوية (الشخص مقرب):

- You must stop smoking!
- You must brush your teeth before you go to bed.

نُستخدم (must + inf.) للتعبير عن أنه من المهم القيام بشيء معين:

- I must study hard before my exam.
- Tarek must be quick or he will be late.

نُستخدم (must + inf.) عن الاستخدامات السابقة في المضارع والمستقبل:

- I must buy a present for my mother today.
- I must buy a present for my mother tomorrow.

لا توجد صيغة ماضي لـ (must) لكن نستخدم (had to + inf.):

- I had to buy a present for my mother yesterday.

2 يجب ألا / ممنوع أن / غير مسموح به (mustn't + inf.)

نُستخدم (mustn't + inf.) للتعبير عن الالتزام الشخصي بعدم القيام بشيء:

- I mustn't forget to post that letter.

نُستخدم (mustn't + inf.) للتعبير عن المنع أو التحريم أو عدم السماح بعمل شيء:

- You mustn't park here. It is not allowed.
- You mustn't touch the objects in the museum.

نُستخدم (mustn't + inf.) لإعطاء النصيحة القوية (الشخص مقرب):

- You mustn't smoke!

نُستخدم (mustn't + inf.) للتعبير عن أنه من المهم عدم القيام بشيء معين:

- I mustn't leave my keys inside the office again.

3 يجب أن / من الضروري أن (have to / has to + inf.)

لاحظ الصيغ المختلفة لـ (have / has + to + inf.):

He / She / It + has to + inf.

- Sama has to pay the bills on time. (إثبات)
- Ahmed doesn't have to get up early at weekends. (نفي)
- Does Rodayna have to study history at school? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- When does Leen have to finish the report? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

I / We / You / They + have to + inf.

- I have to pass the driving test to get a licence. (إثبات)
- They don't have to leave now. (نفي)
- Do we have to arrive at school before seven? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- Why do you have to work so long hours? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

نُستخدم (have / has + to + inf.) للتعبير عن الإلزام الخارجي (ليس للفاعل اختيار آخر) ويشمل ذلك الإلزام الذي تفرضه اللوائح والقوانين:

- I have to wear the school uniform.
- Employees have to be at their desks before nine.

يمكن استخدام (have / has + to + inf.) في المضارع والمستقبل:

- I have to take my driving test today.
- I have to take my driving test tomorrow.

صيغة الماضي لـ (have to / has to / must + inf.) هي (had to + inf.):

- Rokaya had to return home early. (إثبات)
- Ashraf didn't have to attend yesterday's meeting. (نفي)
- Did Reem have to do any more exercises? («سؤال بـ «هل»)
- Where did Ayman have to park his car? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

لاحظ صيغة النفي في المضارع:

do not / does not + have to + inf.

- You haven't to leave now. (X)
- You don't have to leave now. (✓)
- Sama hasn't to get up early on Friday. (X)
- Sama doesn't have to get up early on Friday. (✓)

لاحظ صيغة النفي في الماضي:

did not + have to + inf. ...

- Esraa hadn't to do the shopping. (X)

- Esraa didn't have to do the shopping. (✓)

يجب أن / من الضروري أن have / has + got to + inf.

هذه الصيغة شائعة الاستخدام بدلا من (have to / has to + inf.) في الإنجليزية البريطانية :

He / She / It + has got to + inf.

- He has got to attend today's lecture. (إثبات)

- She hasn't got to take any medicines. (نفي)

- Has he got to take extra courses? (سؤال بـ «هل»)

- When has she got to meet the manager? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

I / We / You / They + have got to + inf.

- We have got to water the trees soon. (إثبات)

- They haven't got to work at weekends. (نفي)

- Have we got to finish the project today? (سؤال بـ «هل»)

- What have I got to do to be accepted for the job? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

لاحظ صيغة النفي :

haven't / hasn't + got to + inf.

- You don't have got to leave now. (X)

- You haven't got to leave now. (✓)

لاحظ أنه لا توجد صيغة ماضي من (have / has + got to + inf.) :

- Esraa had got to do the shopping. (X)

- Esraa had to do the shopping. (✓)

يجب أن / من الضروري أن need / needs + to + inf.

تستخدم (need / needs + to + inf.) للتعبير عن الضرورة في المضارع والمستقبل :

He / She / It + needs to + inf.

- Amr needs to work hard at school to pass the exams. (إثبات)

- Nada doesn't need to do the shopping. (نفي)

- Does Omar need to carry all these books to school? (سؤال بـ «هل»)

- Why do you need to buy all these groceries? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

I / We / You / They + need to + inf.

- We need to prepare a big lunch for our guests. (إثبات)

- They don't need to pay any more money. (نفي)

- Do I need to go to the office every day? (سؤال بـ «هل»)

- When do you need to travel to Aswan? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

ليس من الضروري أن needn't + inf.

- تستخدم (needn't + inf.) للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في المضارع :

- Nada needn't do the shopping. Her mum will do it.

= Nada doesn't need to do the shopping. (Not : needn't to ...)

= Nada doesn't have to do the shopping. (Not : needn't to ...)

لم يكن من الضروري أن needn't have + p.p.

- تستخدم (needn't have + p.p.) للتعبير عن قيام الفاعل بعمل شيء في الماضي رغم أن ذلك لم يكن ضرورياً (الفاعل لم يكن يعرف أن ذلك غير ضروري) :

- I needn't have bought a newspaper. My grandpa had already bought one.

- My uncle needn't have bought me sweets. I have a box in the fridge.

- تستخدم (didn't need / have to + inf.) للتعبير عن أن الفاعل لم يقم بالفعل لأنه كان يعلم أن ذلك غير ضروري :

- It was sunny and warm, so I didn't need (have) to wear my jacket.

8 Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

يمكن التعبير عن الضرورة في المستقبل باستخدام:

- must / have to / has to / need to + inf. ...
- will + have / need + (to + inf.) ...

- I must look after my baby sister tomorrow.

- Aya has to do her best at tomorrow's interview to get the job.

= Aya will have to do her best at tomorrow's interview to get the job.

نستخدم كل من (must) و (have / has to) للتعبير عن الضرورة أو الإلزام ، ويمكن استخدام أحدهما مكان الأخرى مع اختلاف المعنى:

- You must arrive at work on time.

في المثال السابق، تفهم أن المتحدث لديه سلطة الإلزام ويمكن أن يكون المدير أو صاحب العمل.

- You have to arrive at work on time.

في المثال السابق، تفهم أن المتحدث يتكلم عن الالتزام بقانون العمل وليس بالضرورة من يملك سلطة الإلزام.

نستخدم (have / has to + inf.) للتعبير عن الالتزام بالقانون في المواقف المختلفة :

- You have to wear a helmet if you're going to ride your the motorbike.

نستخدم (must) وليس (have / has to) في كتب القانون وكذلك التعليمات المكتوبة التي توجد في أماكن العمل:

- Everyone must turn off mobile phones during duty hours.

نفضل أن نستخدم (have / has to) وليس (must) بعد الظروف:

- I really have to help my mother with the housework.

لاحظ الفرق بين (mustn't) و (don't / doesn't have to) :

- You mustn't park here.

(ممنوع أو غير مسموح لك أن تترك سيارتك هنا)

= You aren't allowed to park here.

- You don't have (need) to park here. (الست مضطراً لركن سيارتك هنا لكن يمكنك ذلك إن أردت)

= You have the choice to park here or not.

لاحظ الفرق بين (didn't have to + inf.) و (needn't have + p.p.) :

- I didn't have to buy any fruit.

(لم أشتري أي فاكهة لأن ذلك لم يكن ضرورياً)

- I needn't have bought any fruit.

(لم يكن ضرورياً أن أشتري فاكهة لكنني اشتريت)

تذكر عدم استخدام (to) بعد (needn't) :

- Sama doesn't need to get up early.

= Sama needn't get up early.

General Exercise On Language

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. You show your passport when you travel abroad.

(نموذج الوزارة الثاني - ٢٠٢٠)

- a. should b. must have c. have to d. may

2. It began to rain and there were no taxis. At last I arrive home.

- a. was able to b. couldn't c. wasn't able to d. managed

3. I walk home yesterday as I lost my money.

(دور اول - ٢٠١٩)

- a. must b. needn't have c. had to d. didn't have to

4. I'm bored at work. My dad's advice is that I try a different kind of job.

- a. might b. mustn't c. will d. should

5. You go to the bank. I can lend you some money.

(أزهر - ٢٠١٩ - عاملي)

- a. needn't to b. don't have to c. mustn't d. can't

6. We go to Al-Azhar Park tomorrow. We haven't decided yet.

- a. might b. have to c. should d. must

7. At her first school, she to wear a blue uniform.

(نموذج الوزارة الأول - ٢٠١١)

- a. had b. must c. could d. has

8. Dad said we go out for a walk after dinner.

- a. have b. need c. could d. must

9. I really phone my parents to tell them I'm going to be late home today.

(نموذج الوزارة - ٢٠١٣)

- a. need b. must c. can d. could

10. You take that bus. There's another one in ten minutes.

(نموذج الوزارة - ٢٠١٥)

- a. don't have to b. mustn't c. can't d. don't need

11. Penguins are birds that fly.

- a. could not b. cannot c. may not d. should not

12. I take extra English lessons. I'm fluent in it.

- a. have got to b. haven't to c. needn't d. mustn't

13. Kareema and Hany go shopping yesterday because the shops were all closed.

- a. shouldn't b. can't c. couldn't d. mightn't

14. In a hospital, one
 a. mustn't smoke b. needn't smoke
 c. needn't have smoked d. doesn't have to smoke
15. Peter is a keen musician. He plays the flute and he also play the piano.
 a. could b. can c. was able to d. managed to
16. You arrive at work an hour earlier tomorrow.
 a. have got b. will need c. had to d. have to
17. Don't forget that I'm your employer. You take my permission before you leave work.
 a. have to b. must c. needn't d. has to
18. She arrive at the meeting on time, even after missing the bus, so she was very happy.
 a. wasn't able to b. couldn't c. can't d. was able to
19. A driver hold a valid driving licence.
 a. had to b. needs c. must d. will have to
20. He's amazing. He speak seven languages, including Turkish.
 a. could b. can c. can't d. was able to
21. You come and visit us again soon. It's ages since we saw you.
 a. needn't b. need c. mustn't d. must
22. Employees be on time for work.
 a. must b. mustn't c. needn't d. have to
23. I searched for your house for hours. Luckily, I find it in the end.
 a. can b. am able to c. could never d. was able to
24. Sama may try on a few different sizes.
 a. has to b. have to c. must d. had to
25. Do you work next weekend?
 a. must b. need c. had to d. have to
26. Drivers remember to signal when they turn.
 a. mustn't b. must c. has to d. had to
27. You your membership card or you won't be allowed in.
 a. have to show b. must show c. need have shown d. needn't show
28. you get me some sugar, please?
 a. Need b. Have c. Must d. Could

29. If I want to start this year, I apply by the end of next week.
 a. had to b. have to c. should d. shouldn't
30. She play the piano. She has never studied it.
 a. isn't able to b. can't c. didn't manage to d. didn't succeed in
31. My parents say I always tell them where I'm going and who I'm going with.
 a. must b. mustn't c. must be d. must to
32. We have plenty of time. We hurry.
 a. mustn't b. needn't c. must d. had to

II Special Cases

33. My flat is tidy. I bother myself to get it cleaned today.
 a. needn't b. mustn't c. don't have d. must
34. I travelled by train, but I by car.
 a. might have travelled b. could travel
 c. could have travelled d. can travel
35. The meal was for free today. You for it. You should have saved your money.
 a. didn't need to pay b. didn't have to pay
 c. needn't have paid d. needn't pay
36. Mona hasn't decided yet, but she study Chinese.
 a. might b. must c. will d. can
37. A : we have eggs or beans for breakfast tomorrow?
 B : You suggest.
 a. Should b. Might c. Need d. Could
38. Oh, no! You all that meat. Now, how can I find a space for it in the freezer?
 a. didn't have to buy b. needn't have bought
 c. didn't need to buy d. mustn't buy
39. We be sensitive to and respectful of people's differences.
 a. might b. need c. could d. should

40. I always take my father's permission before I go out. That's a family rule.
a. have to b. must c. need d. mustn't
41. you make that noise? It really is annoying.
a. Can b. Could c. Must d. Might
42. At my sports club, everyone wear flat shoes. It's an important rule.
a. has to b. should c. can d. could
43. A: I failed my math class. B: It was your fault. You Ann to help you with your math.
a. could ask b. should ask c. may ask d. could have asked
44. You can borrow my new jacket but you get it dirty.
a. have to b. mustn't c. don't have to d. haven't to
45. Rody isn't here right now but she home around eight or so.
a. might be b. can't be c. might have been d. may have been
46. A: Did you make your bed?
B: No, I The housekeeper did that.
a. needn't to b. didn't have to c. shouldn't have d. won't have
47. You leave your clothes all over the floor like this again, Ahmed.
a. needn't b. don't have to c. have to d. mustn't
48. You do more exercises. It's up to you.
a. have to b. need to c. mustn't d. don't need to
49. The lights are still on. Hoda to turn them off.
a. may forget b. might have forgotten c. might forget d. should forget
50. He the car with petrol before he set off.
a. must fill b. shouldn't have filled c. ought to have filled d. should fill
51. I clean the kitchen before mum gets back. I want to surprise her.
a. must b. have to c. need to d. have got to
52. Why did you stay at hotel when you were in London? You with your uncle.
a. could stay b. managed to stay c. could have stayed d. should stay

53. Sorry, I can't go out now. I tidy up my room before I'm allowed out.
a. must b. have to c. need have d. had to

III Check your understanding

54. "It is not necessary for you to offer help." This means
a. you mustn't offer help. b. you must offer help.
c. you shouldn't offer help. d. you needn't offer help.
55. "You are not allowed to smoke here." This means
a. you mustn't smoke here. b. you don't have to smoke here.
c. you are obliged to smoke here. d. a & c
56. "He unnecessarily bought some fruit." What does this mean?
a. He had to buy some fruit.
b. He needn't have bought more fruit.
c. He needn't buy more fruit.
d. b & c
57. "I don't have to answer this question." This means
a. I haven't to answer this question.
b. I needn't answer this question.
c. I haven't got to answer this question.
d. b & c
58. "She hasn't got to prepare lunch." What does this mean?
a. She hasn't to prepare lunch. b. She hadn't to prepare lunch.
c. She doesn't have to prepare lunch. d. She has to prepare lunch.
59. "You can't break the law." This means
a. you have to break the law. b. you don't have to follow the law.
c. you have to follow the law. d. you don't have to break the law.
60. "It was necessary for me to leave." I mean that
a. I had to stay. b. I had to leave.
c. I have to stay. d. I have to leave.
61. "Taking photos here is banned." This means
a. you mustn't take photos here. b. you must take photos here.
c. you can take photos here. d. you needn't take photos here.
62. "It is important that I call mum." This means
a. I have to call mum. b. I had to call mum.
c. I must call mum. d. I can call mum.

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة، لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Derivatives المفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية والمشتقات

angrily(adv)	بغضب	proof(n)	دليل - برهان
badly(adv)	بشكل سيئ	property(n)	عقارات
benefactor(n)	متبرع / مُتَصَدِّق	quietly(adv)	بههدوء
expectations(n)	أحلام - تطلعات	slowly(adv)	ببطء
from now on	من الآن فصاعداً	strangely(adv)	بشكل غريب
hammer(n)	شاكوش - مطرقة	suspect(ed) (v)	يشكبه في - يشك
immediately(adv)	حالا	to be worth the	يستحق ما يُبذل من جهد
my heart is set on	عازم - مُصمَّم	effort	
privately(adv)	سراً	upset(adj)	مُنزعج

2 Definitions تعريفات

لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيداً، فهي موضع امتحان.

تنويه

benefactor(n) متبرع / مُتَصَدِّق	- a person who gives someone money to help them improve their life
expectations(n) أحلام - تطلعات	- feelings that good things will happen
from now on من الآن فصاعداً	- an action that starts at a specific مُحدَّد point in time and continues into the future
hammer(n) شاكوش	- a tool with a heavy piece of metal at the end of a long handle مقبض
my heart is set on عازم - مُصمَّم	- when you really want something or want to do something
proof(n) دليل - برهان	- an object or some information that shows something is true

property(n) عقارات / أملاك	- a building that belongs to you
suspect(ed) (v) يشك - يشبه في - يشك	- to think that something is probably true, especially something bad
to be worth the effort يستحق ما يُبذل من جهد	- something that is useful or good but difficult to do
upset(adj) مُتزعج	unhappy and worried because of something unpleasant غير سار or disappointing مُحْزِن

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- are feelings that good things will happen.
a. Expectations b. Hammers c. Proofs d. Properties
- You say '.....' when you really want something or want to do something.
a. to be worth the effort b. from now on
c. my heart is set on d. Upset
- To is to think that someone is probably guilty of a crime.
a. adapt b. suspect c. upset d. remain
- A/An is a tool with a heavy piece of metal at the end of a long handle.
a. expectation b. hammer c. proof d. injury
- We say '.....' to describe an action that starts at a specific point in time and continues into the future.
a. to be worth the effort b. from now on
c. my heart was set on d. upset
- A/An is a person who gives someone money to help them improve their life.
a. astronaut b. astronomer c. counsellor d. benefactor
- A/An is an object or some information that shows something is true.
a. expectation b. hammer c. proof d. property
- We say something when it is useful or good, but difficult to do.
a. is worth the effort b. is from now on
c. my heart was set on d. is upset

- A/An is a building that belongs to you.
a. expectation b. injury c. proof d. property
- means unhappy and worried because something unpleasant or disappointing has happened.
a. To be worth the effort b. To be from now on
c. My heart was set on d. Upset

Part II

Skills

المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات في ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة علي حدة.

تأليف

- Choose the best Arabic translation :

- Stress and anxiety are common experiences for most people. In fact, 70% of adults say they feel stress or anxiety daily.
أ. التوتر والقلق من التجارب الشائعة لمعظم الناس، ففي الواقع يقول ٧٠٪ من البالغين أنهم يشعرون بالتوتر أو القلق.
ب. التوتر والقلق من التجارب الشائعة لمعظم الناس، ففي الواقع يقول ٧٠٪ من البالغين أنهم يشعرون بالتوتر والقلق يوميًا.
ج. التوتر والقلق من التجارب الشائعة لمعظم الناس، ففي الواقع يقول ٧٠٪ من البالغين أنهم يشعرون بالتوتر أو القلق يوميًا.
د. التوتر والقلق من التجارب الشائعة لمعظم الناس، ففي الواقع يقول ٧٠٪ من المراهقين أنهم يشعرون بالتوتر أو القلق يوميًا.
- I should have done my best when it was not so late, but it is no use crying over spilt milk.
أ. يجب أن أبذل قصارى جهدي عندما لم يكن الوقت متأخرًا، لكن لا فائدة من البكاء على اللبن المسكوب.
ب. كان يجب أن أبذل قصارى جهدي في الوقت المناسب، لكن لا فائدة من البكاء على اللبن المسكوب.
ج. كان يجب أن أبذل الأفضل في الوقت المناسب، لكن لا فائدة من البكاء على اللبن المسكوب.
د. كان يجب أن أبذل أدني جهدي في الوقت المناسب، لكن لا فائدة من البكاء على اللبن المسكوب.
- Not only are you physically affected by burnout, but your mental health is badly affected as well.
أ. إنك لا تتأثر جسديًا بالإرهاق فحسب، بل تتأثر أيضًا صحتك العقلية بشدة.
ب. إنك لم تتأثر بالإرهاق جسديًا فحسب، بل تتأثر أيضًا صحتك العقلية بشدة.
ج. إنك لن تتأثر بالإرهاق جسديًا فحسب، بل أيضًا صحتك العقلية تتأثر بشدة.
د. إنك لا تتأثر بالإرهاق جسديًا فحسب، بل أيضًا صحتك العقلية تتأثر بشدة.

4. It might seem contradictory, but putting physical stress on your body through exercise can relieve mental stress.

أ. قد يبدو الأمر متناقضاً، لكن ممارسة الضغط البدني على جسدك من خلال ممارسة الرياضة يمكن أن يخفف الضغط النفسي.

ب. قد يبدو الأمر متناقضاً، لكن ممارسة الضغط البدني على جسدك من خلال ممارسة الرياضة يمكن أن يخفف الضغط النفسي.

ج. قد يبدو الأمر متناقضاً، لكن ممارسة التوتر البدني على جسدك من خلال ممارسة الرياضة يمكن أن يخفف الضغط النفسي.

د. يبدو الأمر متناقضاً، لذلك ممارسة الضغط البدني على جسدك من خلال ممارسة الرياضة يمكن أن يخفف الضغط النفسي.

● ② Choose the best English translation :

أ. قد تتأثر صحتك النفسية بشدة كنتيجة مباشرة للإرهاك في العمل دون الحصول على قدر كاف من الراحة.

a. Your mental health may be severely affected as a direct result of being overworked without getting enough rest.

b. Your mental health might be severely affected as a direct result of being overworked without getting enough rest.

c. Your mental health will be severely affected as a direct result of being overworked without getting enough rest.

d. a & b

أ. كان يجب ألا تتناول ذلك الكم الكبير من الطعام في وجبة العشاء، فالمعدة بيت الداء.

a. You should not eat that much food at dinner, because the stomach is the home of disease.

b. You should not have eaten that much food at dinner, because the stomach is the home of disease.

c. You could not have eaten that much food at dinner, because the stomach is the home of disease.

d. You might not have eaten that much food at dinner, because the stomach is the home of disease.

٣. إن الإجهاد الشديد الذي يتعرض له طلاب المدارس الثانوية يُمكن أن يترك أثراً سيئاً على صحتهم النفسية.

a. The extreme stress that high school students are exposed to has a bad effect on their mental health.

b. The extreme stress that high school students are exposed to have a bad effect on their mental health.

c. The extreme stress that high school students are exposed to might have a bad effect on their mental health.

d. The extreme stress that high school students are exposed to can be had a bad effect on their mental health.

٤. لقد كان بمقدوري أن أسافر بالطائرة من أسوان إلى القاهرة، لكنني فضلت السفر بالقطار.

a. I could have travelled by plane from Aswan to Cairo, but I preferred to travel by train.

b. I should have travelled by plane from Aswan to Cairo, but I preferred to travel by train.

c. I must have travelled by plane from Aswan to Cairo, but I preferred to travel by train.

d. I can't have travelled by plane from Aswan to Cairo, but I preferred to travel by train.

احرص على اقتناء



EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

للف الثالث الثانوي

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

امنح نفسك له يستحق

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Working for several hours without a break is something
a. exhausted b. stressful c. stressed d. frustrated
2. It is the policy of the company to the quality of our products as much as possible.
a. consider b. scold c. improve d. clear off
3. In this hotel, rooms are available in five price
a. burnouts b. managements c. messages d. categories
4. To is to push out your lower lip because you are annoyed or unhappy.
a. pout b. frown c. scold d. suppose
5. Taking a rest will make you good.
a. follow b. feel c. try d. cause
6. "The fresh air of the countryside improved his health". We can replace the verb 'improved' in this context with
a. made ... better b. enhanced c. a & b d. got better
7. She was about her safety when her car broke down on a dark area of the road.
a. anxious b. external c. positive d. negative
8. "Your influence on your children is clear". The word 'influence' in this sentence is a/an
a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb
9. Outside prison, criminals are control.
a. out b. out of c. in d. under
10. Tom doesn't feel good. I think he a doctor.
a. should see b. might see c. can't see d. couldn't see
11. You to get more practice if you want to pass your driving test.
a. must b. need c. could d. had to
12. The doctor get here as soon as he can.
a. had to b. didn't have to c. must d. mustn't

13. If you are an employee, you before leaving work.
a. have to b. had to c. must d. mustn't
14. He went by bus but he in his car.
a. could go b. could have gone c. must have gone d. needn't have to go
15. You have to pay a fine. You so fast.
a. mustn't have driven b. needn't drive c. should have driven d. shouldn't have driven
16. Ahmed, let's that film. It is boring.
a. watch b. to watch c. not watch d. watching

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Everyone has one hobby or another. Of all hobbies, I do believe that reading is the simplest and most useful. How can we increase the benefits of reading and make it easier?

I think that we should start a book club for secondary and university students in our town. We could read both Arabic and English books. We could have meetings every week or two in the summer, and once a month during the school year.

Here are the reasons for which I think we should have book clubs. First, if we have a book club, it will encourage us to read more. It is known that if people read a lot, they write better. So, this will help us in two ways. Secondly, we will develop some responsibility if we take turns leading the discussion at meetings. The leader will have to read the book carefully. Thirdly, discussing books will help us to overcome any shyness. Everyone will have to say something.

Reading good books will be a better way to use our time than playing computer games or reading comic books. Don't you agree with me?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The best title for this passage is
a. Merits of Joining Book Clubs
b. Reading Becomes Useless
c. Disadvantages of joining book clubs
d. People are no longer interested in reading

18. What psychological effect does membership in book clubs have?
 a. It helps members to get over their shyness.
 b. It helps to decrease leadership responsibilities.
 c. It helps members to write better.
 d. It helps people to be lonely
19. According to the passage, the word "overcome" means
 a. surrender b. give up c. defeat d. lose
20. After reading the passage, what type of books does the writer think less useful?
 a. Science books b. Adventure books
 c. Fiction books d. Comic books
21. What happens if people read a lot?
 a. They join book clubs. b. They learn to write better.
 c. They can't lead a discussion. d. They are very shy.
22. The writer thinks that
 a. book clubs encourage reading
 b. book clubs distribute books
 c. readers should read books only
 d. readers should not make discussions
23. is a good way for spending time.
 a. Reading b. Fighting c. Disagreement d. Meetings
24. The first paragraph deals with
 a. the importance of book clubs
 b. the benefits of reading alone
 c. many hobbies are better than reading.
 d. the advantages of reading

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I am one of those people who are not for spending too much of our money on the study of space. I don't mean that we should stop studying space, of course. I only want to direct some of the much money spent on space research to studying other fields and places that I think are much more important and profitable.

We spend billions of dollars to study the sun and distant stars. We should stop this and study the oceans instead. They cover nearly 70% of the earth.

Oceanography is more important than space science. It researches processes that directly affect our lives. For example, we release tonnes of waste into the oceans every year.

Oceanographers, who specialise in various fields, can tell us the results of pollution on marine life, on the chemistry of the seas and on the currents (movement of water) that affect climate.

We know that in different parts of the seas, distinctive forms of life have evolved. There are even living things that do not depend on the sun for energy! Maybe we can learn something useful by studying them. There are vast areas of the oceans, especially in the deepest water, that are unexplored. This is where we should be researching, not the stars.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

25. What is the main idea of the passage?
 a. Studying space is a waste of time
 b. Studying oceans and seas is more useful than studying space.
 c. Studying deep seas is useful.
 d. Saving money is necessary.
26. If we study oceans,
 a. we may explore more about marine life
 b. we may pollute the environments
 c. they can be distinctive
 d. they can be unprofitable
27. Which areas of seas and oceans do you think are impossible to study?
 a. Shallow areas b. Remote areas c. Challenger deep d. Warm water
28. Oceanography researches
 a. processes that directly affect our life
 b. chemistry of stars
 c. stars and deepwater
 d. processes that do not affect our life
29. It can be inferred from the writer's words that
 a. much money is spent on the study of oceans and seas.
 b. a lot of research is done on marine life.
 c. studying space is more important than the study of marine life.
 d. we should spend more money on studying oceans and seas.

30. Which of the following sentences is the writer's comparative point?

- a. Studying oceans is more profitable than studying space.
- b. Studying oceans is as important as studying space.
- c. Studying space is more profitable than studying oceans.
- d. Studying space is as important as studying any stars.

31. The last paragraph deals with

- a. different marine lives
- b. exploring space is useless
- c. studying oceanography
- d. saving money to explore the space

32. According to the passage,

- a. the writer supports exploring space because of its great benefits.
- b. oceanography is the solution for all people's problems on earth.
- c. the writer doesn't refuse exploring space completely.
- d. exploring space provides much money for humanity to explore oceans.

A. Choose the best Arabic translation :

33. Food for all is the major problem of the world today because a hungry world is never likely to be a peaceful one.

أ. إن توفير الغذاء للجميع هو المشكلة الرئيسية في العالم اليوم لأن العالم الجائع لابد أن يكون عالماً يسوده السلام.

ب. إن توفير الغذاء للجميع هو المشكلة الرئيسية في العالم اليوم، لأن العالم الجائع لا يُنتظر أن يكون عالماً يسوده السلام.

ج. إن غذاء الجميع هو المشكلة الثانوية في العالم اليوم لأن العالم الجائع لن يكون عالماً مسالماً.

د. إن الغذاء للجميع هو المشكلة الرئيسية في العالم اليوم لأن العالم الجائع لا يحتمل أن يكون عالماً لا يسوده السلام.

34. In the rainy season, there is plenty of water. The dams store it for use during the dry months.

أ. يكون هناك فيضاً من المياه في موسم الأمطار فتتمرها السدود لاستخدامها خلال أشهر الجفاف.

ب. يكون هناك فائضاً من المياه في موسم الأمطار فتخزنها السدود لاستخدامها خلال أشهر الجفاف.

ج. يكون هناك فائضاً من المياه في موسم الأمطار فتخزنها السدود لتخزينها خلال أشهر الجفاف.

د. يكون هناك فائضاً من المياه في موسم الجفاف فتخزنها السدود لاستخدامها خلال أشهر الأمطار.

B. Choose the best English translation :

٣٥. يقدم العلماء الجديد كل يوم لخدمة البشرية، لذلك فنحن جميعاً مدينون لهم بالكثير من الفضل.

a. Every day new scholars provide service to humanity, so we owe them a lot of credit.

b. Every day, scientists provide new services to humanity, so we all owe them a lot of credit.

c. Everyday, scientists provide new services to humanity, so we all owe them a lot of credit.

d. Every day, scientists provide new services to humanity, so we all own them a lot of credit.

٣٦. العدالة من أهم القيم الأساسية الموجودة في النظم الاجتماعية في جميع الدول التي تحمي الحريات وحقوق الإنسان.

a. Justice that protect freedom and human rights is one of the most fundamental values found in the social systems of all countries.

b. Justice is the most fundamental value found in social systems in all countries that protect freedoms and observe human rights.

c. Justice is one of the most fundamental values found in the social systems of all countries that protect freedom and human rights.

d. Justice is one of the most fundamental values found in the social systems of all countries that predict freedom and human rights.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

37. Which of the following sentences has the correct punctuation?

a. As I was walking by the Nile; the moon rose.

b. As I was walking by the Nile. The moon rose.

c. As I was walking by the Nile, the moon rose.

d. As I was walking by the Nile; then, the moon rose.

38. A essay draws pictures through words.

a. narrative b. persuasive c. expository d. descriptive

39. Which of these is used between sentences which are grammatically independent?

a. apostrophe b. Colon c. Comma d. Hyphen

40. To sign into your account, you will need your and password.

a. username b. title c. address d. CV

General Exercises for Al Azhar students on Unit 4

تأنيده

للمزيد من
التدريبات للأزهر
الشريف - بنك
الأسئلة

1. Finish the following dialogue :

Omar is talking with Bill about his visit to Egypt.

Omar : Hello, Bill. (1)

Bill : Hello, Omar. Yes, I do enjoy it so much.

Omar : (2)

Bill : The Egyptian Museum, The Pyramids, Cairo Tower.

Omar : (3)

Bill : I liked it very much. The Egyptian dishes are delicious. By the way, what is Koshari made of ?

Omar : (4)

2. Write a paragraph of one hundred and twenty (120) words on :

“How to avoid burnout”

3. Translate into Arabic :

- It is no longer true that learning stops as we all need to acquire new skills in this ever-changing world.

4. Translate into English :

- لقد أصبح من الضروري أن تنمى مهاراتك باستمرار لتبقى مطلوبًا في سوق العمل.

5. Answer the following question : (Islamic Selections)

- Why did the Muslim immigrants have to leave Mecca? (الأزهر - أدبي ٢٠٢١)

• اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
• المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

catch up(phr. v)	يواكب/يساير - يلحق	IT= information technology(n)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
catch up with your work	تلحق بعملك	mute(d) (v/adj)	يكتم/يُصمت - صامت
install(ed) (v)	يُثبَّت/يُنصَّب (برنامج)	mute the microphone	يكتم الميكروفون
install a software	يُنصَّب برنامج	switch(ed) (n/v)	مفتاح تشغيل - يُبدَّل
join(ed) (v)	ينضم إلى	switch ... on(phr. v)	يُشغَّل
join a virtual meeting	ينضم لإجتماع افتراضي	switch ... off(phr. v)	يُوقَف/يُطفئ
leave - left(v)	يغادر/يترك	turn ... up(phr. v)	يرفع (الصوت مثلاً)
leave a virtual meeting	يغادر إجتماع افتراضي	turn ... down(phr. v)	يُخفِّض (الصوت) - يرفض
look into(phr. v)	يتحقق من - يُحقِّق في	share(d) (v/n)	يُشارك - مشاركة - نصيب/حصة
look into possibilities	يبحث عن امكانية	share a screen	يشارك شاشة

2 Important Vocabulary

advent(n)	مجيء - ظهور	interviewee(n)	ضيف الحوار/المُحوَّار
ancestors(n)	أجداد - أسلاف	interviewer(n)	المُحوَّار
application(n)	طلب انضمام/تطبيق	labour market(n)	سوق العمل
apply(ied) (v)	يتقدم بطلب - يُطبَّق	logical(n)	منطقي
average(n)	متوسط - مُعدل	microphone(n)	ميكروفون
by accident	بالصدفة/عن غير قصد	plug(ged) (v)	يُوصَّل (بالكهرباء/ بجهاز)
cause(d) (n/v)	سبب - يُسبَّب	plus(conj.)	بالإضافة إلى ذلك
check(ed) (v)	يتحقق من	position(n)	وظيفة - مكانة
check-out(n)	مُحصَّل	possibility(n)	إمكانية / احتمالية

clarification(n)
colleague(n)
conference call(n)
connection(n)
consequence(n)
contact(ed) (v/n)
debate(n)
decline(d) (n/v)

delay(ed) (n/v)
destroy(ed) (v)
emerge(d) (n)
forum(n)
instant(adj)
interpersonal(adj)

التوضيح
زميل عمل
مكالمة جماعية
اتصال
نتيجة
يتصل به - اتصال / تواصل
مناظرة / نقاش
انخفاض / نقص - انهيار
- ينخفض
تأخير - يؤخر
يُدمر
يظهر / يبرز
مُنندي
فوري - لحظي
شخص / بشري

prediction(n)
promise(d) (v/n)
realise(d) (v)
respond(ed) (v)
risk(ed) (v/n)
schedule(n)
seem(ed) (v)
significant(adj)
software(n)
suit(ed) (v)
technical(adj)
trend(n)
user-friendly(adj)
version(n)
virtual(adj)
welfare(n)

نبوءة - توقع
وعد
يشارك / يستوعب
مخاطرة
يخطر به - مخاطر
جدول الأعمال
يبدو
ملحوظ / كبير
برنامج
بأسب / يتصلح ل
تنتهي / فني
زوجة / نزعة
سهل الاستخدام
نسخة / إصدار
التراضي
ازدهار - راحة

3 Definitions تعريفات

catch up with(phr. v) يوافق / يساير	to improve and reach the same standard as other people in your class, group etc. يستوي
catch up with(phr. v) يلحق به	to come from behind and reach someone in front of you by going faster
install(ed) (v) يُنصَّب / يُضَب	to add new software to a computer so that it is ready to be used
IT= information technology(n) تكنولوجيا المعلومات	the study or use of electronic processes and equipment for storing information and making it available عمليات تخزين المعلومات
join(ed) (v) ينضم إلي	to begin to take part in an activity that other people are involved in
look into(phr. v) يبحث عن / يفتش في	to try to find out the truth about a problem, crime etc. in order to solve it
mute(d)(v/adj) يكنم / يُصمت - صامت	to make the sound of something quieter, or make it disappear completely

share(d) (v) يُشارك	to have or use something with other people
switch ... off(phr. v) يُوقِف / يُطفئ	to turn off a machine, light, radio etc. using a switch مفتاح
switch ... on(phr. v) يُشغِّل	to turn on a machine, light, radio etc. using a switch
turn ... down(phr. v) يُخفِّض (الصوت/ الحرارة ...)	to turn the switch on a machine such as an oven, radio etc. so that it produces less heat, sound etc.
turn ... up(phr. v) يرفع (الصوت / الحرارة ...)	to turn a switch on a machine such as an oven, radio etc. so that it produces more heat, sound etc.

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Key & Important vocabulary

- If you want this app to perform better, the latest updates.
a. plug b. install c. destroy d. share
- Would you kindly the sound until I have finished my call?
a. respond b. apply c. install d. mute
- About 500 new members El-Moasser page on Facebook every day.
a. download b. suit c. join d. share
- "Use this switch to turn the machine on". In this sentence, 'switch' is a/an
a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. adjective
- Give me some time to possible solutions to the problem.
a. plug in b. look into c. delay d. decline
- It would be very difficult to if you missed two weeks of school.
a. catch up b. catch up with c. contact d. decline
- It would be very difficult to your school work if you missed two weeks of school.
a. catch up b. catch up with c. contact d. decline
- before you go to bed.
a. Turn the TV up b. Switch the TV off
c. Switch on the TV d. b & c

9. I can hardly hear you.
 a. Turn the TV up
 b. Switch the TV on
 c. Switch on the TV
 d. Turn down the TV
10. "Egypt's share in the Nile water can't be approached". The word 'share' here is a/an
 a. noun
 b. verb
 c. adverb
 d. adjective
11. I can hardly hear what is being said by the guests of my favourite programme.
 a. Turn the TV up
 b. Switch the TV off
 c. Switch on the TV
 d. Turn down the TV
12. You can't have access to your Facebook account on your mobile unless you a Facebook application.
 a. respond
 b. apply
 c. install
 d. mute

2 Important Vocabulary

13. Your ID is an important that you can't do without. *تستغني عنها*
 a. version
 b. IT
 c. document
 d. application
14. Don't expect to get a/an response. I will take my time to decide.
 a. instant
 b. virtual
 c. technical
 d. interpersonal
15. Parents are responsible for the of their children.
 a. forum
 b. space
 c. welfare
 d. interviewee
16. With this amount of experience, skills and qualifications, you are really to the job.
 a. downloaded
 b. suited
 c. joined
 d. shared
17. I the printer cable into one of the USB ports of my laptop.
 a. plugged
 b. installed
 c. destroyed
 d. shared
18. This online game puts you in a/an war environment. You feel as if you are a warrior in an actual fight.
 a. instant
 b. virtual
 c. technical
 d. interpersonal
19. "My mother calls me twice a day to make sure I'm all right". Here, 'calls' is a/an
 a. noun
 b. verb
 c. adverb
 d. adjective
20. I am going to apply for a lecturer advertised on El-Moasser Website.
 a. conference
 b. clarification
 c. possibility
 d. position

21. I bought a genuine of Windows 11.
 a. version
 b. IT
 c. document
 d. application
22. The product delivery has been because of drivers' strike. *إضراب*
 a. plugged in
 b. looked into
 c. delayed
 d. declined
23. The officer his life to rescue the kidnapped child.
 a. caught up
 b. caught up with
 c. contacted
 d. risked
24. The point still needs more Not all students have understood it.
 a. conference
 b. clarification
 c. possibility
 d. position
25. My headache well to this medicine.
 a. responds
 b. applies
 c. installs
 d. mutes
26. I don't expect he will this generous offer.
 a. plug in
 b. look into
 c. delay
 d. decline
27. I run an online which helps language learners.
 a. forum
 b. space
 c. welfare
 d. interviewee
28. Teamwork needs a high level of skills. You need to have a good relationship with other team members.
 a. instant
 b. virtual
 c. technical
 d. interpersonal
29. I intend to attend the medical held in the Hilton.
 a. conference
 b. clarification
 c. possibility
 d. position
30. "I was busy messaging some clients". The word 'messaging' in this utterance is a/an
 a. noun
 b. verb
 c. adverb
 d. adjective
31. Stress may your mental health.
 a. plug
 b. install
 c. destroy
 d. share
32. Mental health problems are a direct of stressful work life.
 a. colleague
 b. consequence
 c. software
 d. study
33. To this 20-gigabyte file quickly, you need a fast internet connection.
 a. download
 b. suit
 c. join
 d. share
34. When the noun "....." means a formal request for something such as a job, it can't be replaced with "app".
 a. version
 b. position
 c. document
 d. application

35. Give children their own to choose and decide.
a. forum b. space c. welfare d. interviewee
36. Give me an objective solution that can easily be
a. responded b. applied c. installed d. muted
37. I was visited by three of my when I was ill.
a. colleagues b. consequences c. softwares d. studies
38. Just me if something goes wrong.
a. catch up b. catch up with c. contact d. decline
39. You can get technical support on our website". 'Support' is used here as a/an
a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. adjective
40. They are looking into the of starting a new branch of the bank here in our town.
a. conference b. clarification c. possibility d. position
41. Make sure that the loud speakers are
a. plugged in b. looked into c. delayed d. declined

3 Definitions

42. To is to turn a machine, light, radio etc. off using a switch.
a. switch ... on b. switch ... off c. look into d. set off
43. To is to begin to take part in an activity that other people are involved in.
a. join b. mute c. share d. install
44. To is to come from behind and reach someone in front of you by going faster.
a. switch ... on b. switch ... off c. look into d. catch up with
45. To is to make the sound of something quieter, or make it disappear completely.
a. join b. mute c. share d. install
46. To is to turn a machine, light, radio etc. on using a switch.
a. switch ... on b. switch ... off c. look into d. depend on
47. To is to have or use something with other people.
a. join b. mute c. share d. install
48. To is to turn a switch on a machine such as an oven, radio etc. so that it produces more heat, sound etc.
a. switch ... on b. turn ... up c. switch ... off d. turn ... down

49. To is to turn the switch on a machine such as an oven, radio etc. so that it produces less heat, sound etc.
a. switch ... on b. turn ... up c. switch ... off d. turn ... down
50. To is to add new software to a computer so that it is ready to be used.
a. join b. mute c. share d. install
51. To is to try to find out the truth about a problem, crime etc in order to solve it.
a. switch ... on b. switch ... off c. look into d. catch up with
52. is the study or use of electronic processes and equipment for storing information and making it available.
a. AI b. IT c. PhD d. M3ak

Part II Vocabulary Study

سأعزفك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد.

تنويه

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

catch	up with	تلتحق بـ / تُسائر	look	into possibilities	يُدرّس إمكانيات
cause	a change	يُسبب تغييراً	lose	the race	يخسر السباق
check	the internet connection	يتحقق من الإتصال بالإنترنت	mute	the microphone	يكتم الميكروفون
do	a project	يقوم بدراسة/بحث	offer	a position	يمنح/يعرض وظيفة
email	the information	يرسل المعلومات عن طريق البريد الإلكتروني	share	screen	يُشارك الشاشة
	the students	يراسل الطلاب عن طريق البريد الإلكتروني	show	a decline in	يُظهر وجود نقص في
feel	positive	لديه شعور بالإيجابية	stay	in touch with	يبقى على تواصل مع
have	a memory of	يتذكّر	study	... to a very high level	يُدرّس حتى مستوي مُتقدّم ...
	control over	لديه تحكّم في		control of	يتحكّم في
	a problem with	لديه مشكلة في	take	control of	يُخبر ... بأن يقوم بـ
	virtual meetings	لديه اجتماع افتراضي	tell	... to do	

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- In a conference call, you won't be heard if you the microphone.
a. turn b. install c. mute d. join
- To your screen with another device or multiple devices, you need to install a particular software.
a. share b. feel c. take d. look
- A fast internet connection helps you up with your work.
a. tell b. offer c. do d. catch
- The software on your mobile needs to be updated every now and then.
a. turned b. installed c. muted d. joined
- Please, me what to do if I am in a place where there is no internet service.
a. tell b. offer c. do d. catch
- Before you agree with an idea, first into its possibilities of success.
a. share b. feel c. take d. look
- The virtual meeting I discussed how to relieve work pressure.
a. turned b. installed c. muted d. joined
- We're a project about the best application of smart technology.
a. telling b. offering c. doing d. catching
- I positive about the success of my brother.
a. share b. feel c. take d. switch
- When I the sound up, I saw that there was a blaming look on my father's face.
a. turned b. installed c. muted d. a & c

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
install(ed) (v)	يُنْصَبُ/يُنْصَبُ (برنامج)
install(ed) (v)	يُرْكَبُ/يُنْصَبُ (جهاز)
look into (phr. v)	يتحقق من - يُحَقِّقُ فِي
mute (adj)	صامت
switch	يُغَيِّرُ/يُتَغَيَّرُ/يُتَبَدَّلُ
switch ... on (phr. v)	يُشْغِلُ
	set up
	put - position
	investigate/ explore/ research
	silent / very low
	change
	turn ... on (phr. v)

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
install(ed) (v)	يُنْصَبُ/يُنْصَبُ (برنامج)
join(ed) (v)	يُنْصَبُ إِلَى
turn/ switch ... off (phr. v)	يُوقِفُ/يُطْفِئُ
	remove/uninstall
	leave
	turn/switch ... on (phr. v)
	يزيل
	يغادر/يترك
	يُشْغِلُ/يُوقِفُ

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- "You need to install an anti-virus software". In this sentence, we can replace 'install' with
a. remove b. uninstall c. a & b d. set up
- "The microphone is mute". The word 'mute' in this sentence is the synonym of
a. silence b. silent c. loud d. high
- Mr Ayman said, "Switch the air conditioners off before you leave the office, Fady". Mr Ayman wanted Fady to turn the air conditioners
a. down b. up c. off d. into
- "I joined the meeting". The verb 'joined' in this context is the antonym of
a. left b. applied c. removed d. set up

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
install يُنْصَبُ/يُنْصَبُ (برنامج)	installation تثبيت/تنصيب instalment / installment التقسيط installer برنامج تثبيت - التطبيقات فني تركيب	
mute يكتم الصوت/يُصَمَّتْ		mute صامت muted منخفض أو هادي الصوت mutable متبدل / متغير
switch يُبَدِّلُ - يتحول	switch مُبَدِّلُ/تَغْيِيرُ	
share يشارك - ينشر - يتقاسم	share نصيب - مشاركة sharing المشاركة - التقاسم	

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Sama her bedroom with her sister.
a. share b. shares c. sharing d. b & c
2. your personal data on social media is a risk.
a. Share b. Shares c. Sharing d. b & c
3. Egypt's of the Nile water is about 55 billion cubic metres.
a. share b. shares c. sharing d. b & c
4. A professional will be sent to the main building and connect the air conditioner.
a. install b. installation c. instalment d. installer
5. The of the air conditioner will be done by a professional technician.
a. install b. installation c. instalment d. installer
6. A professional technician will be sent to the air conditioner.
a. install b. installation c. instalment d. installer
7. They can't hear you because your microphone is
a. mutable b. mute c. switched d. turned
8. They can't hear you because your microphone is off.
a. mutable b. mute c. switched d. a & b

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

all the time	طوال الوقت/ باستمرار	long delay	تأخير لوقت طويل
at least	على الأقل	much too loud	بصوت عالي جداً
be on a call	مشغول في مكالمة	none at all	لا شيء على الإطلاق
be still in	لا يزال في	positive consequences	نتائج إيجابية
be still on	لا يزال يعمل / لا يزال متصلاً	recent changes	التغيرات الأخيرة
be suited to	مناسب لـ	stressful situations	الواقف العصيبة
by accident	بالصدفة/ دون قصد	student welfare officer	مسئول رعاية الطلاب
free time	وقت فراغ	technical problems	مشاكل فنية (تقنية)
human beings	البشر	thanks for	الشكر على
human contact	التواصل البشري	the latest version of	أحدث نسخة من
in other spaces	في أماكن أخرى	the way I see it	من وجهة نظري

in touch with
instant messaging
interpersonal skill

على اتصال بـ
الرسائل الفورية

video conference call

مكالمة جماعية عبر الفيديو

virtual meeting with

اجتماع افتراضي مع

working from home

العمل من المنزل

working hours

ساعات العمل

Yours faithfully

المُخلص لك

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

appear to
apply for

يبدو أن

deal with

يتعامل مع

يتقدم بطلب للحصول على

speak / talk to

يتحدث على

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Mr Ashraf can't meet you now as he is a conference call.
a. in b. on c. of d. by
2. A doctor who appears calm helps his/her patients relax.
a. to be b. be c. being d. to being
3. He is well-suited this task. He knows enough about fixing machines.
a. for b. to c. on d. with
4. I have applied a job as a teacher in Oman.
a. to b. for c. with d. in
5. I've known about your arrival accident.
a. in b. at c. by d. with
6. If you have any objection, just talk me.
a. about b. for c. of d. to
7. It is the too much work that has put you in such a situation.
a. stressful b. virtual c. conference d. human
8. You can end a letter of application with '..... faithfully'.
a. You b. you c. Yours d. yours
9. I am still touch with my friends who have travelled abroad.
a. to b. in c. off d. by

7 Clear the confusion

by accident - on purpose

- by accident = by chance = by luck
- I met some old friends in the club **by accident**.
- on purpose = deliberately
- You will be punished for breaking the rules **on purpose**.

install - fix

- install
- A technician came to **install** the washing machine.
- install
- I couldn't open this file until I had **installed** a suitable application.
- fix
- I used a screw to **fix** the handle of the door.
- fix
- My father helped me **fix** my bike.

college - colleague

- college
- He studied law in a **college** in Paris.
- colleague
- He has good relations with all his **colleagues**.

message - messaging

- message
- I received a **message** from Mr Helmi.
- message
- The **message** of this film is "Crime does not pay".
- messaging
- Instant **messaging** has become possible, thanks to modern technology.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What makes me angry is that he broke my glasses He meant it.
a. on purpose b. deliberately c. a & b d. by chance

2. He met them It wasn't arranged.
a. by accident b. deliberately c. by chance d. a & c
3. is provided by different digital applications.
a. Messages b. Messaging c. Message d. Message
4. are sent and received instantly online.
a. Messages b. Messaging c. Message d. Message
5. I studied languages in this
a. colleague b. college c. calling d. catalogue
6. I am grateful to my in my new job. They welcomed me warmly.
a. colleagues b. colleges c. callings d. catalogues

8 Master your Key Vocabulary

install

- install (v) يُركَّب - يُنْصَب (جهاز/قطعة)
- Most shops now **install** security cameras.
- install (v) يُنْصَب/يُنْصَب (برنامج/تطبيق)
- Don't **install** applications from untrusted sites.
- install (v) يُنْصَب (يضع شخص في منصب هام غالباً باحتفال)
- Queen Elizabeth II was **installed** as Queen of England in 1952.
- installation (n) تثبيت/تنصيب
- We spent a lot of money on the **installation** of a security system.
- instalment/installment (n) التقسيط (الدفع علي مراحل)
- Most new flats are sold by **installment**.

mute

- mute (adj) صامت = silent
- He should have told the truth; I don't know why he remained **mute**.
- muted (adj) مُنْخَفَض أو هادئ الصوت
- They were talking in **muted** voices.
- muted (adj) غامق اللون
- She was dressed in a **muted** green blouse.
- mute (v) يُخَفِّض أو يَكْتُم الصوت
- Try to **mute** the loudspeaker when you see someone making a phone call.

switch

- switch (to/between) (v)
 - Mr Abdulrahman worked in tourism before he **switched** teaching.
 - Mr Mohammed **switches** between teaching and running his own business

- لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
 - switch sides - يتغير انتمائه
 - switch off - يأخذ استراحة / يطفئ
 - switch on - يُشغل جهاز
 - switch over - يُغير قناة تلفزيونية

- switch (n)
 - Use this switch to operate the machine. (مفتاح)

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

توليه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- If you don't have all the money, you can pay by
 a. instalment b. installation c. installment d. a & c
- Some people regard silence as a/an agreement.
 a. switched b. muted c. installed d. public
- When was President Sadat as President of Egypt?
 a. switched b. muted c. installed d. shared
- He used to support Manchester City, but now he has sides and started to support Liverpool.
 a. switched b. shared c. installed d. muted
- Feeling exhausted, I decided to by watching highlights of matches online.
 a. turn on b. switch on c. switch off d. turn off

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	التعبير (by instalment/installment) يعني (بالتقسيط).
2.	b	التعبير (muted agreement) يعني (موافقة ضمنية).
3.	c	التعبير (install) هنا يعني (يُعيّن في مُنصب).
4.	a	التعبير (switch sides) يعني (يغير انتمائه).
5.	c	التعبير الاصطلاحي (switch off) هنا يعني (يأخذ استراحة).

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

- Carla : Hi, can you help us? (SB page 52)
- IT (1) Support (2) : Yes, sure. Can you tell me what the problem is?
- Carla : Sure. We wanted to have a virtual⁽³⁾ meeting⁽⁴⁾ with a group of students in Egypt for a project⁽⁵⁾. We installed⁽⁶⁾ the software⁽⁷⁾ for the meeting and that was fine. Everyone joined⁽⁸⁾ the meeting. We turned our microphones on and switched our cameras on. We could hear and see everyone without any problems for the first five minutes.
- IT Support : OK and what happened then?
- Carla : Then, I shared⁽⁹⁾ my screen and everything stopped working.
- IT Support : So the other students couldn't hear or see you and you couldn't see or hear them either⁽¹⁰⁾ ?
- Carla : That's right. We were talking to them, but they stopped responding⁽¹¹⁾. It was clear that they couldn't hear us. We turned our sound up, but it seems⁽¹²⁾ that they still couldn't hear anything we said or see us. We can only see the document⁽¹³⁾ I wanted to show them now.
- IT Support : Did you mute⁽¹⁴⁾ your microphone?
- Carla : No, I didn't touch my microphone. It was still on.
- IT Support : Did you check⁽¹⁵⁾ your internet connection?
- Carla : Yes, I did. The internet connection is fine.
- IT Support : That's strange⁽¹⁶⁾. Are you definitely still in the meeting? Could it be that you left the meeting and you didn't realise⁽¹⁷⁾ it?

Check Vocabulary

- تكنولوجيا المعلومات (1)
 موظف دعم (2)
 افتراضي (3)
 اجتماع/لقاء (4)
 دراسة/بحث (5)
 يُنصَّب/يُنصب (6)
 برنامج (7)
 ينضم إلى (8)
 يُشارك (9)
 أيضاً (10)
 يستجيب (11)
 يبدو (12)
 وثيقة (13)
 يكتُم/يُصمِّت (14)
 يتحقق من (15)
 غريب (16)
 يُدرك/يستوعب (17)

Carla : I'll check. Oh, you're right. I closed the meeting by accident ⁽¹⁸⁾! Sorry.

IT Support : Don't worry. It happens 😊 Maybe you can look into ⁽¹⁹⁾ other ways of staying in touch with ⁽²⁰⁾ the students during your meetings if there are technical ⁽²¹⁾ problems, like email or instant messaging ⁽²²⁾.

Carla : Yeah, good idea. Thanks for your help. I'll go and email the students.

- (18) بالخطأ/عن غير قصد
(19) يبحث عن
(20) علي اتصال بـ
(21) تقني/إفني
(22) الرسائل الفورية

IT Support Forum

Nevine : I've bought some new headphones ⁽¹⁾ and have plugged ⁽²⁾ them in but now I can't mute my microphone ⁽³⁾ and everyone can hear me all the time.



Hana : I'm having problems with a video conference call. ⁽⁴⁾ I can't hear anything when people are talking to me. I have just downloaded ⁽⁵⁾ and installed the latest version ⁽⁶⁾ of the software but nothing is happening. I have tried turning off ⁽⁷⁾ the computer and turning it on ⁽⁸⁾ again. Any other ideas?

Mazin : I need to show someone what is on my computer when we're on a call, but I don't know how to switch ⁽⁹⁾ my screen.

Ziad : There is a long delay ⁽¹⁰⁾ when I'm playing games online and I can never keep up with ⁽¹¹⁾ my friends. I always lose ⁽¹²⁾ the races ⁽¹³⁾ in the games. Do I need to look into ⁽¹⁴⁾ getting a better internet connection ⁽¹⁵⁾?

Malak : When I join a meeting online, I can't switch on ⁽¹⁶⁾ my camera. So people can hear me, but they can't see me!

(WB page 32)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) سماعات الرأس
(2) يوصل بالكهرباء/ بجهاز
(3) الميكروفون
(4) متكلمة جماعية
(5) يُنزل - يُحمّل
(6) نسخة/ إصدار
(7) يُطفئ
(8) يُشغّل
(9) يُبَدِّل
(10) تأخير
(11) يواكب/ يساير
(12) يخسر
(13) السباق
(14) يُنقِش في - يناقش
(15) إتصال
(16) يُشغّل

A letter for a job application⁽¹⁾

(WB page 33)

Dear Sir/Madam,
I am writing this letter to apply for⁽²⁾ the position ⁽³⁾ of student welfare officer. ⁽⁴⁾
I believe that I am suited to ⁽⁵⁾ the role ⁽⁶⁾ because I enjoy helping people feel more positive. At school, I have learnt to deal with ⁽⁷⁾ stressful situations. I like using my weekends and evenings to help other students. I always appear to ⁽⁸⁾ be calm ⁽⁹⁾ which helps the person I am speaking to.
I am very excited by this role and I hope you decide to offer ⁽¹⁰⁾ me the position.
I hope to hear from you soon.
Yours faithfully ⁽¹¹⁾,
Mariam

Check Vocabulary

- (1) طلب تقديم وظيفة
(2) يتقدم بطلب
(3) وظيفة
(4) مسئول رعاية الطلاب
(5) مُناسِب لـ
(6) دور
(7) يتعامل مع
(8) يبدو أن
(9) هادئ
(10) يمنح/ يعرض
(11) المُخلص لك

2 Listening Texts

Salma : Hello and welcome to my podcast⁽¹⁾ where we look at⁽²⁾ the world of work and the future. I'm joined now by Mina Mahmoud who looks at future trends⁽³⁾ in the workplace⁽⁴⁾. Welcome Mina.



Mina : Thank you, Salma.

Salma : So, what do you think is the most important future trend in work we need to know about?

Mina : I'd say the biggest change will be that companies will stop seeing work as something everyone does in the same place and at the same time. A lot of employees were already working from home in 2020 and 2021. Employees will carry on with⁽⁵⁾ this and even more workers will join them. The research shows that home workers are very efficient⁽⁶⁾ and working from home is good for the environment. We also know that employees are more motivated⁽⁷⁾ if they decide their own schedule⁽⁸⁾.

(SB page 54)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مُذَوِّنة صوتية
(2) يدرس/ يناقش
(3) توجّه/ أنزعة
(4) مكان العمل
(5) يستمر في
(6) كفاءة
(7) يُحفِّز/ يُشجِّع
(8) جُذُول الأعمال

Salma: Does this mean that employees will have more control over other areas of their working lives? Will more people start working on their own⁽⁹⁾ rather than⁽¹⁰⁾ in teams?

Mina: Yes. More companies who are already expecting their employees to work independently⁽¹¹⁾ will continue doing this and others will soon catch up⁽¹²⁾. Giving employees more responsibility⁽¹³⁾ encourages them to work harder. They enjoy making more decisions on their own and deciding how they work.

Salma: Do you think that employees will use technology to help them work more efficiently?

Mina: I think we'll definitely⁽¹⁴⁾ stop sending emails in the next ten or twenty years and use other ways of communicating.

Salma: Why?

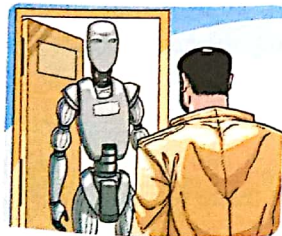
Mina: The research suggests people think virtual⁽¹⁵⁾ meetings are a more effective⁽¹⁶⁾ way of solving problems and brainstorming⁽¹⁷⁾ ideas than sending and reading emails. So, these ways of communicating are likely to become more popular⁽¹⁸⁾ and emails will become less popular.

Salma: That seems to be logical⁽¹⁹⁾, I'll definitely remember to invite our team to a virtual meeting instead of sending them a hundred emails from now on⁽²⁰⁾!

3 Video Script

For decades⁽¹⁾ now, there has been a fear that humans will be replaced by robots in the workplace. But is this something we really need to worry about?

The trend over the last few decades has been for repetitive⁽²⁾, predictable⁽³⁾ work to be replaced by technology. A typical⁽⁴⁾ example of this is supermarket check-out⁽⁵⁾ assistants.



(SB page 55)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) عداً (10 سنوات)
- (2) متكرر
- (3) يمكن التنبؤ به
- (4) نموذجي
- (5) مُحصِّل

Supermarket workers are increasingly⁽⁶⁾ being replaced by self-service⁽⁷⁾ check-outs. Most supermarkets do still have more traditional check-outs with a human assistant as well⁽⁸⁾. But the job of supermarket check-out assistant could soon completely disappear⁽⁹⁾.

Developments⁽¹⁰⁾ in technology don't always mean that humans lose jobs though – they can create jobs, too. Let's look at two examples. The internet gives us access to⁽¹¹⁾ an enormous amount of information, but we still need humans to check how reliable⁽¹²⁾ this data is and analyse⁽¹³⁾ it. That's what a data scientist does.

The internet has also given rise to⁽¹⁴⁾ a wide range⁽¹⁵⁾ of online learning courses⁽¹⁶⁾. To be effective, these courses need to be designed in a user-friendly⁽¹⁷⁾ way. This is where a user-experience designer is needed. These jobs didn't exist⁽¹⁸⁾ before the advent⁽¹⁹⁾ of the internet, and we will probably see many more new types of jobs emerge⁽²⁰⁾ in the next few decades.

So, it seems that there are two sides to the debate⁽²¹⁾ and the question remains⁽²²⁾: will human workers be completely replaced by technology? Or will human jobs simply change?

- (6) بشكل متزايد
- (7) الخدمة الذاتية
- (8) أيضاً
- (9) يختفي
- (10) التطور
- (11) يُمكننا من الوصول لـ
- (12) موثوق به
- (13) يُحلَّل
- (14) يزيد من
- (15) سلسلة/مجال
- (16) دورسات تعليمية
- (17) سهول الإستخدام
- (18) يُوجد
- (19) مُجنى/ظهور
- (20) يظهر/يبرز
- (21) مناظرة/لنقاش
- (22) يبقى

Presenter: Welcome to 'The Working World' where we are discussing the future of the labour market⁽¹⁾. Our guests⁽²⁾ today are Thomas Edwards and Omar Hamed.

Guests: Thank you

Presenter: Let's start with you, Omar. You have been studying the trends in the workplace for many years now. What do you want to tell young people about the future of work?

Omar: Well, after analysing current⁽³⁾ job offers⁽⁴⁾ and interviewing business owners⁽⁵⁾, we concluded⁽⁶⁾ that Artificial Intelligence⁽⁷⁾ will have a significant⁽⁸⁾ impact⁽⁹⁾ on the type of jobs in the future.

Presenter: Now, Thomas, I think you feel quite strongly about Artificial Intelligence.

(WB page 33)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) سوق العمل
- (2) ضيف
- (3) حالي
- (4) عرض
- (5) مالك/صاحب
- (6) يستنتج
- (7) الذكاء الاصطناعي
- (8) ملحوظ/كبير
- (9) أثر

Thomas : Yes, I do. Artificial Intelligence, or 'AI' as we call it, promises to destroy jobs. One study found that 82% of areas in Europe and North America experienced⁽¹⁰⁾ a decrease⁽¹¹⁾ in jobs as a result of⁽¹²⁾ using AI.

Omar : Yes, but although this study appeared to show a decline⁽¹³⁾ in jobs, it failed to tell us there was an increase of 60% in jobs in areas where AI could not be used. Plus⁽¹⁴⁾, an earlier study tells us that only 5% of jobs can be completely substituted⁽¹⁵⁾ by machines.

Presenter : So, what jobs will be less affected by AI?

Omar : It is clear that jobs that need to use interpersonal⁽¹⁶⁾ skills are a lot safer from being substituted by AI.

Presenter : You both seem to be suggesting that the job market appears to be⁽¹⁷⁾ changing. Should we risk⁽¹⁸⁾ using AI if it is going to cause so many problems?

Thomas : Change has always happened and always will. Most of our ancestors⁽¹⁹⁾ used to work in agriculture⁽²⁰⁾ but machines reduced the demand⁽²¹⁾ for farmers but increased the need for computer programmers⁽²²⁾.

Presenter : What new jobs are expected to be common⁽²³⁾ in the future?

Omar : Well, teaching jobs appear to be an area that will be less affected by AI and technology in general⁽²⁴⁾, as well as⁽²⁵⁾ jobs in medicine, so nurses and doctors.

Presenter : Nurses and doctors? Why is that?

Thomas : Well, the population⁽²⁶⁾ of the world is getting older and as more people live longer, they will need more health care⁽²⁷⁾.

Presenter : Ah. That makes sense⁽²⁸⁾! What impact would this have?

Omar : Well, it is expected that by 2030, an average⁽²⁹⁾ of 600 million people worldwide⁽³⁰⁾ will have to change careers⁽³¹⁾ or learn new skills.

Presenter : Interesting And what are some of these new skills Thomas?

- (10) يواجه
(11) انخفاض
(12) نتيجة لـ
(13) انخفاض
(14) بالإضافة إلى ذلك
(15) يستبدل
(16) شخصي/إنشائي
(17) يبدو كأنه
(18) بخلاف/بإعصار
(19) أجداد/السلاف
(20) الزراعة
(21) الطلب
(22) مبرمج
(23) شائع/منتشر
(24) بصفة عامة
(25) بالإضافة إلى
(26) السكان
(27) الرعاية الصحية
(28) ذو مغزى
(29) متوسط
(30) في كل أنحاء العالم
(31) مهنة

Thomas : They need to learn about new technology and speak different languages. With the internet we are working much more globally⁽³²⁾ now, and we need to speak to people all over the world. I would consider studying English to a very high level and perhaps another language too.

- (32) على مستوى عالمي
(33) لا وقت لديه
(34) يتخلى عن
(35) في هذه النقطة
(36) التكيف/التطور
(37) أكثر أهمية عن ذي قبل

Presenter : OK, we're almost out of time⁽³³⁾. Can you give our listeners one last piece of advice, Omar?

Omar : First of all, my advice would be not to worry. If you are at school now, do not give up⁽³⁴⁾ the idea of your dream job. But remember you may need to learn a few new things to do that job in the future.

Presenter : Thank you. And how about you Thomas?

Thomas : Although I don't often agree with Omar, I do on this point⁽³⁵⁾. Adapting⁽³⁶⁾ is the key, and you have to continue learning new things. This is more important now than ever⁽³⁷⁾.

Presenter : Well, thank you both very much for sharing your advice and giving us all a better idea of the world of work in the future.

Part IV

Language

تم تقسيم القواعد اللغوية على دروس الوحدة ليتمكن الطالب من إتقانها.

تتويه

Phrasal Verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية

1. What is a phrasal verb ? ما هو الفعل الاصطلاحى ؟

A phrasal verb is a group of words that consist of a verb and one or two prepositions. When these words are used together, they create a new verb with a different meaning.

الفعل الاصطلاحى هو مجموعة من الكلمات تتكون من فعل وحرف جر واحد أو اثنين وعندما يتم استخدام هذه الكلمات معاً فإنها تُكوّن فعلاً جديداً بمعنى مختلف — لاحظ الأمثلة التالية مع الفعل (look):

① I looked at the screen of my tablet.

- في المثال السابق تم استخدام الفعل (look) بأحد معانيه الأصلية (ينظر)، ولم يؤثر حرف الجر (at) على معناه، فهو هنا لا يُعتبر فعلاً اصطلاحياً.

2 Rodayna looks happy.
في المثال السابق تم استخدام الفعل (look) بأحد معانيه الأصلية (يبدو)، فهو هنا لا يُعتبر فعلاً اصطلاحياً.

3 I looked after my sister while mum was out.
في المثال السابق تم استخدام (look after) بمعنى (يعتني بـ)، وهو معنى مُختلف عن معناه الأصلي، لهذا فهو فعل اصطلاحياً.

4 He looks down on us because we are not as rich as him.
في المثال السابق تم استخدام (look down on) بمعنى (يتعالى علي/ينظر بتعالي)، وهو معنى مُختلف عن معناه الأصلي، لهذا فهو فعل اصطلاحياً.

5 I'm looking for my keys.
في المثال السابق تم استخدام (look for) بمعنى (يبحث عن)، وهو معنى مُختلف عن معناه الأصلي، لهذا فهو فعل اصطلاحياً.

6 I look forward to hearing from you.
في المثال السابق تم استخدام (look forward to) بمعنى (يتطلع إلي)، وهو معنى مُختلف عن معناه الأصلي، لهذا فهو فعل اصطلاحياً.

7 I look up new word in my dictionary.
في المثال السابق تم استخدام (look up) بمعنى (يبحث عن معلومة)، وهو معنى مُختلف عن معناه الأصلي، لهذا فهو فعل إصطلاحياً.

What does a phrasal verb consist of ؟ ما يتكون الفعل الاصطلاحى ؟

A phrasal verb consists of a verb and one or two prepositions or adverbs.

يتكون الفعل الاصطلاحى من فعل وبعده حرف جر أو اثنين أو ظرف أو اثنين:

• حرف جر + preposition + فعل ... verb

- I found out why Sama was very angry. (اكتشفت)

• حرف جر + preposition + حرف جر + فعل ... verb

- I don't want anyone to find out about this secret. (يعرف عن)

• ظرف + فعل ... verb

- I picked up my keys and went out. (تنازلت)

= I picked my keys up and went out.

• حرف جر + preposition + ظرف + فعل ... verb

- I look forward to my first day in my new clinic. (يتطلع إلي)

What is a transitive phrasal verb ؟ ما هو الفعل الاصطلاحى المتعدي ؟

A transitive phrasal verb takes one or more objects.

الفعل الاصطلاحى المتعدي يأخذ مفعولاً أو أكثر، مثل:

- A famous surgeon carried out the operation (أجري/قام بـ).

= A famous surgeon carried the operation out.

Where is the object of a phrasal verb located?

أين يوضع مفعول الفعل الاصطلاحى ؟

يتم تحديد مكان مفعول الفعل الاصطلاحى حسب القواعد التالية:

١. إذا كان المفعول اسم فإنه عادة يوضع بعد الفعل الاصطلاحى بالكامل (أي بعد حرف الجر أو الظرف):

- I am looking my keys for. (X)

- I am looking for my keys. (✓)

- He wants to catch with his friends up. (X)

- He wants to catch up with his friends. (✓)

- لكن في بعض الحالات يُمكن وضع الاسم قبل أو بعد حرف الجر :

- Can you turn the sound up? (✓)

= Can you turn up the sound? (✓)

- Salma plugged the speaker in. (✓)

= Salma plugged in the speaker. (✓)

٢. إذا كان المفعول ضمير فإنه في الغالب يوضع بعد الفعل الاصطلاحى بالكامل (أي بعد حرف الجر أو الظرف):

- Where are my keys. I am looking them for. (X)

- Where are my keys. I am looking for them. (✓)

- لكن في بعض الحالات يوضع الضمير بعد الفعل وحرف الجر أو الظرف، وغالباً يحدث ذلك مع حروف الجر والظروف القصيرة مثل (up/down/in/out/on/off):

- The jacket is making me hot. I will take off it. (X)

= The jacket is making me hot. I will take it off. (✓)

- The fan is off. I asked Sama to switch on it. (X)

= I asked Sama to switch it on. (✓)

الجدول التالى يحتوى على أهم الأفعال الاصطلاحية المتعدية التى سبق دراستها :

Phrasal Verb	Meaning	Translation
back up	to support	يدعم - يحتفظ بنسخة احتياطية
blow up	to make an image larger	يُكَبِّرُ الصورة
break down	to hit it so hard that it breaks and falls to the ground	يُحَطِّم - يهدم

break into	to enter a building by using force, in order to steal something	يَتَجَسَّس
breathe in	to inhale	يَسْتَنَشِق
breathe out	to exhale	يُزْفِر
bring back	to return	يُجِيب
bring up	to raise	يُزَيِّع
call up	to telephone	يُصَلِّ بِ
calm down	to make someone become quiet and relaxed	يَهْدِئ
catch up with	to improve and reach the same standard as	يُلَاقِ بِ
clean up	to tidy	يُزَيِّن
fill in	to complete	يُكْمِل
fill up	to make full	يُملَأ
find out (about)	to get information, after trying to discover it or by chance	يُكشِف/يُعرف (عن)
give back	to return	يُعِيد
give off	to send out	يُخْرِج - تُنبعث منه
give up	to stop doing something, especially something that you do regularly	يَتَرْقِع - يُقْلِع عن
go on	to continue doing something or being in a situation	يَسْتَمِر في
hand in	to give to person in authority	يُسَلِّم شيء إلى
hand on	to give to another person	يُنَاقِل
hang up	to break a telephone connection	يُفْلِق مكالمة
hold back	to restrain, delay	يُثَبِّت - يُؤَخِّر
knock out	to make unconscious	يُثَقِّل ... الوعي
lay off	to put out of work	يُفَصِّل - يَطْرُد
leave ... on/off	to keep a machine working/not working	يُترَك (جهاز) مفتوح/مُغلق
leave behind	to leave, not bring	يُترَك ... وراءه - يُغَادِر بدون

leave out	to omit	يُحذف - يُستبعد
let down	to disappoint	يُخبط - يخذل
look into	to investigate	يُحَقِّق في - يتحقق من
look up	to find (information)	يُبحث عن (معلومة) في مصدر
make up	to invent	يُخترع
pick up	to collect	يُجْمَع - يُتناول
plug in	to connect a piece of electrical equipment to the main supply of electricity, or to another piece of electrical equipment	يُوصَل ... بالكهرباء أو بجهاز
point out	to draw attention to	يُلفت الانتباه لـ - يشير إلى
pull down	to demolish	يُهْدَم
put away	to put in proper place	يُضَع ... في مكانه
put back	to return to original location	يُعيد ... إلى مكانه
put off	to postpone	يُؤَجَّل
rub out	to erase	يُمسح
run out of	to use all of something and not have any more left	يُسْتنفد - يستهلك كل
sum up	summarize	يُلخِّص
switch/turn down	to make sound lower	يُخَفِّض الصوت
switch/turn off	to deactivate by using a switch	يُوقِف - يُطْفِئ
take in	to absorb	يُمْتَص - يستنشق
take off	to remove a piece of clothing	يُخلَع ملابس - ينزع
take out	to invite to a restaurant	يُخْرِج - يعزم ... بالخارج
take over	to assume control	يَتَوَلَّى المسؤولية عن
talk over	discuss	يُنَاقِش
tear up	destroy by tearing	يُمزَق
think over	to consider	يُفَكِّر في
try on	to test clothes by putting them on	يُجَرِّب ملابس
try out	to test by using	يُجَرِّب استخدام
turn on	to activate by using a switch	يُشغِّل
turn up	to make sound louder	يُرفع الصوت

use up	to use all of something	يستهلك كل شيء
wear out	to gradually destroy by wearing or using	يبي - يتهالك من كثرة الاستخدام
work out	to calculate an answer, amount, price etc	يحسب - يحل
work out	(of a problem) to gradually get better or get solved	يتم حل المشكلة
write down	to make a note	تخرج الأمور - يُسجل كتابياً

ما هو الفعل الاصطلاحي اللازم ؟ What is an intransitive phrasal verb?

An intransitive phrasal verb doesn't take an object.

الفعل الاصطلاحي اللازم لا يأخذ مفعول، مثل:

- We hope prices will fall off. (تنخفض)
- Watch out! You are going to drop the vase. (انتبه)
- بعض الأفعال الاصطلاحية تكون لازمة بمعنى ومتعدية بمعنى آخر - لاحظ مثلاً كيفية استخدام الفعل (take off) في الأمثلة التالية:

- The plane took off at 16:20. (أقלט الطائرة - فعل لازم)
- I took off my coat. (خلعت المعطف - فعل متعدي)

الجدول التالي يحتوي على أهم الأفعال الاصطلاحية اللازمة التي سبق دراستها :

Phrasal Verb	Meaning	Translation
break in	to enter a building by using force, in order to steal something	ينغم - يسطو
break down	to fail or stop working in a successful way	ينعطل
calm down	to become quiet and relaxed after you have been angry, excited	يهدأ
catch up	to improve and reach the same standard as	يلحق - يلرك
fall off	to become less	ينخفض
get away	to escape	يهرب
give in	to admit defeat	يستسلم - يرضخ
go on	to continue	يستمر في
give up	to stop trying to do something	يتوقف عن محاولة القيام بشئ

grow up	to become an adult	يكبر / ينضج
log on	to contact (a computer / the internet)	يُسجل دخول على (حاسب آلي / الإنترنت)
log off	to break contact with (a computer / the internet)	يُسجل خروج من (حاسب آلي / الإنترنت)
look forward to	to be excited and pleased about something that is going to happen	يتطلع إلى
move in	to start living in a new home	يُعزل
move out	to leave the house where you are living now to live somewhere else	ينقل / يُغادر
run out	if something runs out, there will soon be none left	ينفذ - ينتهي
set off	to leave	يُغادر / ينطلق
settle down	to become peaceful	يستقر
settle in	to become used to	يعتاد على
show up	to arrive	يصل
stay up	to not go to bed	يسهر
step down	to resign	يستقيل - يتنحى
take off	to leave the ground	تُقلع الطائرة
turn up	to arrive at a place	يُصل - يظهر
watch out	to beware	ينتبه / يتحذر
wear off	to gradually disappear	يتلاشى

General Exercise On Language



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting Started

- I asked my sister to look the baby for me.
a. up b. after c. for d. like
- A: Who has taken my mobile? B: I haven't yet.
a. caught up b. caught up with
c. found out d. found out about

- 3 A: Who has taken my mobile? B: I haven't it yet.
 a. caught up b. caught up with
 c. found out d. found out about
- 4 The technical team is going to look other ways of sharing documents online
 a. down b. into c. on d. off
- 5 The rabbits have all the carrots in the garden. There isn't any left
 a. used up b. warmed up c. set up d. worked out
- 6 To stay means not to go to bed at the normal time.
 a. in b. at c. up d. down
- 7 I typed and sent the email and soon logged
 a. in b. on c. at d. off
- 8 My car broke and I had to take a taxi.
 a. down b. up c. out d. into
- 9 You are right to a longer break between work hours.
 a. pay back b. plug in c. give in d. ask for
- 10 I have two days to catch with the office work I have missed!
 a. down b. up c. on d. off
- 11 Please, turn the TV while I am on the phone.
 a. on b. of c. down d. up
- 12 Don't get nervous. Calm, please.
 a. down b. back c. off d. with
- 13 I set on my trip at around seven.
 a. to b. up c. of d. off
- 14 You don't have to turn your tablet on if you don't want to. Leave it
 a. down b. into c. on d. off
- 15 I had to the power cable to recharge the battery.
 a. pay back b. plug in c. give in d. ask for
- 16 I had to the call as there's someone at the door.
 a. give up b. hang up c. hand in d. blow up
- 17 Would you pay your friend the money you owe to him, please?
 a. up b. back c. again d. down
- 18 Everything finally and I was over the moon.
 a. took off b. turned up c. went on d. worked out

II Special Cases

19. I asked Rodayna to turn the sound of the TV, but then it was much too loud.
 a. down b. up c. on d. off
20. Amir has to the money I lent him last month
 a. pay back b. plug in c. give in d. ask for
21. The air hostess asked us to fasten our seat belts; the plane was about to take
 a. over b. up c. out d. off
22. I asked the petrol station attendant to the tank with petrol
 a. fill in b. fill up c. fall off d. fall away
23. I the documents to the manager in person.
 a. gave up b. hung up c. handed in d. blew up
24. I found some money in the street and I am going to to the police.
 a. hand it in b. hand in it c. turn it on d. turn on it
25. To set off means to
 a. arrive b. leave c. finish d. cook
26. "I have already installed the software". We can use instead of 'installed' in this sentence.
 a. sit back b. sit down c. set off d. set up
27. The baby has dropped its toy. I'll
 a. pick up it b. pick it up c. it pick up d. it picked up
28. We'd only waited a little when he turned
 a. up b. in c. into d. down
29. I was shocked because I didn't expect him to turn my request.
 a. up b. in c. into d. down
30. This photo is small; it needs
 a. giving up b. hanging up c. handing in d. blowing up
31. Nabil hurt his elbow in yesterday's tennis match and had to
 a. pay back b. plug in c. give in d. ask for
32. I had to the application form with my personal data.
 a. fill in b. fill up c. fall off d. put away
33. The sugar I had at home ran and I had to go out at midnight to buy some.
 a. out of b. out c. with d. down

34. I ran sugar and I had to go out at midnight to buy some.
a. out of b. out c. with d. down
35. I have invited all my friends to the party, but only a few of them showed
a. on b. off c. up d. down

III Check your understanding

36. A phrasal verb consists of
a. two verbs and a preposition
b. a verb followed by one or two prepositions.
c. a transitive verb, an object and a preposition.
d. none of the above.
37. 'Look forward to' is called a/an
a. phrasal verb b. modal verb
c. adverbial clause d. verbal collocation
38. The phrasal verb 'grow up' meaning 'to become an adult' is a/an phrasal verb.
a. modal b. passive c. transitive d. intransitive
39. Where is the object of an intransitive phrasal verb located?
a. After the preposition. b. before the preposition.
c. a & b d. It doesn't take an object.
40. When you want to stop a call for a short time and resume it shortly after, you
a. hang up b. switch off c. turn off d. put away
41. We use verbs or pronouns after a verb to form a phrasal verb.
a. one b. two c. no d. any
42. Which of the following is NOT correct?
a. The match ended when one of the two players gave up to the other.
b. The match ended when one of the two players gave up.
c. The match ended when one of the two players gave to the other up.
d. a & b
43. Which of the following does not have a phrasal verb?
a. The charger is plugged in.
b. Omar looked at his sister.
c. My mobile is switched off.
d. I knew that my PC had been left on.

Part I

Vocabulary & Definitions

• اختر مدي اتفاقك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
• المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تنويه

1 Important Vocabulary

apply(ied) (v)	يُطبَّق/يُنَفَّذ	mind map(n)	خريطة ذهنية
arrow(n)	سهم	old-fashioned(adj)	عفا عليه الزمن/قديم
attach(ed) (v)	يُرفق-يُربط كترقق	option(n)	خيار/اختيار
background(n)	خلفية	order(ed) (v-n)	ينظم - يطلب - ترتيب/نظام - أمر
certain(adj)	مُعَيَّن/مُحَدَّد	prepare(d) (v)	يُعِدّ/يُجَهِّز
chat(n)	دردشة	present(ed) (v)	يعرض/يقدّم
click(ed) (v/n)	ينقر - نقرة (علي الماوس)	presentation(n)	عَرْض تقديمي
concentrate(d) (v)	يُركّز علي	record(ed) (v)	يُسجّل
conclude(d) (v)	يختتم - يستنتج	reduce(d) (v)	يقلل/يختصر
document(n)	وثيقة	right(adj)	علي حق/مُصيب
draw - drew - drawn(v)	يرسم	session(n)	جَلْسَة
effective(adj)	مُؤثِّر/فَعَال	shocked(adj)	مصلوم
effectively(adv)	بفاعلية	similar(adj)	مُشابه
email(ed) (v)	يرسل بريد الكتروني	slide(n)	شريحة
essential(adj)	ضروري/جوهري	sound(ed) (v)	يبدو
explanation(n)	شرح/توضيح	specific(adj)	مُحدّد
guess(ed) (v)	يُخَمِّن	study(n)	استذكار/مذاكرة
highlight(ed) (v/n)	يُظَلِّل/يُبرز - الجزء الهام/البارز	technique(n)	تقنية/أسلوب
identify(ied) (v)	يُحدّد	tend(ed) (v)	يميل - يُفضّل
image(n)	صورة	topic(n)	موضوع
link(n)	رابط	wonder(ed) (v)	يتساءل
		mind(ed) (v)	يُمانع

General Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Use markers to the important parts of the text.
a. attach b. present c. highlight d. tend
- Click on this and you will be able to download all the books you need.
a. session b. link c. technique d. explanation
- Water is for all life forms.
a. essential b. old-fashioned c. shocked d. similar
- When you write an essay, you need to provide some information about the topic in the introduction.
a. document b. presentation c. option d. background
- The company started a/an advertising campaign.
a. certain b. certainly c. effective d. effectively
- Moataz to arrive late at the office. It is one of his worst habits.
a. attaches b. presents c. highlights d. tends
- All attendants liked the I made.
a. document b. presentation c. option d. background
- I divide my study hours into forty-minute
a. sessions b. links c. techniques d. explanations
- The sales assistant refused to the price.
a. concentrate b. identify c. conclude d. reduce
- I was to hear that such a kind man had been murdered.
a. essential b. old-fashioned c. shocked d. similar
- I a copy of my qualifications to the CV.
a. attached b. presented c. highlighted d. tended
- It is important to the study plan that works.
a. concentrate b. identify c. conclude d. reduce
- Spending the night in the lobby of the hotel is the only available.
a. document b. presentation c. option d. background
- Keep quiet, please. I need to on my study.
a. concentrate b. identify c. conclude d. reduce

- Using mind maps is one of the best study
a. sessions b. links c. techniques d. explanations
- Now, most university students use their mobiles to lectures.
a. click b. record c. draw d. switch
- I make friends with people who have interests to mine.
a. essential b. old-fashioned c. shocked d. similar
- To be understood well, your ideas simply and in the correct order.
a. tend b. present c. install d. tend
- Good writers their essays effectively leaving readers with a challenge.
a. concentrate b. identify c. conclude d. reduce
- Do you want a/an hair-cut or you will let me decide?
a. certain b. certainly c. effective d. effectively
- I can't find a/an for his strange behaviour.
a. session b. link c. technique d. explanation
- Sending letters has become Emails are faster and safer.
a. essential b. old-fashioned c. shocked d. similar

Part II Vocabulary Study

تتويه ساعد معلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلزمات لفظية

attach	a document يرفق وثيقة - يرسل وثيقة كمرق	highlight	important details يُظَلِّل/ يُبْرِز التفاصيل المهمة
bring	... together يُجْمَع - يَضُم		a list of يُعَد قائمة بـ
create	a study system يبتكر نظام استذكار		a study plan يُعَد خطة استذكار
discover	new ideas يكتشف أفكار جديدة	make	a summary of يُعَد تلخيص لـ
do	a session يقوم بجلسة		changes يُحْدِث تغييرات
draw	mind maps يرسم خرائط ذهنية		notes يُلَوِّن ملاحظات

feel	free to	لا تتردد في أن	prepare	a presentation
		يُخَضِّب	put	in order
get	angry	يتوتر	share	documents
	stressed	يُقدِّم عرضاً	sound	like
give	a presentation	يُقدِّم تفسيراً	take	a break
	an explanation			

Mini Test 1 Collocations

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- How many study sessions have you ?
a. put b. done c. made d. sounded
- free to criticize me if I do anything wrong.
a. Feel b. Make c. Give d. Take
- Mind maps are good ways of information about the topics together.
a. attaching b. bringing c. giving d. highlighting
- He like an important man.
a. puts b. does c. makes d. sounds
- Don't get, Ahmed. We're joking.
a. angry b. free c. attached d. highlighted
- The explanation she has isn't persuasive.
a. felt b. made c. given d. b & c
- I was asked to the cards in order.
a. put b. do c. create d. sound
- I have two documents to the email.
a. attached b. brought c. got d. highlighted
- The break we renews our energy.
a. feel b. make c. give d. take
- The notes I help me remember.
a. put b. do c. make d. sound
- I used a yellow pen to the important parts of the lesson.
a. attach b. bring c. get d. highlight

354

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

all the best	أزق الأمنيات	in a different way	بطريقة مختلفة
as well as you can	بأفضل ما تستطيع	in different colours	بالوان مختلفة
at the bottom	أسفل / تحت	learn differently	بتعلم بطريقة مختلفة
be on video calls	مشغول بمكالمة فيديو	let me explain	دعني أشرح لك
be sure about	مُتأكد من	let me know	أخبرني
chat box	صندوق الردشة	on the map	على الخريطة
creative solutions	حلول مُبتكرة	plus sign	علامة (+)
good at	جيد في	reply to	رد / برد على
Hi there,	أهلاً	speak soon	رد سريعاً
in advance	مُقدماً	study plan	خطة استذكار
in a different order	بترتيب مختلف	study system	نظام استذكار
talk to you soon!	أحدثك قريباً		

3 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

click on	ينقر على	meet up with	يلتقي بـ
concentrate on	يركز على	present ... to	يُقدِّم ... لـ
conclude with	يختتم بـ	reduce ... into	يختصر ... إلى
experiment with	يُجرب - يُمارس	send ... to	يُرسل ... إلى
give up	يستسلم	start by	يبدأ بـ
look for	يبحث عن	tend to	يميل إلى أن

Mini Test 2 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I look forward to my old friends.
a. meeting b. meeting up
c. meeting up with d. a & c
- Some building workers ought to be given their money advance.
a. at b. off c. in d. of
- Conclude your essay a good summary of the main points.
a. with b. to c. from d. about

355

4. I reduced the novel three pages.
a. off b. from c. of d. into
5. This type of birds tend build their nests in holes in mountains.
a. for b. to c. from d. at
6. Let children experiment depending on themselves.
a. with b. on c. as d. like
7. Leave your sister concentrate her study.
a. after b. for c. on d. than
8. Do the job as as possible.
a. bad b. long c. good d. well
9. Only losers give.....
a. off b. up c. down d. at
10. When you have finished, let me
a. know b. knew c. knowing d. to know

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

Study Tips

TIP 1: Make a study⁽¹⁾ plan before you start studying. Start by thinking what you need to learn. For example, if you need to study for a Maths exam, make a list⁽²⁾ of all the topics⁽³⁾ you need to know. Then, decide how much time you'll need to learn about each one. Finally, decide which topics are the most important and plan to spend more time on these.

TIP 2: Draw⁽⁴⁾ mind maps⁽⁵⁾

This is a creative⁽⁶⁾ way of bringing information about a topic together in one place. You start by writing the topic in the centre⁽⁷⁾ of the page and then draw lines from the centre. At the end of each line, you write a different part of the topic and make short notes about it. You could even use pictures instead of text in your mind map, too.

(SB page 56)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) استنكار/مذاكرة
- (2) قائمة
- (3) موضوع
- (4) يرسم
- (5) خريطة ذهنية
- (6) مبدع
- (7) وسط

TIP 3: Create⁽⁸⁾ a study system with colours

For example, if you write the most important points about a topic on cards⁽⁹⁾, you could use the same colour cards for similar⁽¹⁰⁾ topics. This will help you to find information more quickly. You could also get some different coloured pens and highlight⁽¹¹⁾ different types of words (verbs, nouns, adjectives, etc.) in different colours.

- (8) يبتكر
- (9) بطاقة
- (10) مشابه
- (11) يُظهِل/يبرز

Studying on my Head (by Hamid Shazly)

(WB page 34)

I was never very good at concentrating,⁽¹⁾ so my dad gave me a book called 'Study Skills for you'. I discovered lots of new ideas.



The first message⁽²⁾ in the book is that we all learn differently. So, the first thing I did was to learn how I best remember things. I tried⁽³⁾ making a summary⁽⁴⁾ of each unit of the schoolbook, then a summary of the summary until I reduced⁽⁵⁾ the essential⁽⁶⁾ information into a small mind map. Highlighting important details⁽⁷⁾ in different colours helped me so much that I was even able to remember where on the map certain⁽⁸⁾ information was.

History was my worst subject. So, while I was making my notes, I played the same song in the background⁽⁹⁾. When I went to sleep, I used to listen to the song again to make me think about the history notes. To avoid too much sitting on my desk, I got up every 20 minutes and walked around my room or went and studied in the park. I also recorded⁽¹⁰⁾ my notes on my phone and listened to them while walking in the park.

So, I guess⁽¹¹⁾ you're wondering⁽¹²⁾ whether all these experiments worked? Well, it certainly helped me discover how I remember things best and it made revising a lot more interesting. This meant I spent more time doing it. When I got my final results, I was shocked⁽¹³⁾ but very happy to tell my dad that the highest mark I got was in History!

Check Vocabulary

- (1) التركيز
- (2) درس مُستفاد
- (3) يحاول - يُجرب
- (4) مُلخص
- (5) يُقلل/يختصر
- (6) ضروري/اجوهرى
- (7) تفاصيل
- (8) مُعين/المُحدد
- (9) خلفية
- (10) يُسجّل
- (11) يُخَيّن
- (12) يتساءل
- (13) مصدوم

To : Monica@mail.com
From : Iman@mail.com
Hi Monica,

Thank you for your email about virtual meetings. I understand how to join the meeting by clicking⁽¹⁾ on the link⁽²⁾ in an email and turning my microphone and camera on and off, but I'm not sure about how to give a presentation⁽³⁾ during a meeting.

It sounds⁽⁴⁾ like you have to share your screen if you want to show other people a document⁽⁵⁾ or PowerPoint slides⁽⁶⁾, is that right? So I need to join the meeting, share my screen and then stop sharing when I've finished showing the thing I wanted to show. Have I understood that correctly? If I haven't, feel free to⁽⁷⁾ let me know how I should be doing it. Maybe we could have a quick call so you can talk to me through it.

Thanks very much in advance⁽⁸⁾ for your help. I'm sure I'll be able to give presentations in our meetings without any problems very soon.

Talk to you soon.

Iman

(SB page 57)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) انقر
- (2) رابط
- (3) عرض تقديمي
- (4) يبدو
- (5) وثيقة
- (6) شرائح
- (7) لا تتردد
- (8) مقدما

Hi there,

You asked for some study tips and I have two good ones for you:

Try using the Pomodoro technique⁽¹⁾. You concentrate⁽²⁾ on your work for 25 minutes, then take a break⁽³⁾, then do another session⁽⁴⁾ for the same amount of time, then take another break. After a few of these, you take a longer break.

Try teaching another student something you find difficult to understand. Prepare⁽⁵⁾ something before you meet up with them. Then explain it to your friend as well as you can⁽⁶⁾.

Let me know how the studying goes.
Talk to you soon!

(SB page 57)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) تقنية/أسلوب
- (2) يركز على
- (3) استراحة
- (4) جلسة
- (5) يُعدّ/يُجهّز
- (6) بأفضل ما تستطيع

(WB page 35)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يقرأ
- (2) يقرأ بعناية
- (3) أقرأ بتمعن كل شيء
- (4) أشرح
- (5) أشرح لك
- (6) أشرح
- (7) أشرح
- (8) أشرح
- (9) أشرح
- (10) أشرح
- (11) أشرح

Hi Eman,

Thanks so much for your help with sharing documents while in a virtual meeting. I think I have understood everything, but I'd just like to check.

I read your email carefully⁽¹⁾ and from your explanation⁽²⁾ I understand that there are different ways to share documents. The first is to send each person an email with the document attached. That's a good idea but there are 25 people in my class, and I don't have all their email addresses.

The other option is to attach⁽³⁾ the document in the chat⁽⁴⁾ box. Am I right⁽⁵⁾ in thinking that I have to click⁽⁶⁾ on the clip icon to do this? After that I need to choose the option⁽⁷⁾ which says 'everyone' and click on the arrow⁽⁸⁾ to send it to everyone in the video call. Have I understood that correctly⁽⁹⁾?

Thanks again for all your wonderful advice which has been really helpful. If I have any more questions, do you mind⁽¹⁰⁾ me emailing⁽¹¹⁾ you again for help?

All the best,

Heba

(WB page 35)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يبحث عن
- (2) صورة
- (3) علامة
- (4) يطبق/ينفذ

Hi there,

Adding a virtual background is great fun and quite easy to do when you know how. Let me explain.

First, look for⁽¹⁾ the arrow next to the camera icon at the bottom of the screen. Click on that and then click on 'settings'. Another window will open, and you have to find the option on the left that says 'video and image⁽²⁾ backgrounds'. You have to click on that. If you don't have any images, you can add them by clicking on the plus sign⁽³⁾ which you can find on the right. Choose the image you want and then click on 'apply'⁽⁴⁾ and that's it!

I hope you have lots of fun but let me know if you have any questions.

Speak soon,

Basel

1 Verb + (inf. + ing)

الأفعال التالية يتبعها مصدر مضاف له (ing):

admit	يعترف / يُقر	finish	ينهي
appreciate	يُقدّر / يُشكر	imagine	يتخيل
avoid	يتجنب	include	يشمل
consider	يفكر في	keep	يُستمر في
delay	يؤجل	mind	يُمانع
deny	ينكر	miss	يُفوت
dislike	يكره	practise	يمارس
enjoy	يُمتع به	risk	يُخاطر به
fancy	يُتوهم - يُتخيل	suggest	يُفترح

- Karim **admitted / denied borrowing** my pen without asking me.
- The driver of the car **avoided hitting** the motorbike.
- He **dislikes/ enjoys sleeping** during the day.
- They're going home as soon as they've **finished working**.
- Samir and his brother **practise playing** tennis every day.
- My friend **suggested going** for a picnic on the beach.

يمكن نفي الأفعال السابقة باستخدام (not + inf. + ing):

- He **suggested not going** to the club and helping mum instead.

Mini Test 1

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Sama suggested fish for lunch as she likes it.
a. to prepare b. preparing
c. not to prepare d. not preparing
- Rodayna suggested fish for lunch as she likes chicken.
a. to prepare b. preparing
c. not to prepare d. not preparing
- I don't mind you with the shopping.
a. helping b. not helping c. to help d. not to help

2 Verb + to + inf.

الأفعال التالية يتبعها (to + inf.):

afford	يمكنه تحمل تكلفة أن	learn	يتعلم أن
agree	يوافق على أن	manage	يتسكن من
arrange	يرتب أن	offer	يعرض أن
choose	يختار أن	plan	يخطط أن
decide	يقرر أن	pretend	يتظاهر أن
deserve	يستحق أن	promise	يعد أن
expect	يتوقع أن	seem	يبدو أن
fail	يفشل في أن	threaten	يهدد أن
help	يساعد في	try	يحاول أن
hope	يأمل أن	want	يريد أن
intend	يتوهم أن	wish	يتمنى أن

- Everyone **agreed / arranged / decided to meet** at the airport.
- I **expect / hope to finish** my homework later this evening.
- I **learned to swim** when I was three years old.
- She **offered / promised to help** her mother prepare lunch.
- What do you **plan / want to do** in the summer?

يمكن نفي الأفعال السابقة باستخدام (not to + inf.):

- He **intended not to go** to the club with us.

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Leen agreed me use her tablet.
a. let b. to let c. letting d. to letting
- Mohammed me to come first.
a. admitted b. deserved c. afforded d. expected
- I decided them anymore. They are really bad company.
a. knowing b. to know c. not to know d. not knowing
- He not to know me but I am sure we have worked together before.
a. pretends b. chooses c. learns d. threatens

3 Verb + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)

love	يحب	prefer	يفضل
hate	يكره	start / begin	يبدأ
like	يحب	continue	يستمر

- الأفعال التالية يتبعها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) دون وجود فرق في المعنى:
- I hate/ like / love / prefer to do (= doing) exercise every day
 - It has started to rain (= doing).
 - إذا استخدمنا (would) قبل أي من الأفعال السابقة فلا بد أن يأتي بعدها (to + inf.):
 - I'd love to go for a swim this evening. (NOT: I'd love going)
 - بعد (starting/beginning) نستخدم (to + inf.) فقط وليس (inf. + ing):
 - It was starting to rain. (NOT: it was starting raining)
- الأفعال التالية يتبعها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) مع وجود فرق في المعنى:

Verb	Example	Meaning
stop يتوقف	- Leila stopped listening to the radio. - Leila stopped to listen to the radio.	توقفت عن القيام بشيء. توقفت لكي تقوم بشيء آخر
remember يتذكر	- I remembered phoning my mother. - I remembered to phone my mother.	يتذكر أنه فعل يتذكر أن أفعل ثم فعلت
regret يندم / يشعر بالأسف	- I regret arriving late. - He regrets to say that he can't go.	نادم على ما فعلت نعم بالأسف لأنني مضطر للقيام بـ...
forget ينسى	- I forgot bringing my book. - I forgot to bring my book.	نسيت أنني أحضرت الكتاب نسيت أن أحضر الكتاب
try يحاول - يُجرب	- He tried to control the children, but they went on shouting. - Try logging off and logging on again.	يُحاول / يقوم بمحاولة يُجرب
go on يستمر في	- He finished his English homework, and then he went on to study physics. - He went on working for the same company.	استغل من عمل لآخر استمر في القيام بنفس العمل

Mini Test 3

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- Mr Mohammed prefers in a coastal city.
a. living b. to live c. to living d. a & b
 - Mr Mohammed would prefer in a coastal city.
a. living b. to live c. to living d. a & b
 - It's started heavily.
a. to rain b. raining c. a & b d. rain
 - It's starting heavily.
a. to rain b. raining c. a & b d. rain
 - When there's a curfew حظر تجوال, people stop out.
a. to go b. going c. to going d. not going
 - I got tired of studying, so I stopped to bed.
a. to go b. going c. to going d. not going
 - Remember me when you arrive home.
a. to calling b. not calling c. calling d. to call
 - I remember you when I arrived home, but you didn't answer my call.
a. to calling b. not calling c. calling d. to call
 - Do you regret your time?
a. not wasting b. wasting c. to wasting d. to waste
 - She regrets that she is guilty, but she thinks it is the right thing to do.
a. not to admit b. admit c. admitting d. to admit

4 to = in order to = so as to لكي

- عندما تُستخدم (to) بمعنى (لكي) يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر (inf.):
- I study hard to get good marks.
 - Sama went home early to welcome the visitors.

5 to + (inf. + ing)

5 من تغيير معين يأتي بعدما (to) جزاء من تغيير معين يأتي بعدما (inf. + ing). ومن أمثلة هذه التغييرات:

adapt to	يتأقلم مع	be accustomed to	يتعود على
apply ... to	ينطبق ... على	be opposed to	يرفض على
be used to	يكون معتاد على	lead to	يؤدي إلى
become used to	يصير معتاد على	look forward to	يرغب في
contribute to	يساهم في	object to	يرفض على
get used to	يتعود على	take to	يتعلق على

- I look forward to (am used to) spending the holidays in Sharm.
- Rodayna took to living in Aswan.

6 Expression + ing

التعبيرات التالية تأتي بعدما (inf. + ing):

be busy	مشغول به	feel like	يريد
be interested in	مهتم به	It's a waste of money	خسفة للمال
be worth	يستحق	It's a waste of time	ضيعة الوقت
can't help	لا يستطيع أن يترقب عن	It's no good	(لا فائدة من)
can't stand	لا يطاق	= It's no use	(لا فائدة من)

- It's no good / no use wasting time.
- I feel like / can't help eating sweets.

7 Special Cases خاصة حالات

الأمثلة التالية يمكن أن تأتي بعدما المفعول ثم (to + inf.):

advise	ينصح	invite	يدعو
allow	يسمح	motivate	يحفز
ask	يسأل	order	يأمر
beg	يتوسل	permit	يسمح
challenge	يتحدى	persuade	يغتنم
choose	يختار	promise	وعد
command	يأمر	remind	يذكر

encourage	يشجع	teach	يعلم
expect	يتوقع	tell	يأمر
force	يجبر	urge	يحث
help	يساعد	want	يريد
hire	يؤجر شخصاً	warn	يخبر
instruct	يأمر	would like	يريد / يود

- في المنى للمجهول تأتي (to + inf.) بعد الفعل مباشرة:

- Ola was advised to see a doctor.
- Ahmed is allowed to use Rodayna's toys (by her).
- We have been asked to write a letter.
- Mr Nasser will be chosen to be the manager.

10 الأفعال الآتية تأتي بعدما (inf. + ing) في حالة عدم وجود مفعول ، و تأتي بعدما (to + inf.) في حالة وجود مفعول:

advise	ينصح	recommend	يوصي به
allow	يسمح	permit	يسمح
forbid	يمنع	encourage	يشجع

- We don't allow smoking here.
- = We don't allow anyone to smoke here.

11 الأفعال الآتية يستخدمونها المصدر ليدل على أننا نأبنا الحدث بالكامل ونأتي بعدما (inf. + ing) ليدل على أننا نأبنا جزء من الحدث:

hear	يسمع	notice	يلحظ
see	يرى	watch	يشاهد

- I heard Mariam sing a song. = I heard the whole song.
- I heard Mariam singing a song. = I heard part of the song.

General Exercise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 Getting Started

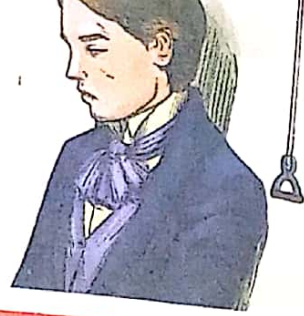
- We expect thousands of football fans the final match.
a. to be attended b. to attend c. attending d. attend
- We hope Mohammed Salah in England next Summer.
a. to meet b. meet c. to be meeting d. meeting
- He kept into the jungle as if there was no danger.
a. to go b. going c. to going d. to have gone
- The naughty boy promised the school principal well in class.
a. behaving b. to behave c. to have behaved d. to have behaved
- Gihan's mother forced her her room.
a. not to tidy b. tidying c. tidy d. to tidy
- Although my question was easy, he refused it.
a. answering b. for answering c. to answer d. answer
- My sister hates by air.
a. travelling b. to travelling c. travels d. travelled
- Huda admitted my pen without asking me.
a. borrow b. borrowed c. borrows d. borrowing
- In 1954, the government decided the High Dam.
a. built b. building c. to build d. had built
- They suggested for a picnic in the park.
a. to go b. goes c. has gone d. going
- She often avoids with strangers as she is very shy.
a. speaks b. to speak c. speak d. speaking
- He denied at the scene of the crime.
a. to be b. had been c. was d. being
- Would you mind the door, please?
a. closing b. to close c. closed d. to closing

II Special Cases

- I'd love to the party, but it is impossible.
a. to going b. to go c. going d. go
- I'd prefer a taxi.
a. getting b. to get c. to getting d. get
- Try to concentrate the task in your hand.
a. to achieve b. on achieve c. to achieving d. to be achieved
- I feel like to the cinema tonight.
a. go b. to go c. going d. to going
- I considered for the job, but in the end I decided against it.
a. apply b. applying c. to apply d. to applying
- Leila pretended me as she passed me in the street.
a. not see b. not seeing c. to seeing not d. not to see
- Rodayna always does her best first.
a. on coming b. to come c. to coming d. to be come
- Please, remember the door when you go out.
a. locking b. lock c. to locking d. to lock
- Our neighbours threatened the police if we didn't stop the noise.
a. to call b. calling c. call d. to calling
- The lifeguard instructed people not near the rocks.
a. swam b. having swam c. swimming d. to swim
- The police warned us out at night.
a. to not going b. not going c. not go d. not to go

29. What do you think the statue to fall?
a. demolished b. made c. caused d. divided
30. I don't think the film is worth
a. seeing b. to see c. to be seen d. to be seen
31. Did you remember my letter?
a. to have been seen b. post c. to post d. posting
32. On my way to the station, I stopped about Fatma.
a. posted b. ask c. to ask d. asked
33. Tom was used alone but now he lives with his grandparents.
a. asking b. to live c. live d. living
34. She isn't able to look after herself. She needs after.
a. to living b. to look c. to be looked d. look
35. A little boy was heard
a. cries b. cry c. to crying d. to cry
36. I'd rather at home tonight than go to the cinema.
a. stay b. to stay c. staying d. to staying
37. I regret to my father's advice. He was right.
a. not to listen b. not listen c. not listening d. not to listening
38. Eating too much fatty food will certainly lead weight.
a. to gain b. to gaining c. in gaining d. gained
39. It is a waste of time all these silly exercises.
a. do b. to do c. to doing d. doing
40. I can't stand next to these noisy neighbours.
a. living b. live c. to live d. to living
41. I saw an old man this busy street alone.
a. crosses b. to cross c. cross d. to crossing
42. I can't imagine a bike.
a. my father to ride b. my father riding c. riding my father d. to my father riding
43. Samia is busy the housework.
a. on doing b. do c. to do d. doing
44. Leen has finally taken in their new flat.
a. to living b. to live c. life d. living

45. You can't stop me what I want.
a. to doing b. doing c. to do d. do
46. It is no use over spilt milk.
a. cry b. crying c. to cry d. to crying
47. I regret you that you have failed the driving test.
a. tell b. telling c. to tell d. to telling
- Check your understanding**
48. "He doesn't smoke anymore." This means
a. he stopped to smoke. b. he stopped smoking. c. he has never smoked. d. a & c
49. "I remembered to call my mother before going to bed." What does this mean?
a. I remembered calling my mother. b. I remember that I call my mother. c. First I remembered, then I called my mother. d. First I called my mother, then I remembered.
50. "I have forgotten to bring my camera." This means
a. it is not with me now. b. it is with me now. c. I have forgotten bringing it. d. a & c
51. "It is impossible for me to stop watching football matches." What does this mean?
a. I am busy watching football matches. b. I can't help watching football matches. c. It is no use watching football matches. d. It is no good watching football matches.
52. "Omar got used to living on his own." - Omar
a. can't live alone b. hates living on his own c. doesn't live on his own d. took to living alone



Part I

Chapter 5

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة، لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocation المفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية والمشتقات

adopt(ed) (v)	يتبنى	half-brother(n)	أخ غير شقيق
be convinced	يكون مقتنعاً	inherit(ed) (v)	يرث
clerk(n)	موظف	jealous(adj)	حاقد
dare(d) (v)	يجرؤ	lodgings(n)	مأوي/مَسْكَن
fiancé(n)	خاطب	share(d)(v)	يتقاسم
get engaged	تتم خطبته/خطبتها	take revenge on	ينتقم من
grumpy(adj)	متأفف - غضبان		

2 Definitions تعريفات

لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيداً، فهي موضع امتحان.

تنويه

adopt(ed) (v)	يتبنى	to take legal responsibility for a person
be convinced	يكون مقتنعاً	to be completely sure that something is true
clerk(n)	موظف	a person who works in an office
dare(d) (v)	يجرؤ	to be brave enough to do something
fiancé(n)	خاطب	a man who has promised to marry someone
get engaged	تتم خطبته/خطبتها	to formally promise to marry someone
grumpy(adj)	متأفف - غضبان	to often be in a bad mood
half-brother(n)	أخ غير شقيق	someone who is the son of one of your parents
inherit(ed) (v)	يرث	to receive money from someone after they die
jealous(adj)	حاقد	feeling unhappy and angry because someone else has something you want

lodgings(n) مأوى / مسكن	a room or rooms in a house that a person rents
share(d)(v) يتقاسم	to divide something so that each person gets a part of it
take revenge on يتنقم من	to do something bad because someone has upset you or made you sad

3 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
cheerful	مبتهيج
disappointed	مُحبط
good-natured	ودود
grateful	ممتن / شاكر
handsome	وسيم
ordinary	عادي
pale	شاحب
proud	فخور
	happy (and smiling)
	sad (because something good did not happen)
	friendly
	happy (and saying thank you)
	beautiful (usually for a boy or a man)
	normal or typical
	white
	happy

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- To revenge on to do something bad to someone who was unpleasant to you.
a. take b. adopt c. inherit d. share
- To be means to be completely sure that something is true.
a. persuasive b. convinced c. grumpy d. jealous
- To is to receive something from someone else, usually in a will.
a. adopt b. get engaged c. dare d. inherit
- To is to be strong or brave enough.
a. get engaged b. dare c. adopt d. inherit
- To is to legally take someone else's child into your family.
a. adopt b. adapt c. dare d. inherit
- A is a person who works in an office.
a. half-brother b. clerk c. benefactor d. fiancé
- To be means to often be in a bad mood.
a. persuasive b. convinced c. grumpy d. jealous

- A is a man who has agreed to marry someone.
a. half-brother b. clerk c. benefactor d. fiancé
- To be means feeling unhappy and angry because someone else has something you want.
a. persuasive b. convinced c. grumpy d. jealous
- To is to agree to marry someone and give them a ring.
a. get engaged b. to dare c. dare d. inherit
- A is someone who is the son of one of your parents.
a. half-brother b. clerk c. benefactor d. fiancé

Part II

Skills

المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات في ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة علي حدة.

تنويه

1 Choose the best Arabic translation :

- I am very excited by this role and I hope you decide to offer me the position.

- أنا متحمس جدًا لهذه القاعدة وأتمنى أن تقرر أن تعرض عليّ هذا المنصب.
- أنا متحمس جدًا لهذا الدور وأتمنى أن تقرر أن تعرض عليّ هذا الموقع.
- أنا متحمس جدًا لهذا الدور وأتمنى أن تقرروا أن تمنحوني هذا المنصب.
- أنا متحمس جدًا لهذا الدور وأتمنى ألا تقرر أن تعرض عليّ هذا المنصب.

- When I join a virtual meeting, I switch on my camera and microphone so people can see and hear me.

- أ. عندما أنضم إلى اجتماع افتراضي، أقوم بتشغيل الكاميرا والميكروفون حتى يتمكن الأشخاص من رؤيتي والاستماع إليّ.
- ب. عندما أنضم إلى اجتماع افتراضي، أقوم بتشغيل الكاميرا والسماعة حتى يتمكن الأشخاص من رؤيتي والاستماع إليّ.
- ج. عندما أضم إلى اجتماع افتراضي، أقوم بتشغيل الكاميرا والميكروفون حتى يتمكن الأشخاص من رؤيتي والاستماع إليّ.
- د. عندما أنضم إلى اجتماع افتراضي، أقوم بأبدل الكاميرا والميكروفون حتى يتمكن الأشخاص من رؤيتي والاستماع إليّ.

- d. Digital communications have made it possible for all people to work from their home without having to go to the workplace.

٣. لقد بدأت الحكومة بالفعل في نقل مقار بعض الوزارات والإدارات الحكومية الهامة إلى العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة التي تم تزويدها بأحدث الإمكانيات التكنولوجية المتطورة.

- a. The government has already started moving the headquarters of some important government ministries and departments to the new administrative capital, which has been equipped with the latest advanced technological capabilities.
- b. The government has already started moving the headquarters of some important government ministries and departments to the new administrative capital, which has been equipped with the primary advanced technological capabilities.
- c. The government has already started moving the headquarters of some important government ministries and departments to the new administrative capital, which has been equipped with the latest advanced technological abilities.
- d. The government has already started moving the headquarters of all important government ministries and departments to the new administrative capital, which has been equipped with the latest advanced technological capabilities.

٤. من أولويات عملية تطوير التعليم في مصر خلق بيئة تعليمية جذابة تجعل الطالب محباً للمدرسة وللتعلم ومستمتعاً بالتعلم.

- a. One of the priorities of developing educational process in Egypt is to create an attractive learning environment that makes students like school and enjoy learning.
- b. One of the priorities of developing educational procession in Egypt is to create an unattractive learning environment that prepares students like school and enjoy learning.
- c. One of priorities of developing educational process in Egypt is to create an attractive learning environment that makes students live school and enjoy teaching.
- d. One the priorities of developing educational process in Egypt is to create and attractive learning universe that makes students like school and enjoy learning.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I keep all my important in a password protected steel safe.
a. documents b. presentations c. options d. backgrounds
2. Double on the browser to go online.
a. click b. record c. draw d. switch
3. This application helps me to the screen of my smart TV so that I can display videos from my mobile on the smart TV.
a. plug b. install c. destroy d. share
4. It is commonly known that stands for Information Technology.
a. version b. IT c. document d. application
5. To make a video call, you need to your camera on.
a. download b. suit c. join d. switch
6. I downloaded a powerful anti-virus
a. colleague b. consequence c. software d. study
7. Only one of the will be given the job.
a. forums b. spaces c. welfares d. interviewees
8. To is to improve and reach the same standard as other people in your class, group etc.
a. switch ... on b. switch ... off c. look into d. catch up with
9. We told one of the waiters that the music was too loud so she turned it
a. down b. up c. on d. off
10. Hurry up, Karim. I'm waiting for you to
a. catch up b. catch up with c. find out d. find out about
11. Hurry up, Sama. I'm waiting for you to us at the corner of the street.
a. catch up b. catch up with c. find out d. find out about
12. I wish my son computer games. He is addicted to them.
a. gave up b. hung up c. handed in d. blew up

13. My father has doing the same job since he graduated.
a. logged b. set off c. turned up d. gone on
14. If you walk into a busy street without looking, you risk
a. being b. to be c. be d. to being
15. I don't mind you the phone as long as you repay your calls.
a. used b. using c. to use d. to using
16. Don't be easily defeated. Keep yourself.
a. discouraging b. encouraging c. demotivating d. appointing

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

When people think of distinctive Scottish folk music, they usually think of the bagpipes. However, the instrument was not invented in Scotland. Experts think that the bagpipes must have first been played in Egypt in around the first century BCE, when a bag was added to a type of flute.

To play the bagpipes, a bag made from animal skin had to be filled with air. When the bagpipe player pressed the bag, air went into the instrument, so that the music could be continuous, even when the player stopped blowing.

The bagpipes were very popular and they were taken into the north of Europe by the Romans. People enjoyed listening to the bagpipes for about a thousand years. Then people started to spend more time indoors. Bagpipes, which are very loud, are not the kind of instrument that you want inside a house, so they became less popular in some countries.

In Scotland, however, people still love listening to them. The army used them to send messages; it is said that the bagpipes can be heard up to 16 kilometres away. For this reason, the English (who often had battles with the Scottish) banned people from playing the bagpipes at the end of the eighteenth century.

Today the bagpipes are played at many important processions and events throughout Scotland. But you don't have to go to Scotland to hear them. They are also popular in Ireland and parts of France, Spain and Turkey.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The second paragraph answers the question
 a. How can you play the bagpipes? b. How can you buy the bagpipes?
 c. Where are the bagpipes made? d. Who invented the bagpipes?
18. This passage is about
 a. bagpipes b. Scottish people
 c. music d. musical instruments
19. How did the bagpipes become popular in the north of Europe?
 a. They were taken there by the Romans.
 b. The Egyptians invaded Scotland.
 c. The British took the bagpipes there.
 d. The Scottish army took them there.
20. People don't want to listen to the bagpipes inside a house because
 a. women don't like them. b. they are expensive.
 c. they are very loud. d. the police ban them.
21. In 20 years, traditional folk music in Egypt will unless we enhance young people's interests in music.
 a. appear b. be popular c. be interesting d. disappear
22. When can you hear the bagpipes in Scotland nowadays?
 a. At war time only b. At important events
 c. At battle time only d. At very few festivals
23. We can infer from the passage that the word "distinctive" means
 a. sociable b. distinguishable c. affordable d. predictable
24. Why did the Scottish army use the bagpipes?
 a. To call soldiers for meals
 b. To send messages
 c. To celebrate the soldiers' weddings
 d. To entertain the soldiers in free time

★ **Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

In the 1700s, work was very different to today. Most people worked on farms or had traditional jobs as weavers, carpenters or builders, working in their own homes or in small workshops. At this time, work was done by hand or with the help of animals; nothing was mechanised and there were no factories.

The Industrial Revolution started in England towards the end of the eighteenth century. The most important invention of the time was the steam engine, which was used to power machines in factories. Thousands of new factories were built by businessmen who made money by producing goods quickly and efficiently. Many of the things that were produced in English factories were exported to countries all over the world.

This change in the way things were produced had a huge effect on people's lives. English towns and cities grew very fast because poor people from rural areas moved to find work in the new factories.

The Industrial Revolution not only made a few businessmen very rich, but also gave work to millions of ordinary people and improved their standard of living. Mass production brought down prices and meant that people could afford to buy things that had been too expensive for them in the past.

Industrialisation, which spread quickly from England to other parts of Europe and then to the rest of the world, has transformed people's lives in just over two hundred years. The fact that we can drive cars, watch televisions and use computers is all because of the Industrial Revolution.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

25. The best title for the passage is that
 a. The Industrial Revolution and its effect
 b. Primitive life and merchandise
 c. Industry nowadays
 d. Many English factories
26. In the near future, the industrial revolution will
 a. stop d. be limited
 c. last without stop d. continue to have an end
27. The Industrial Revolution reduced prices because of
 a. nobody wanted to buy goods b. the poor goods produced
 c. production was more than demand d. none of the above
28. Why did English towns and cities grow very fast?
 a. Because a lot of poor people from rural areas moved there.
 b. Because parents gave birth to a lot of children there.
 c. Because there was a lot food and cheap houses there.
 d. Because they worked at factories and got too much money.

29. According to the passage, which of the following inventions helped to start the Industrial Revolution?
a. the steam engine b. the wheel c. agriculture d. pacemakers

30. The main idea of the second paragraph is
a. the side effects of the steam engine
b. the start of the Industrial Revolution
c. many people left their houses to the villages.
d. the Industrial Revolution has many negative effects.

31. Industrialisation spread from England to other parts of Europe and the whole world.
a. slower b. fast c. slow d. higher

32. The more factories increase their production, people afford to buy it.
a. the less b. the more c. the least d. the fewest

A. Choose the best Arabic translation :

33. There are some measures that may keep you healthy for long. One of them is to brush your teeth with dental paste twice daily.

أ. يوجد بعض المعايير التي ربما تبيّك بصحة جيدة، لفترة طويلة. أحد هذه المعايير أن تغسل أسنانك بمعجون الأسنان مرتين يوميًا.

ب. يوجد العديد من المعايير التي ربما تحافظ عليك بصحة جيدة، أحد هذه المعايير أن تنظف أسنانك بفرشاة الأسنان مرتين يوميًا.

ج. هناك بعض عدد المعايير التي تبيّك بصحة جيدة. إحدى هذه المعايير غسل أسنانك بفرشاة الأسنان مرتين يوميًا.

د. هناك عدة المعايير التي ربما تحافظ على صحتك، أولى هذه المعايير أن تغسل فمك بفرشاة الأسنان مرتين كل يوم.

34. Some people need escapism stories to forget about their worries and troubles. These stories take them to the world of imagination and thinking.

أ. يحتاج بعض الناس لقصص للهروب من الواقع، ليبعدوا الأشياء التي تقلقهم ومتاعبهم، هذه القصص تسرح بهم لعالم من الخيال والاعتقاد.

ب. يحتاج بعض الناس لقصص هروبية، لينسوا الأشياء التي تقلقهم ومتاعبهم، هذه القصص تأخذهم لعالم خيالي معتقد به.

ج. يحتاج بعض الناس لقصص الهروب من الواقع لينسوا الأشياء التي تقلقهم ومتاعبهم. هذه القصص تأخذهم لعالم من الخيال والتفكير.

د. قد يحتاج بعض الناس لقصص التهرب من الواقع لكي يتذكروا الأشياء التي تقلقهم ومتاعبهم، هذه القصص تأخذهم لعالم من الخيال والتفكير.

B. Choose the best English translation :

٣٥. تتمتع مصر بمناخ جيد طوال العام ، فالشمس متوفرة في معظم شهور السنة ، ولهذا السبب تسعى مصر لاستخدام الطاقة الشمسية لتوليد الكهرباء .

a. Egypt has a good weather all the year. The sun was available most of months of the year. So, Egypt seeks to use the sun energy to generate electricity.

b. Egypt has a good climate all the year. The sun is available most of months of the year. So, Egypt seeks to use the solar energy to generate electricity.

c. Egypt has a good climate all the year. The sun is avoidable most of months of the year. So, Egypt seeks using the solar power to tolerate electricity.

d. Egypt had a good weather all the year. The sun is available most of months of the year. So, Egypt seeks using the solar power to tolerate electricity.

٣٦. الإرهاب مشكلة عالمية تواجه كل دول العالم ، فهي ليس شأنًا داخليًا يخص دولة أو مكان معين.

a. Terrorism is a national problem that faces all the world countries. It is not an internal affair that belongs to a specific place or country.

b. Terrorism is a global problem that forces all the world countries. It is not an internal affair that belongs to a special place or country.

c. Terrorism is a world problem that faces all the world countries. It is not an internal affair that belongs to a specific place or country.

d. Terrorism is an international problem that faces all the world countries. It is an external affair that belonged to a special place or country.

C. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

37. Which of the following has the correct ending punctuation mark ?

a. What a wonderful journey. b. What a wonderful journey !

c. What a wonderful journey ? d. What a wonderful journey"

38. Which of the following has the correct ending punctuation mark?

a. Were Mona to have a lot of money, she'd buy a new car?

b. Were Mona to have a lot of money, she'd buy a new car;

c. Were Mona to have a lot of money, she'd buy a new car.

d. Were Mona to have a lot of money, she'd buy a new car!

39. The of a business letter tells what it is going to be about.

a. body b. correspondence c. tone d. subject

40. You should not share in emails.

a. private information b. your password

c. your credit card number d. a, b & c

General Exercises

for Al Azhar students on Unit 5

تنويه

للمزيد من
التدريبات للأزهر
الشريف - بنك
الأسئلة

1. Finish the following dialogue :

A police officer is investigating a murder.

Officer : (1) _____ ?

Suspect : Yes, I went to that villa.

Officer : (2) _____ ?

Suspect : At about five

Officer : Can you tell me why you went there ?

Suspect : (3) _____

Officer : Did you fix the problem with the bathroom pipes ?

Suspect : (4) _____

Officer : Why ?

Suspect : Because the landlord refused to give me the money I asked for.

2. Write a paragraph of one hundred and twenty (120) words on :

"The future of work market"

3. Translate into Arabic :

Take advice from the wise and the experienced, not from the funny company around you.

4. Translate into English :

- لعلك تعلم أن من أهم سمات الإنسان الناجح هي التخطيط وتنظيم الوقت وتحديد الهدف.

5. Choose the correct answer : (Islamic selections)

- Khaled was a fighter.

(الأزهر - أدبي ٢٠٢١)

- a. prominent b. permanent c. proof d. proud



Part I

Vocabulary

• اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
• المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

assess(ed) (v)	يُقيّم	productive(adj)	مُثمر - مُنتج
decline(d) (v)	ينخفض بشدة - ينهار - يرفض	productivity(n)	الإنتاجية - العائد
decline (n)	انخفاض - انهيار	progress (n)	تَقَدُّم / تَحَسُّن
efficiency(n)	كفاءة	raise (d) (v)	يرفع - يزيد - يُحسِّن
efficient(adj)	كفء	switch(ed) off (v)	- يجمع (مال) يستريح لفترة
procrastinate(d) (v)	يُسوّف / يُماطل	vary(ied) (v)	قصيرة (يفصل) يُنوع - يتنوع - يُغيّر
procrastination(n)	التسويف / المماطلة		

2 Important Vocabulary

achieve(d) (v)	يُنجز - يُحقّق	habit(n)	عادة
aim(ed) (n/v)	هدف - يهدف	hand(ed) (v)	يُسَلِّم (شيء) باليد
allow(ed) (v)	يسمح - يُمكن	impossible(adj)	مستحيل
amongst(preposition)	بين	increase(d) (n/v)	زيادة - يزيد - يزداد
analysis(n)	تحليل	individual(n/adj)	فرد - فردي
awareness(n)	الوعي	interrupt(ed) (v)	يُقاطِع
brain(n)	المخ	lead - led (v)	يؤدي إلي
change(d) (n/v)	تغيير - يتغيّر	let - let - let (v)	يَدَع - يَسْمَح
common(adj)	شائع / منتشر	level(n)	مستوي
concentration(n)	التركيز	look(ed) at (phr. v)	يفحص - يُحلّل
conclusion(n)	استنتاج	look(ed) for (phr. v)	يبحث عن
delay(ed) (v/n)	يؤخر - يؤجل - تأخير / تأجيل	manage(d) (v)	يُدير - يتحكّم بـ
depending on	حسب - استناداً إلى	memory(n)	الذاكرة
distract(ed) (v)	يُشتّت - يصرف انتباهه	mention(ed) (v)	يذكر - يقول

effect(n)
effectively(adv)
effectiveness(n)
error(n)
exactly(adv)
excuse(d) (n/v)
factors(n)
finding(n)
follow(ed) (v)
force(d) (v/n)

أثر - نتيجة
بفاعلية
تأثير
خطأ
بالضبط
عذر - يُعذر
عوامل
اكتشاف - نتيجة
يتبع
يُجبر - يُرغم - قوة
permission(n)
pollution(n)
process(n)
recent(adj)
researcher(n)
session(n)
significantly(adv)
sort(n)
state(d) (v)

إذن - تصريح
التلوث
عملية
حديث
باحث
جلسة - دورة - مقابلة
بشكل ملحوظ
نوع
يذكر - يقول

3 Definitions تعريفات

assess(ed)(v) يُقَيِّم	to make a judgment حُكْم about a person or situation after thinking carefully about it
decline(d)(v) ينخفض بشدة - ينهار	to decrease in quantity الكمية or importance الأهمية
efficiency(n) كفاءة	the quality of doing something well and effectively, without wasting time, money, or energy
procrastinate(d)(v) يُسوِّف/يُماطل	to delay doing something that you ought to do, usually because you do not want to do it
procrastination(n) التسويف/المماطلة	the act of delaying something that you should do, usually because you do not want to do it
productive(adj) مُنتج - مُنتج	producing or achieving a lot
productivity(n) الإنتاجية	the rate مُعدَّل at which goods are produced, and the amount produced
progress(n) تقدُّم/تحسُّن	the process of getting better at doing something, or getting closer to finishing or achieving something
raise(d)(v) يرفع - يزيد	to increase an amount, number, or level
switch(ed) off (v) يستريح لفترة قصيرة (يفصل)	to relax for a short time
vary(ied)(v) يُنوع - يتنوع - يُغيِّر	to be different from each other in size, shape, etc.

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Key vocabulary

- In winter, the sales of ice cream usually
a. aim b. assess c. hand d. decline
- Fruit trees must be watered regularly to remain
a. productive b. individual c. efficiency d. recent
- You will never achieve any success if you continue to over each detail.
a. delay b. procrastinate c. interrupt d. raise
- negatively affects the amount of work you can do.
a. Procrastination b. Analysis c. Productivity d. Level
- I have achieved a clear in learning English.
a. process b. conclusion c. permission d. progress
- "There was a sharp decline in the number of tourists in 2020." In this sentence, the word 'decline' is a/an
a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb
- Being as a surgeon, he was accepted for the job.
a. impressed b. individual c. efficient d. recent
- The interview will the qualifications and skills of applicants.
a. aim b. assess c. hand d. decline
- You can and have a cold drink in the café.
a. lead b. vary c. distract d. switch off
- This printing company has improved the of educational books publishing in Egypt.
a. process b. conclusion c. efficiency d. session
- Your productivity would be if only you worked to a plan.
a. delayed b. procrastinated c. interrupted d. raised
- In Egypt, temperature from one region to another.
a. leads b. varies c. distracts d. switches off

2 Important vocabulary

- Making changes to your study habits will surely improve your
a. procrastination b. analysis c. productivity d. permission

14. Both hotels are OK. The cost is the only deciding
a. factor b. finding c. session d. error
15. Too much noise me while studying my lessons.
a. leads b. varies c. distracts d. switches off
16. "One feels safe amongst his/her family members". 'Amongst' is a/an
a. conjunction b. pronoun c. adverb d. preposition
17. The report most teenagers are addicted to online games.
a. forced b. stated c. mentioned d. b & c
18. The of the research on that medicine have surprised us. It is 100% safe.
a. factors b. findings c. sessions d. errors
19. This advertisement to promote our new product.
a. aims b. assesses c. hands d. declines
20. Don't try to draw any before you examine the information available.
a. processes b. conclusions c. efficiencies d. progress
21. The Media played an important role in raising the citizens' of the protective measures الإجراءات الوقائية against coronavirus.
a. permission b. concentration c. increase d. awareness
22. I have taken the decision on the available data.
a. depending b. affecting c. managing d. stating
23. The doctor said I would need five of therapy. العلاج
a. factors b. findings c. sessions d. errors
24. Professor Mustafa gave a detailed of the economic situation.
a. procrastination b. analysis c. productivity d. level
25. I have a/an interest in helping the poor and the homeless.
a. safe b. individual c. affected d. available
26. Your friends have an important on you.
a. effective b. effectively c. effectiveness d. effect
27. It is clear that this coronavirus vaccine is
a. effective b. effectively c. effectiveness d. effect
28. The of this coronavirus vaccine is clear.
a. effective b. effectively c. effectiveness d. effect

29. You can't leave school early without
a. permission b. concentration c. increase d. awareness
30. Those who what should be done to a later time will always be losers.
a. lay b. procrastinate c. assess d. raise
31. We need to look the data in hand before we decide.
a. for b. at c. after d. b & c
32. The application does not respond. It gives a/an message.
a. factor b. finding c. session d. error
33. I the letter to the manager who started to read it at once.
a. aimed b. assessed c. handed d. declined
34. Stress has a bad effect on your on your work.
a. permission b. concentration c. increase d. awareness
35. Hard work will surely to real success.
a. lead b. vary c. distract d. switch off
36. Have you heard of the changes in the team? Two super strikers have just been included.
a. useless b. individual c. protective d. recent
37. The learning never stops at any age.
a. process b. conclusion c. efficiency d. permission
38. Everyone in our street is looking the lost child.
a. for b. at c. after d. b & c
39. "Hand it to me carefully." In this sentence, the word 'hand' is a/an
a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb
40. Choosing the right time and the best place will raise your productivity
a. procrastination b. analysis c. permission d. level
41. Mr Mohammed blamed me for my friend while he was giving a speech.
a. linking b. supporting c. interrupting d. raising
42. Your school work is better this year. Keep hard work.
a. significant b. significantly c. individual d. individually

3 Definitions

43. To is to be different from each other in size, shape, etc.
a. assess b. decline c. procrastinate d. vary

44. To is to decrease in quantity or importance.
a. assess b. decline c. procrastinate d. vary
45. To is to make a judgment about a person or situation after thinking carefully about it.
a. assess b. decline c. procrastinate d. vary
46. To is to delay doing something that you ought to do, usually because you do not want to do it.
a. assess b. decline c. procrastinate d. vary
47. To is to relax for a short time.
a. delay b. achieve c. raise d. switch off
48. To is to increase an amount, number, or level.
a. delay b. achieve c. raise d. switch off
49. means producing or achieving a lot.
a. Individual b. Productive c. Impossible d. Common
50. is the quality of doing something well and effectively, without wasting time, money, or energy.
a. Efficiency b. Productivity c. Procrastination d. Progress
51. is the act of delaying something that you should do, usually because you do not want to do it.
a. Efficiency b. Productivity c. Procrastination d. Progress
52. is the rate at which goods are produced, and the amount produced.
a. Efficiency b. Productivity c. Procrastination d. Progress

Part II Vocabulary Study

تتويبه ساعد معلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلزمات لفظية

assess	productivity levels يُقيّم مستويات الإنتاجية	improve	productivity يُحسن الإنتاجية
		increase	awareness of يرفع الوعي بـ
become	more productive يُصبح أكثر إنتاجية	keep	a diary يُسجل مذكرات
do	a study يقوم بدراسة/بحث	make	changes to يُحدث تغييرات في
	good work يقوم بعمل جيد		more progress يُحقق تقدم أكبر

draw	a conclusion يصل لإستنتاج	raise	productivity يرفع الإنتاجية
	... back ... يستعيد		efficiency يرفع كفاءة
have	a very positive effect on لديه تأثير إيجابي جداً على	get	the same results يحصل على نفس النتائج
	an effect on له تأثير على	vary	study habits يُغيّر عادات المذاكرة

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Making some changes to your study habits may your productivity levels.
a. draw b. have c. improve d. become
- We are a scientific study on the application of technology in education.
a. varying b. doing c. having d. raising
- You can find out about anything he does if you read the diary he
a. states b. makes c. does d. keeps
- I tried to some conclusions but I didn't have enough evidence to depend on.
a. draw b. allow c. assess d. become
- You won't feel bored if you your study habits.
a. vary b. do c. have d. raise
- The progress my son has is quite good.
a. stated b. made c. did d. kept
- You'll more productive if you aren't distracted by unimportant details.
a. draw b. have c. assess d. become
- Thank you for the good work you've
a. told b. become c. done d. concentrated
- Working to a good plan and getting enough sleep will surely your efficiency.
a. vary b. do c. have d. raise
- I want to my money back, please.
a. state b. have c. assess d. become

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
assess(ed) (v)	يُقيّم	analyse / judge / evaluate
decline(d) (v)	ينخفض بشدة	reduce/decrease
decline(d) (v)	ينهار	deteriorate
decline(d) (v)	يرفض	turn down/reject/refuse
efficiency(n)	كفاءة	effectiveness / productivity/ competence
procrastinate(d) (v)	يُسوّف / يُماطل / يؤجل	put off / postpone/delay
productive(adj)	مُبدع - خلاق	inventive/creative
productive(adj)	مُثمر - مُنتج	useful / fertile/fruitful
progress (n)	تقدم / تحسن	advance / advancement/ development
raise (d) (v)	يرفع - يزيد	increase
raise (d) (v)	يربي	bring up
raise (d) (v)	يحسن	improve
vary(ied) (v)	يُتّوع - يُغيّر	change/diversify/modify/ alter
vary(ied) (v)	يختلف	differ

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)
decline(d) (v)	ينخفض بشدة	increase
decline(d) (v)	ينهار	flourish
decline(d) (v)	يرفض	accept
efficiency(n)	كفاءة	inefficiency / incompetence
productive(adj)	مُبدع - خلاق	unproductive
productive(adj)	مُثمر - مُنتج	unproductive - sterile
raise (d) (v)	يرفع - يزيد	lower/reduce
vary(ied) (v)	يُتّوع - يُغيّر	agree

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- "Parents do their best to raise their children." The verb 'raise' in this sentence is a synonym of
a. increase b. improve c. lower d. bring up
- "Abdulrahman comes up with productive ideas." The adjective 'productive' in this utterance is an antonym of
a. sterile b. creative c. inventive d. old-fashioned
- "She declined his offer to marry her saying they have different personalities." The verb 'declined' here gives an opposite meaning to
a. accepted b. flourished c. reduced d. turned down
- "People's opinions tend to vary according to culture and interests." The antonym of 'vary' here is
a. agree b. disagree c. differ d. modify
- "Mr Baleigh varies his teaching techniques and strategies according to students' levels." The synonym of 'varies' here is
a. agrees b. disagrees c. differs d. modifies
- "I knew he was a loser when he kept procrastinating in all the time." The word 'procrastinating' here can be replaced by
a. postponing b. putting off c. a & b d. putting away

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
assess(ed) يقيم - يقدر (الكمية أو العدد أو النسبة)	assessment تقييم - تقدير (الكمية أو العدد أو النسبة) assessor مُثَمِّن / مُقَدِّر / مُقَيِّم		
decline ينخفض بشدة - ينهار - يرفض	decline انخفاض - انهيار	declining مُتناقص - مُنخفض	
	efficiency كفاءة - جودة	efficient كفء	efficiently بكفاءة
procrastinate يُسوّف / يُماطل - يؤجل	procrastination التسويف / المماطلة - التأجيل		

produce يُنتِج - يُحْدِث - يُلِد	produce الْمُنْتِج (شخص/شركة) production مُنْتَج (عملية) الإنتاج product مُنْتَج productivity الإنتاجية - العائد reproduction التكاثر - النسخ	productive مُنْتِج - مُثْمِر - مُفِيد	productively بوفرة
progress يتقدم/يتطور - يتحسن - يستمر	progress تَقَدُّم - تَحَسُّن progression تَقَدُّم / تَطَوُّر - تَسْلُسُل / تَتَابُع	progressive تَقَدِّمِي / مُتَجَدِّد / مُتَحَرِّر	
vary يتنوع / يختلف - يَتَوَعَّ	variety تَنَوُّع - مجموعة متنوعة / اختلاف	various متنوع / مختلف variable مُتَغَيِّر / مُتَقَلِّب	variably بشكل متغير

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Time management and planning improve our
a. produce b. producer c. productive d. productivity
- Time management and planning make us more
a. produce b. product c. productive d. productivity
- In Japan, they high-quality electronic devices.
a. produce b. product c. production d. productivity
- Japan is famous for the of high-quality electronic devices.
a. produce b. product c. production d. producer
- Japan is a major of high-quality electronic devices.
a. produce b. product c. production d. producer
- These need more promotion. ترويج
a. produces b. products c. procrastinations d. productivities
- It is commonly admitted that destroys productivity.
a. assess b. assessment c. procrastinate d. procrastination
- Once you start to, you take the first step into failure.
a. assess b. assessment c. procrastinate d. procrastination
- "There's a decline in the growth rate." The word 'decline' here is
a/an
a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. pronoun

- She the dishes she prepares for her children to keep them healthy.
a. vary b. varies c. various d. variety
- Roses in colour and size.
a. vary b. varies c. various d. variety
- Roses are available in a of colours and sizes.
a. vary b. varies c. various d. variety
- Roses are available in colours and sizes.
a. vary b. varies c. various d. variety
- I don't agree with Ayman's of the situation.
a. assess b. assessment c. procrastinate d. procrastination

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a study into productivity دراسة عن الإنتاجية	look for an excuse يبحث عن عُذر
all night طوال الليل	on time في الوقت المُحدَّد
an increase in زيادة في	over a six-month period على مدار ست شهور
at different times في أوقات مُختلفة	productivity levels مستويات الإنتاجية
at the beginning of في بداية	research study دراسة بحثية
at the start of في بداية	see you then أراك حينئذ
be distracted by يتشتت بـ / ينشغل بـ	self-management إدارة الذات - التحكم في الذات
be happy with سعيد بـ - راض عن	study habits عادات الإستذكار
be true for صحيح بالنسبة لـ	the amount of work كَم العمل
cause and effect السبب والنتيجة	the way they study الطريقة التي يذاكرون بها
depending on على حسب	To be honest أصْدَقُك القَوْل
even better والأفضل من ذلك	try hard to يحاول جاهداً أن
in conclusion الخلاصة	until late into the evening حتى وقت متأخر من المساء
in detail بالتفصيل	

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

distract ... by يتشتت بـ / ينشغل بـ	prefer to يُفَضِّل أن
come over يزور	put ... away يضع ... بعيداً / في مكانه
find out يكشف	result in يؤدي إلى / يَخْلُص إلى
force ... to يُجبر ... أن	switch off يأخذ استراحة (يفصل)
hand ... to يُسَلِّم ... إلى	tends to يميل إلى أن
lead to+ noun/ (inf.+ing) يؤدي إلى	write down يُثَبِّل / يُسَجِّل
look at يفحص - يُحَلِّل	

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- "Hard work leads to success." This means hard work success.
a. looks at b. results in c. tends to d. switches of
- I want you to tell me what happened detail.
a. to b. at c. in d. for
- My biggest problem is that I am distracted the unimportant details.
a. for b. from c. at d. by
- That "Great Expectations" is the best novel is true most readers.
a. for b. from c. at d. by
- "I need some more time to examine the findings of the research." This means I want some more time to the research findings.
a. look at b. result in c. tend to d. switch of
- I will have to finish this job over a two- period
a. months b. month c. month's d. monthly
- "I'd like you come over on Monday evening." This means I want you to me.
a. discover b. find c. visit d. invite
- be honest, this course has too much grammar.
a. On b. At c. Of d. To
- Rodayna writes every word her teacher says.
a. with b. down c. on d. of
- My opinion might change depending what will happen.
a. on b. in c. into d. to

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

rise - raise

- rise (v) (بدون مفعول) تشرق
- The sun rises in the east.
- rise (v) (بدون مفعول) يستيقظ
- I rise at 6.00 in the morning.

تشرق

يستيقظ

- rise (v) (بدون مفعول)
- When the visitor entered, all students rose.
- rise (v) (بدون مفعول)
- Prices of cars have risen.
- raise (d) + مفعول
- Raise your hand if you want to answer.
- raise (d) + مفعول
- We raised a lot of money for the charity.
- raise (d) + مفعول
- My uncle raises cattle and sheep.
- raise + مفعول
- The general manager raised the issue of the employees' salaries during the last meeting.

ينهض / يقف (من الجلوس)

يرتفع / يزداد

يرفع

يجمع مال

يُرَبِّي

يطرح موضوع للنقاش

among - between

- يُستخدَم حرف الجر (among/amongst) بمعنى (بين) فيما يخص المكان عندما يقع شيء بين أكثر من طرفين:
بين (أكثر من طرفين)
- Among / amongst
- Sama entered the school and quickly disappeared amongst her schoolmates.
- يُستخدَم حرف الجر (between/in between) بمعنى (بين) فيما يخص المكان عندما يقع شيء بين طرفين:
بين (طرفين)
- between / in between
- The bakery is between the supermarket and the pharmacy.
- يُستخدَم حرف الجر (between) وليس (among/amongst) بعد بعض الأسماء المجردة مثل:
love - cooperation - relationship - difference ...
- The relationship between my family members is all right.

efficient - sufficient

- efficient
كفاء (علي درجة عالية من الجودة أو المهارة)
- I expect such an efficient doctor will achieve great success.
- sufficient
كاف (من حيث الكمية أو العدد أو النسبة)
- I need sufficient time to deal with the problem.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I wonder how they could three children on such a low income.
 a. raise b. rise c. fall d. drop
- I haven't expected him to early because he went to bed very late.
 a. raise b. rise c. fall d. drop
- There's a mobile shop the restaurant and the cloths shop.
 a. among b. amongst c. a & b d. between
- I guess you won't recognize Yara this large number of girls.
 a. among b. amongst c. a & b d. between
- Can you tell the difference these three words?
 a. among b. amongst c. a & b d. between
- Mum prepared lunch for ten people.
 a. sufficient b. sufficiently c. efficient d. efficiently
- Email is a/an way of communication. It is fast and safe at the same time.
 a. sufficient b. sufficiently c. efficient d. efficiently

8 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات

assess

• assess [v]

- This research aims to assess the effect of using mobile phones on children.

• be assessed as + noun / (inf.+ing)

- This patient has been assessed as suffering from diabetes.

• be assessed at

- This house was assessed at five million dollars.

• assessment [n]

- I am waiting for your assessment of the situation.

- make/do/carry out an assessment
 - an objective assessment
 - personal assessment
 - continuous assessment

يقيم - يحدد قيمة - يُقدّر

بم تقيمه على أنه

يُقدّر به / تبلغ قيمته

عملية التقييم - تقدير القيمة - التثمين

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

procrastinate

• procrastinate [v]

- Many students procrastinate when it comes to studying their lessons.

• procrastination [n]

- Procrastination is the first enemy of success.

productivity

• produce [v]

- This factory produces 20,000 washing machines a month.
 - The wind is used to produce electricity.
 - Global warming has produced an increase in sea levels.
 - This factory produces harmful smoke.
 - A dog can produce puppies

• produce [n]

- Milk, butter and cheese are all farm produce. (NOT: farm produces)

• producer [n]

- Film producers make a lot of money.

• product [n]

- Milk is one of our farm products.

• production [n]

- Food production is necessary to feed the ever-growing population.
 - There's a drop in milk production.

• productivity [n]

- Good work environment raises the productivity of workers.

• productive [adj]

- Good work environment makes workers more productive.

• productive [adj]

- We have 350 productive employees who are actually involved in the production process. (NOT: employees who are productive)

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

A report on a recent⁽¹⁾ study into productivity amongst⁽²⁾ students

In our research study, we assessed⁽³⁾ the productivity⁽⁴⁾ levels⁽⁵⁾ of sixteen to eighteen-year-old students. The aim⁽⁶⁾ was to find out which situations led⁽⁷⁾ to an increase⁽⁸⁾ in the students' productivity levels while they are studying. We chose a group of 250 students and asked them to keep a diary⁽⁹⁾ over a six-month period. In these diaries they wrote down⁽¹⁰⁾ how much time they spent studying every day and what they achieved.

At the start of the study, we asked all the students to make a change⁽¹¹⁾ to their study habits⁽¹²⁾. We wanted to find out⁽¹³⁾ what effect⁽¹⁴⁾ this change would have on the students' productivity. We repeated this process⁽¹⁵⁾ at the start of every month for the rest of the study to look at⁽¹⁶⁾ the effects of varying⁽¹⁷⁾ study habits.

Our analysis⁽¹⁸⁾ of the students' diaries resulted in⁽¹⁹⁾ some interesting conclusions⁽²⁰⁾. We noticed that most students' productivity levels increased significantly⁽²¹⁾ when they got up earlier to study before school. This was even true for students who had said they weren't very efficient⁽²²⁾ when they studied early in the morning.

On the other hand, most students' productivity levels declined⁽²³⁾ significantly when they regularly studied until⁽²⁴⁾ late into the evening. Another interesting finding⁽²⁵⁾ was that studying with other students had a very positive⁽²⁶⁾ effect on some students' productivity levels, but a very negative⁽²⁷⁾ effect on other students' productivity levels.

In conclusion, we can state⁽²⁸⁾ that studying in the morning seems to help most students to become more productive⁽²⁹⁾, but the effects of other factors⁽³⁰⁾, like whether or not students study alone⁽³¹⁾, vary, depending on⁽³²⁾ the individual⁽³³⁾.

(SB page 64)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) حديث
- (2) بين
- (3) يُقَيِّم
- (4) الإنتاجية
- (5) مستويات
- (6) الهدف
- (7) يؤدي إلى
- (8) زيادة
- (9) مُفَكِّرَة يوميات
- (10) يُدَوِّن / يُسَجِّل
- (11) تغيير
- (12) عادات
- (13) يكتشف
- (14) أثر - نتيجة
- (15) عملية
- (16) يفحص - يُحِلِّل
- (17) يُغَيِّر - يُنَوِّع
- (18) تحليل
- (19) يكشف عن - يُخْلَص إلى
- (20) استنتاج
- (21) بشكل ملحوظ
- (22) كفاء
- (23) ينخفض بشدة - ينهار
- (24) حتى/الغاية
- (25) اكتشاف - نتيجة
- (26) إيجابي
- (27) سلبي
- (28) يُذَكِّر - يقول
- (29) مُثْمِر - مُنتِج
- (30) عوامل
- (31) بمفرده
- (32) حسب - استناداً إلى
- (33) الفرد

Amany : Yes, exactly⁽⁵⁾. You need to do good work, but get it done faster by increasing your productivity. First, **assess**⁽⁶⁾ when and where you find it easiest to work. You could try to vary the time and place where you work and see what happens **at different times**⁽⁷⁾ and in different places.

Eman : That's a good idea. I'll try doing that and **hopefully**⁽⁸⁾ I'll soon be making more progress with my homework.

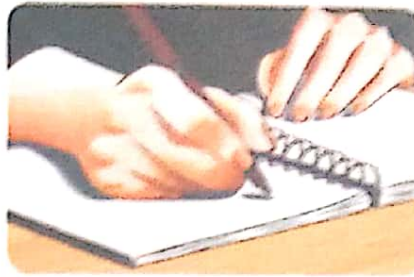
(5) بالضبط

(6) يقيم

(7) في أوقات مختلفة

(8) على أمل أن

Productivity means **managing**⁽¹⁾ your **study**⁽²⁾ or work time so that you get all your work done in the time you have, but also doing that work well.



When people ask me for **tips**⁽³⁾ about how to be productive, the first thing I tell them is that everyone's different, so different things will help different people. Let's start with the place where you work. It's a good idea to try out different places and **assess**⁽⁴⁾ where you can **concentrate**⁽⁵⁾ the best and get the most work done. For example, going to a café to work or study might help some people to **make faster progress**⁽⁶⁾, but it may make it harder for other people to concentrate and they'll get less work done. You need to find the best place for you.

The same is **true for**⁽⁷⁾ the time of day you study. Some people are 'early birds' and their efficiency **tends**⁽⁸⁾ to be higher in the morning. **Whereas**⁽⁹⁾ other people are 'night owls'⁽¹⁰⁾ who are most productive in the evening. Try working at different times of day and find out which time of day is best for you. Then make sure that you always work or study at that time.

Whatever⁽¹¹⁾ type of person you are, your productivity levels will decline when you try to do several different **tasks**⁽¹²⁾ at the same time, or you quickly move from one task to another. So that's **definitely**⁽¹³⁾ something to **avoid**⁽¹⁴⁾ if you want to raise your productivity levels. **Instead**⁽¹⁵⁾, you should complete one task and then **move on to**⁽¹⁶⁾ the next.

(SB page 63)

Check Vocabulary

(1) يدير/يسيطر

(2) دراسة

(3) نصائح

(4) يقيم/يختار

(5) يركز

(6) يحقق تقدم أسرع

(7) بصفتي علي

(8) يميل

(9) بينما

(10) بومة

(11) مهما يكن

(12) مهام

(13) من المؤكد

(14) يتجنب/يتحاشى

(15) بدلاً من ذلك

(16) ينتقل إلى

تم تقسيم القواعد اللغوية علي دروس الوحدة ليتمكن الطالب من إتقانها.

تنويه

Causative Verbs : Part 1 (make - let / allow - stop)

1. make يجعل / يجبر

١ يُستخدم الفعل (make) بمعنى (يجعل / يجبر) في الصيغة السببية في المبني للمعلوم كما يلي:

المصدر. inf. + مفعول. obj. + make (حسب الزمن) + فاعل. subj.

- Mr Mohammed **made** the students **work** hard. (NOT: to work)

- Mum **makes** me **do** the shopping. (NOT: to do).

٢ وفي المبني للمجهول تكون الصيغة كما يلي:

المصدر. be + made + to + inf. (حسب الزمن) + مفعول. obj.

- The students **were made to work** hard (by Mr Mohammed).

- I **am made to do** the shopping (by mum).

٣ الفعل (make) هو الذي يُحدد زمن الجملة:

- Leen **makes** Rokaya **do** the cooking. (مضارع بسيط معلوم)

- Rokaya **is made to do** the cooking (by Leen). (مضارع بسيط مجهول)

- Leen **made** Rokaya **do** the cooking. (ماضي بسيط معلوم)

- Rokaya **was made to do** the cooking (by Leen). (ماضي بسيط مجهول)

- Leen **is making** Rokaya **do** the cooking. (مضارع مستمر معلوم)

- Rokaya **is being made to do** the cooking (by Leen). (مضارع مستمر مجهول)

- Leen **was making** Rokaya **do** the cooking. (ماضي مستمر معلوم)

- Rokaya **was being made to do** the cooking (by Leen). (ماضي مستمر مجهول)

- Leen **has made** Rokaya **do** the cooking. (مضارع تام معلوم)

- Rokaya **has been made to do** the cooking (by Leen). (مضارع تام مجهول)

- Leen **had made** Rokaya **do** the cooking. (ماضي تام معلوم)

- Rokaya **had been made to do** the cooking (by Leen). (ماضي تام مجهول)

- Leen **will make** Rokaya **do** the cooking. (مستقبل بسيط معلوم)

- Rokaya **will be made to do** the cooking (by Leen). (مستقبل بسيط مجهول)

تتحوّل ضمائر المفعول إلى ضمائر فاعل عند استخدامها في بداية الجملة المبنية للمجهول والعكس بالنسبة للضمير الفاعل :

I	we	you	he	she	it	they
me	us	you	him	her	it	them

لاحظ ذلك في المثال التالي :

- He made **me** wait for an hour. (معلوم)

- I was made to wait for an hour (by **him**). (مجهول)

لاحظ الصيغة التالية في المبنى للمجهول:

- Subj. + فاعل + make (حسب الزمن) + obj. + مفعول + inf. المصدر
- Subj. + فاعل + force (حسب الزمن) + obj. + مفعول + to + inf. المصدر
- The manager **made** the employees **do** extra hours.
- The manager **forced** the employees **to do** extra hours.

لاحظ الصيغة التالية في المبنى للمجهول:

- Obj. + مفعول + be (حسب الزمن) + made + to + inf. المصدر
- Obj. + مفعول + be (حسب الزمن) + forced + to + inf. المصدر
- The employees **were made to do** extra hours.
- The employees **were forced to do** extra hours.

لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

- Subj. + فاعل + make (حسب الزمن) + obj. + مفعول + adj. صفة
- The good news **has made** us **happy**.

2. let - allow يسمح / يدع

يُستخدَم الفعلين (let/allow) بمعنى (يسمح/يدع) في الصيغة السببية في المبنى للمجهول كما يلي:

- Subj. + فاعل + let (حسب الزمن) + obj. + مفعول + inf. المصدر
- Subj. + فاعل + allowed (حسب الزمن) + obj. + مفعول + to + inf. المصدر
- Mr father **let** me **go** out with my friends. (NOT: to go)
- Mr father **allowed** me **to go** out with my friends. (NOT: go)
- Omar **lets** the children **play** in the garden. (NOT: to play)
- Omar **allows** the children **to play** in the garden. (NOT: play)

في المبنى للمجهول يُستخدَم الفعل (allow) فقط وليس (let):

- المصدر + allowed + to + inf. (حسب الزمن) + be + مفعول + Obj.
- I **was allowed to go** out with my friends (by my father). (NOT: was let)
- The children **are allowed to play** in the garden (by Omar). (NOT: were let)

لاحظ استخدام (let) مع الضمائر المنعكسة في الصيغة التالية:

- ... let + myself/himself/herself/itself/yourself/yourselves/ourselves/themselves + be + p.p. ...

- He **let himself be tricked** by a stranger.
- Don't **let yourselves be laughed at**.

- وفي حالة وجود فعل لازم (لا يأخذ مفعول) بعد الضمير المنعكس نستخدم (inf.) وليس (be + p.p.):
- She **let herself fall** off her bike. (NOT: be fallen)

في حالة وجود مفعول بعد (allow) يأتي بعدهما (to + inf.):

- ... allow + obj. + to + inf.

- Mr Ayman doesn't **allow anyone to use** the office laptop.

- وفي حالة عدم وجود مفعول بعد (allow) يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing) في المبنى للمجهول:

- Mr Ayman doesn't **allow using** the office laptop.

لاحظ الصيغ التالية:

- ... allow + obj. + noun

- The law **allows citizens responsible freedom**.

- ... allow + noun

- The law **allows responsible freedom**.

3. stop ... from يمنع ... من

يُستخدَم الفعل (stop) بمعنى (يمنع/يوقف) في المبنى للمجهول كما يلي:

- Subj. + فاعل + stop (حسب الزمن) + obj. + مفعول + from + (inf. + ing) ...
- Subj. + فاعل + stop (حسب الزمن) + obj. + مفعول + (inf. + ing) ...
- Mr Ali **has stopped** us **from making** noise.
- Mr Ali **has stopped** us **making** noise.

استخدم الفعل (stop) بمعنى (توقف/وقف) في الجمل المبسطة كما يلي:

- Obj. + be (حسب الزمن) + stopped + from + (inf. + ing) ...

- We have been stopped from making noise (by Mr Ali).



General Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Mr Ashraf made us the essay again.
a. write b. writing c. to write d. be written
- We were made the essay again.
a. write b. writing c. to write d. be written
- Mariam to revise for the exams.
a. make b. made c. was made d. been made
- Mum Marian revise for the exams.
a. make b. made c. was made d. been made
- Can you tell me what has made get so nervous?
a. herself b. she c. hers d. her
- I happy when I heard about your success.
a. made b. was made c. allowed d. was allowed
- The coach me do fitness training at the moment.
a. is making b. had made c. made d. will make
- Success makes everybody
a. happy b. happily c. feels happy d. to feel happy
- Mai was made the cooking when her mum was away.
a. to be done b. done c. do d. to do
- We are to follow the law.
a. made b. forced c. a & b d. let
- The officer forced to put his gun down and raise his hands.
a. he b. him c. his d. himself
- Never a little child to go out on their own.
a. let b. make c. allow d. a & b
- Never a little child go out on their own.
a. let b. make c. allow d. a & b

408

Let's get it done !

- Areej let me her marker.
a. use b. to use c. be used d. using
- Areej allowed me her marker.
a. use b. to use c. be used d. using
- Areej allowed her marker.
a. use b. to use c. be used d. using
- I out.
a. allowed to go b. was allowed to go c. let to go d. was let to go
- I don't allow others my bike.
a. to ride b. ride c. riding d. to be ridden
- I don't let others my bike.
a. to ride b. ride c. riding d. to be ridden
- I don't allow my bike.
a. to ride b. ride c. riding d. to be ridden
- You are the right to vote.
a. let b. made c. stopped d. allowed
- They personal calls at work.
a. aren't allowed b. aren't let c. let d. are made
- I stopped the children on the grass.
a. from walking b. walking c. a & b d. to walk
- I Salma making noise.
a. let b. stopped c. made d. b & c
- "I made her tell the truth." - was made to tell the truth.
a. She b. Her c. I d. Me
- I let them have a break." - They were have a break.
a. let b. made c. allowed d. allowed to
- She makes us laugh." - are made to laugh.
a. She b. Her c. We d. Us
- I will allow you to leave." - I will you leave.
a. allow b. let c. stop d. a & b
- "Mona let her friends use her camera." - Mona's friends were
a. allowed to use b. let to use c. stopped from using d. stopped using

409



Part I

Vocabulary & Definitions

• اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المصاحف التفاعلية.
• المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

تنويه

1 Important Vocabulary

absolutely(adv)	تماماً	improve(d) (v)	يُحسّن
active(adj)	نشط / نشيط	go for (phr.v)	يُريد
alternative(n/adj)	بدل	logic(n)	منطق
analyse(d) (v)	يُحلّل	massive(adj)	ضخم / هائل
benefit(n)	فائدة	mentally(adv)	ذهنياً / عقلياً
blog(ged) (v/n)	يقوم بالتدوين - مُلونة	option(n)	خيار / اختيار
brainstorm(ed) (v)	يستثير الفكر - يعصف ذهنياً	organised(adj)	مُنظم
carry(ied) on (phr. v)	يستمر في	overall(adv)	في المِجْمَل / ككل
chaos(n)	الفوضى	performance(n)	أداء
coach(n)	مُدرّب	period(n)	فترة
come round to(phr.v)	يغير رأيه الي	pillow(n)	وسادة
cycling(n)	ركوب الدراجات	point(n)	نقطة / وجهة نظر - نقطة
cyclist(n)	دراج	plug(n)	سداة / مقبس
definitely(adv)	بالتأكيد	priority(n)	أولوية
depression(n)	اكتئاب	refresh(ed) (v)	يُبعث / يجدد نشاط
decide on(phr.v)	يختار	reflect(ed) (n)	يعن التفكير
diet(n)	نظام غذائي	reflection(n)	إعانة التفكير
difference(n)	اختلاف / فرق	set - set - set (v)	يضبط
disturb(ed) (n)	يزعج	strategy(n)	خطة / سياسة (استراتيجية)
drawback(n)	سلبية	suppose(d) (v)	يفترض
evaluate(d) (v)	يُقيّم	take action	يتعرف
evidence(n)	دليل	task(n)	مهمة
expand(ed) (n)	يفسر / يسهب في	tough(adj)	صارم / صعب
focused(adj)	في حالة تركيز	unpleasant(adj)	غير سار
forward(adj.)	مسبق / مقدماً	waste(n)	تضييع / إهدار
grades(n)	علامات / درجات	well - being(n)	رفاهية
impact(n)	أثر - انطباع	world record(n)	رقم قياسي عالمي
importance(n)	أهمية		

2 Definitions تعريفات

analyse(d)(v) يُحلّل	to examine يفحص or think about something carefully, in order to understand it
blog(ged)(v) يقوم بالتدوين	to keep a blog; مُلونة to write something in a blog
brainstorm(ed)(v) يستثير الفكر - يعصف ذهنياً	to have a discussion or meeting with other people at work, to suggest a lot of ideas for an activity or for solving a problem
carry(ied) on (phr. v) يستمر في	to continue doing something
evaluate(d) (v) يُقيّم	to judge يحكم how good, useful, or successful something is
evidence(n) دليل	facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true
priority(n) أولوية	the thing that you think is most important and that needs attention before anything else
strategy(n) خطة / سياسة (استراتيجية)	a planned series سلسلة of actions for achieving something

General Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Important Vocabulary

- Well done, Rokaya! hard work.
a. Brainstorm b. Carry on c. Waste d. Suppose
- My brother is a/an member of a charity. He exerts great efforts.
a. unpleasant b. frustrated c. active d. massive
- I understand the of taking breaks. It raises productivity.
a. difference b. option c. pillow d. logic
- I need support with the I was asked to do.
a. evidence b. strategy c. importance d. task
- Stress affects your at work. It reduces your productivity.
a. drawback b. priority c. performance d. alternative

6. Taking breaks while working is necessary to you.
a. blog b. evaluate c. refresh d. analyse
7. Before we start the reading lessons, Mr Mohammed usually ideas.
a. brainstorms b. carries on c. wastes d. supposes
8. I have no but to follow the rules. I've no choice.
a. difference b. option c. pillow d. logic
9. I lost my money and I had to borrow. It was a/an situation.
a. unpleasant b. focused c. active d. massive
10. No one can deny the of education to the progress of nations.
a. evidence b. strategy c. importance d. task
11. Low productivity is a/an of being overworked.
a. drawback b. priority c. performance d. alternative
12. It is important to your productivity after the changes you've made to see if they had positive effects.
a. blog b. evaluate c. refresh d. adopt
13. Never your time or energy.
a. brainstorm b. carry on c. waste d. suppose
14. I can't tell the between the two mobiles. They're exactly the same.
a. difference b. option c. pillow d. logic
15. The High Dam is a/an work of modern engineering.
a. unpleasant b. focused c. active d. massive
16. The you followed to solve the problem was really effective.
a. waste b. strategy c. importance d. task
17. Solar energy is a clean to fossil fuels.
a. drawback b. priority c. performance d. alternative
18. It is the first time for me to That's why I don't have much likes or comments.
a. blog b. evaluate c. refresh d. analyse
19. My mother has gone shopping, I
a. brainstorm b. carry on c. waste d. suppose
20. To have a good night's sleep, you need a comfortable
a. difference b. option c. pillow d. logic
21. Your health is a/an It is the first thing you need to look after.
a. drawback b. priority c. performance d. alternative

2 Definitions

22. To is to judge how good, useful, or successful something is.
a. blog b. carry on c. evaluate d. brainstorm
23. To is to keep a blog; to write something in a blog.
a. blog b. carry on c. evaluate d. brainstorm
24. To is to examine or think about something carefully, in order to understand it.
a. analyse b. carry on c. evaluate d. brainstorm
25. To is to continue doing something.
a. analyse b. carry on c. evaluate d. brainstorm
26. means facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true.
a. Blog b. Priority c. Evidence d. Strategy
27. To is to have a discussion or meeting with other people at work, to suggest a lot of ideas for an activity or for solving a problem.
a. analyse b. carry on c. evaluate d. brainstorm
28. is the thing that you think is most important and that needs attention before anything else.
a. Blog b. Priority c. Evidence d. Strategy

Part II Vocabulary Study

تتويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

brainstorm	ideas يقوم بالعصف الذهني للأفكار	get	better organised يُصبح أكثر تنظيماً
do	a task يؤدي مهمة	give	evidence يُقدم الدليل/ يبرهن
have	a break يأخذ استراحة	reach	a conclusion يصل لإستنتاج
make	sure يتيقن	set	an alarm يضبط المنبه
	a big difference يُحدث فرقاً كبيراً	take	a break يأخذ استراحة
	changes to يُحدث تغييرات في	use	a strategy يستخدم خطة (استراتيجية)

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- How many tasks have you so far?
a. told b. reached c. brainstormed d. done
- It is recommended that you a break between work hours.
a. reach b. make c. take d. set
- Your time will better organized if you work to a plan.
a. get b. give c. brainstorm d. do
- After two hours of discussion, we finally a conclusion.
a. reached b. did c. took d. set
- The ideas we have are all productive.
a. got b. given c. brainstormed d. done
- My best friends a big difference in my life.
a. reach b. make c. take d. set
- You need to evidence to back up what you say.
a. get b. give c. brainstorm d. do
- I got up late since I had forgotten to the alarm.
a. reach b. make c. take d. set

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a positive impact on	أثر إيجابي على	mentally active	نشط ذهنياً
at all	على الإطلاق	pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
brainstorming session	جلسة عصف ذهني	put ... into practice	يُطبق / يُدخل حيّز التنفيذ
eat healthily	يأكل بشكل صحي	revise for exams	يراجع للإمتحانات
feel less stressed about	يشعر بتوتر أقل من	set a world record	يُسجل رقماً قياسياً عالمياً
looking back	بالعودة للوراء	sleeping habits	عادات النوم

3 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

add ... to	يضيف ... إلى	improve ... by	يُحسن ... بنسبة
carry on = go on/continue	يستمر في	increase by	يزداد بنسبة
focus on	يركّز على	take part in	يشارك في
go with = continue	يتلازم مع	wake up	يستيقظ

Mini Test 2 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The employment rate مُعدّل التوظيف has increased 3%.
a. in b. for c. by d. from
- back, I realize how hard my parents tried to bring me up.
a. Look b. Looking c. Looked d. To look
- "She carried on looking after her parents." The phrasal verb 'carried on' here means
a. went on b. continued c. interrupted d. a & b
- I look forward to taking the final match.
a. out b. after c. part in d. place
- To raise your productivity, keep focused the task in hand.
a. on b. to c. with d. by
- I don't like grilled fish all.
a. from b. with c. for d. at
- Success goes working hard.
a. up b. with c. down d. out
- It matters how you will put this plan
a. into practice b. into practise c. away d. away from

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

Trying to raise my productivity levels:

(SB page 67)

Week 1

I tried dividing my study time into twenty-five-minute periods ⁽¹⁾ and taking breaks between them. I can understand the logic ⁽²⁾ of doing this and I'm sure it helps some people to concentrate better because they only have to concentrate for short periods.



Check Vocabulary

- فترة
- منطق

However, the big drawback⁽³⁾ for me was that I kept looking at the time to see when it was time to have a break. Looking back, I suppose⁽⁴⁾ I should have set⁽⁵⁾ an alarm⁽⁶⁾ instead so I didn't have to do that and then it might have been more helpful for me.

I decided to always do the task⁽⁷⁾ that I found the most difficult first and, of course, this was quite hard to do at first because it isn't what you naturally want to do. However, I kept going with it and after a few days, I noticed how it was helping me to manage⁽⁸⁾ my time better and meant that I made a better job of the unpleasant⁽⁹⁾ tasks than I did before. This definitely⁽¹⁰⁾ had a positive impact on my productivity.

I liked the idea of making a study plan because I thought it would help me to get better organised⁽¹¹⁾. It definitely helped me to feel less stressed about what I needed to do because I wrote down exactly what I had to do in a list and that made it seem easier to get everything done. I was surprised by what a big difference⁽¹²⁾ the study plan made. I'm definitely going to carry on⁽¹³⁾ making study plans.

- (3) سلبية
- (4) يفترض
- (5) يضبط
- (6) منبه
- (7) مهمة
- (8) يدير
- (9) غير سار
- (10) بالتأكيد
- (11) مُنظَّم
- (12) اختلاف/فرق
- (13) يستمر في

Huge benefits⁽¹⁾ from small changes

(WB page 4)

The last time I blogged,⁽²⁾ I was worried about my exams. Well, you won't believe what happened!

A teacher told me about a coach⁽³⁾ called David Brailsford. He helped the British Olympic cycling⁽⁴⁾ team set 7 world records⁽⁵⁾ in the 2012 London Olympics. But how did this coach change their performance⁽⁶⁾? Well, he analysed⁽⁷⁾ absolutely⁽⁸⁾ everything and improved⁽⁹⁾ each thing by 1%. He made lots of small changes to the cyclists'⁽¹⁰⁾ clothes, their diet⁽¹¹⁾ and even their pillows⁽¹²⁾! It had a very positive impact⁽¹³⁾ on their productivity.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) يقوم بالتدوين
- (2) فائدة
- (3) مُدرَّب
- (4) ركوب الدراجات
- (5) رقم قياسي عالمي
- (6) أداء
- (7) يُحلِّل
- (8) تماماً
- (9) يُحسِّن
- (10) ذِراج
- (11) نظام غذائي
- (12) وسادة
- (13) أثر - انطباع

So, I thought I'd do the same to help me study more effectively. I looked into the following areas:

- when I concentrate best
- for how long I can concentrate before I need a break
- where I concentrate best
- how I sleep best
- what food makes me feel my best

At first, I thought it was a waste⁽¹⁴⁾ of time but I kept going with it. I realised I was more mentally⁽¹⁵⁾ active⁽¹⁶⁾ in the morning and after 6 pm so that's when I studied the most difficult subjects. I also reduced the amount I ate for dinner and bought some ear plugs⁽¹⁷⁾ to avoid any outside noise. I now wake up⁽¹⁸⁾ feeling really refreshed⁽¹⁹⁾ and ready to go.

Did it work? Well, I was surprised by what a big difference this strategy⁽²⁰⁾ made. In maths and history, my worst subjects, I got the second highest marks⁽²¹⁾ in the class and my grades⁽²²⁾ in all my other subjects increased by 48% in just one month! Looking back, I should have done this before! Making a 1 % change in different things made a massive⁽²³⁾ difference for me and I'm sure it'll help you too! So, why not try it yourself?

Adam

- (14) تضيق/إهدار
- (15) ذهنياً/عقلياً
- (16) نشيط/نشط
- (17) سماعة/مقبس
- (18) يستيقظ
- (19) منتعش
- (20) استراتيجية
- (21) درجات
- (22) علامات/درجات
- (23) ضخم/هائل

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 66)

Zeinab : OK, we're all here now and we have everything we need. So, we need to come up with⁽¹⁾ ideas for how we can welcome⁽²⁾ new students to our school and make them feel comfortable⁽³⁾ here. Does anyone already have any ideas they want to share?

Nabila : I was thinking that we could put every new student together with⁽⁴⁾ a student who's already here. That student could show the new student and be there to help them when they need it.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يأتي بـ/يستنبط
- (2) يرحب بـ
- (3) مُستريح
- (4) سوياً مع

Zeinab : That sounds like⁽⁵⁾ a nice idea. Would you be happy for us to add that to our possible solutions⁽⁶⁾, Reem?

Reem : Sure, yes. I was just thinking how that would work. But I think it could work well.

Nabila : Well, it might lead to⁽⁷⁾ a new student spending a lot of time with just one other student, but at least the new student will get a lot of support⁽⁸⁾.

Reem : Yes, exactly and that's our priority⁽⁹⁾.

Zeinab : Great. So, do we all agree that this could be a good solution?

Nabila : Well, I clearly⁽¹⁰⁾ do!

Reem : Yes, I think it's a good idea too. Let's add it to our options⁽¹¹⁾.

- (5) يبدو كأنه
(6) حل
(7) يؤدي إلى
(8) دعم/مساندة
(9) أولوية
(10) بوضوح/بشكل صريح
(11) خيار/بديل

Sami : Ok, Rami, do you want to summarise⁽¹⁾ what we have so far⁽²⁾?

Rami : OK, we have two ideas so far. One is to close your bedroom door and ask your family not to disturb⁽³⁾ you and the other one, which Adel mentioned⁽⁴⁾, is to leave your phone in another room. Does anyone have any other ideas they want to share?

Sami : How about making a study plan⁽⁵⁾? It might lead to using some valuable⁽⁶⁾ study time but at least you have things clearly organised⁽⁷⁾ and know when you should take a break⁽⁸⁾ and what subjects you need to concentrate more on. What do you think, Adel?

Adel : That's a good idea. Let's add it to our options. Another way to be more productive when revising for exams is to revise with a friend.

Rami : Yes, but don't you think that might lead to you chatting⁽⁹⁾ about other things?

Adel : Perhaps. But at least it makes the revision more interesting, and you can test⁽¹⁰⁾ one another too.



(WB page 40)

Check
Vocabulary

- (1) يلخص
(2) حتى الآن
(3) يزعج
(4) يذكر
(5) يعد خطة استذكار
(6) قيم
(7) منظم
(8) يأخذ استراحة
(9) يرددش/يتحدث
(10) يختبر

Sami : I see your point⁽¹¹⁾. It could be useful. Would you be happy for us to add that to our possible solutions?

Adel : Yes, of course. Can you think of other ideas?

Rami : I think it's important to eat healthily and practise self-care⁽¹²⁾ when we're stressed⁽¹³⁾ about studying.

Sami : Really? Can you expand⁽¹⁴⁾ on that?

Rami : Well, revising for exams can be really stressful⁽¹⁵⁾. When we're stressed, we produce a hormone⁽¹⁶⁾ called cortisol⁽¹⁷⁾ in our bodies. If we have too much in our bodies for a long time, it can lead to heart problems, depression⁽¹⁸⁾ and anxiety⁽¹⁹⁾ which is not good for our well-being⁽²⁰⁾ at all.

Adel : Wow! Where did you hear that?

Rami : My mum's a doctor. She told me about it when she made me create a study plan⁽²¹⁾ because she said good organisation⁽²²⁾ and forward⁽²³⁾ planning is the best way to avoid negative⁽²⁴⁾ stress. Organising ourselves well should be a priority because it helps to reduce stress.

Adel : Interesting point. So, we have five solutions, but we need to decide on⁽²⁵⁾ which is the most efficient way to be more productive when revising for exams. What do you think Sami?

Sami : That's a tough⁽²⁶⁾ one. I'm between 'making a study plan' and 'leaving your phone in a different room'. What about you Rami?

Rami : Yes, both ideas are good. But speaking from experience⁽²⁷⁾, I'd go for⁽²⁸⁾ the study plan as the most effective. How about you Adel?

Adel : At first, I thought that eating healthily was the most efficient idea but after hearing what Rami's mum said, I've come round to⁽²⁹⁾ that idea too.

Sami : So, do we all agree that this is the best option?

Rami : Yes, I think so.

Adel : Yes, I agree.

- (11) فكرة
(12) يمارس العناية بالنفس
(13) مضغوط
(14) يُفصّل / يُسهّب في
(15) ضاغطة/مُجهّد
(16) هرمون
(17) كورتيزول
(18) اكتئاب
(19) القلق
(20) رفاهية
(21) يُعد خطة استذكار
(22) التنظيم
(23) مُسبق/مقدماً
(24) سلبي
(25) يختار
(26) صادم/صعب
(27) من واقع الخبرة أقول
(28) يؤيد
(29) يغير رأيه إلى

3 Video Script

Reflection ⁽¹⁾ is something that more and more people are talking about today. We're told that it will help us to improve our performance ⁽²⁾ – either at school or in the workplace. But a lot of us aren't sure exactly what reflection is.

The simplest definition of reflection is that it's careful thought. ⁽³⁾ It involves ⁽⁴⁾ thinking about what has happened to you and analysing your actions ⁽⁵⁾ and the beliefs ⁽⁶⁾ that led to them in a lot of detail. ⁽⁷⁾ When you reflect, ⁽⁸⁾ your brain can take a break from the chaos ⁽⁹⁾ of normal life, organise the experiences you have had and find some meaning in them. Reflection is, therefore, a learning process ⁽¹⁰⁾ that lets you grow and develop as a person.

And the evidence ⁽¹¹⁾ suggests that reflection is a learning process that improves our quality of life. For example, a study of people travelling to work in the UK, found that the commuters ⁽¹²⁾ who used their journey to work to think about their day and plan the next day were happier, more productive and less burned out than those who didn't.

So why do people often avoid ⁽¹³⁾ reflection? Some people find it difficult to think back to and analyse to what they've done, and others think it's better to just take action ⁽¹⁴⁾ instead. Whatever your opinion about reflection, it might be worth ⁽¹⁵⁾ at least giving it a try ⁽¹⁶⁾ and finding out if it can make you happier and more productive.

(58 page 67)

Check Vocabulary

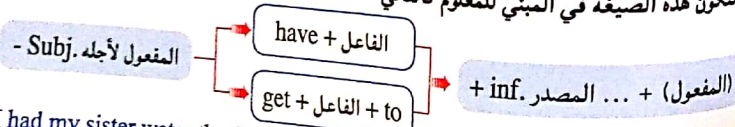
- (1) إيمان التفكير
- (2) أداء
- (3) تفكير
- (4) يتضمن
- (5) أفعال
- (6) معتقدات
- (7) تفصيل
- (8) يُعْنِ التفكير
- (9) الفوضى
- (10) عملية
- (11) دليل
- (12) مسافرين للعمل
- (13) يتجنب
- (14) يتصرف
- (15) يستحق
- (16) يقوم بمحاولة

Part IV

Language

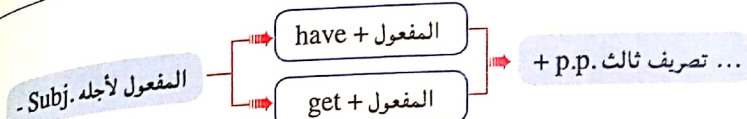
Causative form (الْفَسْبِب)

- تُستخدم صيغة المفعول لأجله (causative) لتعني أن الفاعل أقمع أو جعل شخصاً آخر يقوم بالفعل.
- نستخدم في هذه الصيغة الفعلين (have / get) حسب الزمن
- وتكون هذه الصيغة في المبني للمجهول كالتالي:



- I had my sister water the flowers. (جعلت أختي تروي الزهور لأجلي)
- I got my sister to water the flowers. (أقنعت أختي أن تروي الزهور لأجلي)

- وتكون هذه الصيغة في المبني للمجهول كالتالي :



I had / got the flowers watered (by my sister). (لقد تم ريّ الزهور لي)

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Mum sometimes has Rodayna the cooking.
a. do b. to do c. done d. a & b
2. Mum sometimes gets Rodayna the cooking.
a. do b. to do c. done d. a & b
3. Mum sometimes has the cooking by Rodayna.
a. do b. to do c. done d. a & b
4. I my car serviced regularly.
a. have b. let c. get d. a & c

- وفيما يلي شرح مبسط لهذه الصيغة في الأزمنة المختلفة :

1 Present Simple المضارع البسيط

- في المبني للمعلوم :

- Subj. المفعول لأجله + have / has + agent الفاعل + inf.
- Subj. المفعول لأجله + get / gets + agent الفاعل + to + inf.

- Omar has the mechanic check the car every month.
- Omar gets the mechanic to check the car every month.
- I have the barber cut my hair every two weeks.
- I get the barber to cut my hair every two weeks.

- في المبني للمجهول :

- Subj. المفعول لأجله + have / has + obj. المفعول + p.p.
- Subj. المفعول لأجله + get / gets + obj. المفعول + p.p.
- Omar has the car checked every month.
- Omar gets the car checked every month.
- I have my hair cut every two weeks.
- I get my hair cut every two weeks.

2 Past Simple الماضي البسيط

- في المبني للمعلوم :

- (المفعول) + **inf.** + **agent** + **had** + **obj.** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- (المفعول) + **to + inf.** + **agent** + **got** + **obj.** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- Sama **had** the dentist **check** her teeth yesterday.
- Sama **got** the dentist **to check** her teeth yesterday.

- في المبني للمجهول :

- **p.p.** + **obj.** + **had** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- **p.p.** + **obj.** + **got** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- Sama **had** her teeth **checked** yesterday.
- Sama **got** her teeth **checked** yesterday.

3 Present continuous المضارع المستمر

- في المبني للمعلوم :

- (المفعول) + **inf.** + **agent** + **having** + **am/ is / are** + **obj.** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- (المفعول) + **to + inf.** + **agent** + **getting** + **am/ is / are** + **obj.** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- We **are having** a painter **decorate** our new house next week.
- We **are getting** a painter **to decorate** our new house next week.

- في المبني للمجهول :

- **p.p.** + **obj.** + **having** + **am/ is / are** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- **p.p.** + **obj.** + **getting** + **am/ is / are** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- We **are having** our new house **decorated** next week.
- We **are getting** our new house **decorated** next week.

4 Past continuous الماضي المستمر

- في المبني للمعلوم :

- (المفعول) + **inf.** + **agent** + **having** + **was / were** + **obj.** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- (المفعول) + **to + inf.** + **agent** + **getting** + **was / were** + **obj.** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- Ahmed **was having** a gardener **plant** some trees in the garden.
- Ahmed **was getting** a gardener **to plant** some trees in the garden.

- في المبني للمجهول :

- **p.p.** + **obj.** + **having** + **was / were** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- **p.p.** + **obj.** + **getting** + **was / were** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- Ahmed **was having** some trees **planted** in the garden.
- Ahmed **was getting** some trees **planted** in the garden.

5 Present perfect المضارع التام

- في المبني للمعلوم :

- (المفعول) + **inf.** + **agent** + **had** + **have / has** + **obj.** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- (المفعول) + **to + inf.** + **agent** + **got** + **have / has** + **obj.** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- Rodayna **has had** Mr Ashraf **explain** the lesson again.
- Rodayna **has got** Mr Ashraf **to explain** the lesson again.

- في المبني للمجهول :

- **p.p.** + **obj.** + **had** + **have / has** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- **p.p.** + **obj.** + **got** + **have / has** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- Rodayna **has had** the lesson **explained** again.
- Rodayna **has got** the lesson **explained** again.

6 Past perfect الماضي التام

- في المبني للمعلوم :

- (المفعول) + **inf.** + **agent** + **had** + **had** + **obj.** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- (المفعول) + **to + inf.** + **agent** + **got** + **had** + **obj.** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- Abdu **had had** his sister **iron** his shirt before he went out.
- Abdu **had got** his sister **to iron** his shirt before he went out.

- في المبني للمجهول :

- **p.p.** + **obj.** + **had** + **had** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- **p.p.** + **obj.** + **got** + **had** + **Subj.** - المفعول لأجله.
- Abdu **had had** his shirt **ironed** before he went out.
- Abdu **had got** his shirt **ironed** before he went out.

7 Modals الأفعال الناقصة

في المبني للمعلوم:

- Subj. (المفعول) + will / can / may ... + have + agent الفاعل + inf. (المفعول لأجله) Subj.
- Subj. (المفعول) + will / can / may ... + get + agent الفاعل + to + inf. (المفعول لأجله) Subj.

- Ali will have his mother prepare a big lunch for his friends.
- Ali will get his mother to prepare a big lunch for his friends.

في المبني للمجهول:

- Subj. (المفعول) + will / can / may ... + have + obj. (المفعول لأجله) p.p.
- Subj. (المفعول) + will / can / may ... + get + obj. (المفعول لأجله) p.p.

- Ali will have a big lunch prepared for his friends.
- Ali will get a big lunch prepared for his friends.

Mini Test 2 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- We our flat decorated last week.
a. have b. had c. will get d. were getting
- We may our flat decorated next week.
a. have b. had c. will get d. were getting
- We our flat decorated next week.
a. have b. had c. will get d. were getting
- We our flat decorated when suddenly the painter fell and broke his arm.
a. have b. had c. will get d. were getting
- He a surgeon to operate on his grandmother.
a. had b. got c. has had d. made

Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة

- 1 يمكن وضع الفاعل بعد (by) في الصيغة المبني للمجهول :
- Marwa gets the babies looked after by her mother.

2 تُستخدم ضمائر المفعول وليس ضمائر الفاعل بعد (have / get) في هذه الصيغة :

- Walid had me feed the birds. (NOT: had I ...)
- I'm worried about my eyes. I get them checked regularly. (NOT: get they ...)

3 يتم النفي وتكوين السؤال حسب زمن (have / get) :

- Mum doesn't have lunch prepared. (NOT: hasn't lunch ...)
- Did you have anyone help you? (NOT : Had you ...)

Notes for advanced level ملاحظات للمتفوقين

1 في المبني للمعلوم يمكن استخدام (inf. + ing) بدلاً من (inf. / to + inf.) كالتالي:

- Subj. (المفعول لأجله) + have (حسب الزمن) + agent الفاعل + (inf. + ing)
- Subj. (المفعول لأجله) + get (حسب الزمن) + agent الفاعل + (inf. + ing)

- Nada had her friends helping her during the party.
- Nada got her friends helping her during the party.

2 يمكن استخدام الفعل (make / let / help) في المبني للمعلوم كالتالي:

- Subj. + make يجعل / let يسمح + help يساعد + agent الفاعل + inf.

- Yara made her sister make some juice for the guests.
- Reem let me use her mobile.
- Amr helped us (to) solve our problems.

3 يمكن استخدام الفعل (allow / permit / require...) بمعنى (يسمح / يتطلب) كالتالي:

- Subj. + allow / permit / require ... + agent الفاعل + to + inf.

- Hussein allows / permits / his friends to use his calculator.

General Exercise

On Language

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting Started

- The boss got the employees till late at night.
a. to work b. be working c. work d. worked

(دور ثان ٢٠١٩)

2. I got my hair before the wedding.
a. cut b. cuts c. cutting d. to cut (الزهر ٢٠١٩ - ادبي)
3. My mother has me the shopping every week.
a. do b. done c. to do d. had done (نموذج الوزارة الأول ٢٠٢٠)
4. Dina last week.
a. gets her house to decorate b. has her house decorated
c. got her house to decorate d. had her house decorated (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠٢٠)
5. Ali got his credit card
a. change b. to change c. changing d. changed (نموذج الوزارة الأول ٢٠١٩)
6. Wait there and I'll someone to help you with those bags.
a. have b. get c. let d. make (السودان ٢٠١٩)
7. Why don't you have your mobile instead of buying a new one?
a. to fix b. fixing c. fixed d. fix
8. We had a carpenter the broken window.
a. to fix b. to fixing c. fixed d. fix
9. My mother makes me up my room on Fridays.
a. to clean b. clean c. cleaned d. cleaning
10. We our neighbours to look after our garden while we were away.
a. had b. got c. made d. let
11. We got the computer technician the new software for us.
a. to install b. install c. installs d. installed
12. We got the new software for us.
a. to install b. install c. installs d. installed
13. I two days ago.
a. got my bike fix b. had my bike to fix
c. had my bike fixed d. got my bike fixing
14. After I had seen Dr Amr, I
a. didn't have my teeth check b. didn't have my teeth checking
c. hadn't had my teeth checked d. didn't have my teeth checked
15. Why don't you have a mechanic at your car?
a. to look b. look c. to looking d. looks

16. We should get Fady us some train tickets.
a. get b. gets c. to get d. got
17. We've got to get our neighbours playing loud music.
a. to stop b. stop c. stops d. stopped
18. My boss allowed me time off when my son was ill.
a. takes b. take c. taken d. to take
19. We had our house last year.
a. paint b. painted c. painting d. to paint
20. She that he wouldn't tell anyone.
a. had him promise b. had him promised
c. promised to have d. had him to promise
21. Wait here. I'll have someone your bags up to your room.
a. to take b. taken c. take d. took
22. The students got the teacher their test until the following week.
a. postpone b. to postpone c. postponed d. postpones
23. You must your doctor look at that cut on your arm. It is serious.
a. have b. get c. allow d. permit
- II Special Cases**
24. Adel He made it himself. (دور اول ٢٠١٩)
a. cooks his dinner b. cooked his dinner
c. has his dinner cooked d. had his dinner cooked
25. Sometimes, my friend me borrow his car.
a. lets b. allows c. gets d. permits
26. Sama wants us to let her her friend's birthday.
a. attending b. to attend c. attend d. attended
27. Omar was very ill. I got to take three days off work.
a. he b. his c. him d. himself
28. We need to our computer checked out for viruses.
a. make b. have c. let d. allow
29. Zamzam her clothes washed. She washes them by herself.
a. hasn't b. doesn't have c. hadn't d. had never
30. I was angry with Ali. He had laughed at by all our colleagues.
a. ourselves b. we c. ours d. us

31. My manager me work overtime every day last week.
a. got b. made c. allowed d. caused
32. When I was little, my parents always made me to school.
a. walk b. to walk c. walked d. walks
33. your meal prepared before you went home?
a. Had you b. Have you had c. Had you had d. Do you have
34. He is very persuasive مُقنع. He got to join his team.
a. I b. me c. mine d. myself

III Check your understanding

35. "I paid a carpenter to fix the door." This means
a. I made a carpenter pay for fixing the door.
b. I got a carpenter fixed the door.
c. I had a carpenter fixed the door.
d. I got a carpenter to fix the door.
36. "I had my lunch cooked." This means
a. I cooked my lunch.
b. someone cooked my lunch for me.
c. I cooked my lunch for someone.
d. I got my lunch cooking.
37. "I made my brother do the shopping" what does this mean?
a. I got my brother to do the shopping.
b. I got my brother to go shopping.
c. I had the shopping done by my brother.
d. a, b & c
38. "I usually do not have anyone clean my room." This means
a. I usually have my room cleaned. b. I usually clean my room.
c. I usually get my room cleaned. d. I usually get my room to clean.
39. "Sama had someone water the flowers." What does this mean?
a. Sama didn't water the flowers herself.
b. Sama hadn't the flowers watered.
c. Sama didn't get the flowers watered.
d. Sama didn't get the flowers to water.

40. "I wrote the report for Omar after he had told me to." This means
a. Omar made I write the report. b. Omar had me write the report.
c. Omar got I write the report. d. b & c
41. "Did you ask anyone to help you?" I said, ".....".
a. Did you make anyone to help you?
b. Had you anyone help you?
c. Did you have anyone to help you?
d. a & b
42. "Mum got Leen to set the table for lunch." This means
a. Mum got the table set for lunch by Leen.
b. Mum had Leen to set the table for lunch.
c. Mum had Leen setting the table for lunch.
d. a & c

Advanced Exercise on Language

▶ تلوين : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Never let yourselves into such a trick.
a. fall b. be fallen c. falling d. to fall
2. He will get us on the report.
a. worked b. work c. working d. to be worked
3. He is funny. He had us all during the meal.
a. laughed b. laughing c. to laugh d. have laughed
4. I've got some of the cleverest students for the competition.
They don't need preparation anymore.
a. preparing b. prepared c. to prepare d. prepare

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	الفعل (fall) فعل لازم لذلك لا يُبنى للمجهول فنستخدم المصدر ولا يمكن استخدام (be fallen)
2.	c	يمكن استخدام (inf. + ing) بعد (get + obj.)
3.	b	يمكن استخدام (inf.+ing) بعد (have + obj.)
4.	b	في هذا السياق (the cleverest students) مفعول لذلك نستخدم التصريف الثالث (prepared)

Chapter 6

Part I

• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة، لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

تنويه

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations

affectionately(adv)	بمَحَبَّة / بِمَوَدَّة	hold on to	بِثَبَّتْ بـ
anxious(adj)	مُتَوَتِّر / قَلِق	impressed(adj)	مُنْتَبِه
at the request of	بناءً على طلب	life sentence(n)	سجن مُؤَبَّد
boast(ed) (v)	يتباهى / يتفاخر	remarkable(adj)	ملحوظ / بارز
boastfully(adv)	بتفاخر	scar(n)	ندبة (أثر جرح في الجلد)
come back to	يعود إلي	shiny(adj)	لامع
disappointed(adj)	مُحِط - خائب الأمل	sleeves(n)	أكمام
enthusiastic(adj)	مُتَحَمِّس	surprised(adj)	مُنْدَش
fortunately(adv)	لحسن الحظ	wrist(n)	بِصَم
haunt (ed) (v)	يطارد / يلاحق - يوسوس		

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- A criminal that is given has to remain in prison for the rest of his/her life.
a. medal b. wrist c. alter d. life sentence
- It was how the whole class got top marks in their final exam.
a. remarkable b. impressed c. disappointed d. anxious
- What the criminal did will him for his whole life.
a. tend b. boast c. haunt d. procrastinate
- A new coin is very
a. anxious b. disappointed c. impressed d. shiny

- Mr Ashraf spoke to his students while he was saying goodbye. They were near to tears.
a. carelessly b. affectionately c. fortunately d. boastfully

- I have a on my face from an accident.
a. request b. wrist c. sleeve d. scar
- At the of Mr Walid, the students calmed down and listened.
a. productivity b. assessment c. request d. change

- The mountaineer held the rope.
a. at b. on to c. for d. from

- After arresting a criminal, the police put handcuffs on his
a. sleeves b. wrists c. ankles d. elbows

- Shukry Sarhan, the famous black-and-white-film actor used to pull up his
a. sleeves b. wrists c. ankles d. elbows

Part II

Skills

المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات في ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة علي حدة.

تنويه

• Choose the best Arabic translation :

- You'd better do the hard jobs first; the easy ones will undoubtedly take care of themselves.

أ. من الأفضل أن تقوم بالمهام الصعبة أولاً؛ السهلة سيعتنون بأنفسهم بلا شك.

ب. أنت أفضل من أن تقوم بالمهام الصعبة أولاً؛ فالسهلة سيعتنون بأنفسهم بلا شك.

ج. من الأفضل أن تقوم بالمهام الصعبة أولاً؛ المهام السهلة ستتم من تلقاء نفسها دون شك.

د. من الأفضل أن تقوم بالمهام الصعبة أولاً؛ المهام السهلة ستتم من تلقاء نفسها في شك

- I get my productivity assessed at regular times to make sure I am on the right route.

أ. أقيم إنتاجيتي في أوقات منتظمة للتأكد من أنني على الطريق الصحيح.

ب. يتم تقييم إنتاجيتي في أوقات منتظمة للتأكد من أنني على الطريق الصحيح.

ج. أحصل على إنتاجيتي مقيمة في أوقات منتظمة للتأكد من أنني على الطريق الصحيح.

د. يتم تقييم إنتاجيتي في أوقات منتظمة لأصنع التأكيد من أنني على الطريق الصحيح.

3. I can't believe that you really had let yourself be a helpless victim to bad company.

- أ. لا أستطيع أن أصدق أنك تركت نفسك حقًا تكون ضحية عاجزة لرفقة سيئة.
ب. لا أستطيع أن أصدق أنك سمحت لنفسك حقًا بأن تكون ضحية عاجزة لشركة سيئة.
ج. لا أستطيع أن أعتقد أنك تركت نفسك حقًا بأن تكون ضحية مساعدة لرفقة سيئة.
د. لا أستطيع أن أصدق أنك سمحت لنفسك من قبل بأن تكون ضحية عاجزة لرفقة سيئة.

4. The tragedy in life doesn't lie in not reaching your goal. The tragedy lies in having no goal to reach.

- أ. مأساة الحياة لا تكمن في عدم الوصول إلى هدفك، المأساة تكمن في عدم وجود هدف للوصول.
ب. حياة المأساة لا تكمن في عدم الوصول إلى هدفك، المأساة تكمن في عدم وجود هدف للوصول.
ج. مأساة الحياة لا تكمن في عدم الوصول إلى هدفك، بل تكمن المأساة تكمن في وجود هدف للوصول إليه.
د. مأساة الحياة لا تكمن في عدم الوصول إلى هدفك، بل تكمن المأساة في عدم وجود هدف للوصول إليه.

② Choose the best English translation :

- أ. عليك أن تُركّز على هدفك، وألا تدع التفاصيل الصغيرة غير المهمة تشتتكَ عمّا تسعى لتحقيقه.
a. Focus on your goal and don't let small, unimportant details to distract you from what you're trying to achieve.
b. Focus on your goal and don't allow small, unimportant details distract you from what you're trying to achieve.
c. Focus on your goal and don't make small, unimportant to details distract you from what you're trying to achieve.
d. Focus on your goal and don't let small, unimportant details distract you from what you're trying to achieve.

٢. إن العمل على تنظيم الوقت وتوزيع الجهد أثناء استذكار دروسك يساعد على زيادة نسبة تحصيلك.

- a. Working on organizing time and distributing effort while studying your lessons helps to increase your achievement rate.
b. To organise time and distributing effort while studying your lessons helps to increase your achievement rate.
c. Organizing time and distributing effort while studying your lessons helps increase your achievement rate.
d. Worked on organizing time and distributing effort while studying your lessons helps to increase your achievement rate.

٣. يمكنك التغلب على انخفاض تحصيلك الدراسي عن طريق إزالة أسباب التشتيت وتقسيم الوقت إلى جلسات قصيرة بينها استراحات.

- a. You can overcome your underachievement by eliminating distractions and dividing your time into short sessions with breaks in between.
b. You can overcome your achievement by eliminating distractions and dividing your time into short sessions with breaks in between.
c. You can overcome your law productivity by eliminating distractions and dividing your time into short sessions with breaks in between.
d. You can overcome your underachievement by eliminating distractions and multiplying your time into short sessions with breaks in between.

٤. إن التسويف هو أول خطوة في طريق الفشل، فقديماً قالوا "لا تؤجل عمل اليوم إلى الغد".

- a. Procrastination is the first step on the road to failure, as they used to say, "Do not postpone today's work until tomorrow."
b. Procrastination is the first step on the road to failure. It has formerly been said, "Do not put off today's work until tomorrow."
c. Procrastination is the first stop on the road to failure, as they used to say, "Do not postpone today's work until tomorrow."
d. Procrastination is the first step on the road to failure. They used to be said, "Do not postpone today's work until tomorrow."

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Interests from one person to another.
a. lead b. vary
c. distract d. switch off
2. Encouraging students improves their
a. procrastination b. analysis c. productivity d. permission
3. His need for money him to accept such a tiring job.
a. forced b. stated c. mentioned d. b & c
4. is the process of getting better at doing something, or getting closer to finishing or achieving something.
a. Efficiency b. Productivity c. Procrastination d. Progress
5. some changes to your study habits may raise your productivity.
a. Assessing b. Stating c. Making d. Mentioning
6. "She declined his offer to marry her saying they have different personalities." The verb 'declined' here gives the same meaning as
a. accepted b. flourished c. reduced d. turned down
7. Ayman the situation in a way I don't agree with.
a. assesses b. assessments c. procrastinate d. procrastination
8. "You need to take a rest to renew your energy." This means you need to
a. look at b. result in c. tend to d. switch off
9. I don't let others my tablet.
a. to use b. use c. using d. to be used
10. I don't allow my tablet.
a. to use b. use c. using d. to be used
11. We are the right to express our opinion.
a. let b. made c. stopped d. allowed
12. We outside meals at school.
a. aren't allowed b. aren't let c. let d. are made
13. I stopped Sama computer games for a long time.
a. from playing b. playing c. a & b d. to play



14. Mum Rahma wasting her time.
a. let b. stopped c. made d. b & c
15. I my teeth checked once every three months.
a. let b. get c. have d. b & c
16. You should have your clothes
a. to wash b. be washed c. washed d. washing

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

At school, you have probably had the support of your teachers, your family and your friends. When you leave secondary school, you will start to have responsibility for your own life. This means being in control of your time and also your choice of career. However, it is important never to forget the values and morals that your family and your school have taught you.

Show respect to not only older people, but also to your work colleagues, both male and female. Remember to be tolerant of people who are different to you. Be loyal to all your friends.

When you are at work, make sure that you help and support your work colleagues. It is good to be ambitious, but do not envy people who are promoted before you. Be patient and always work hard, and you will be rewarded one day.

When you are not at work, spend some time helping your local community. This is an excellent way to meet new people, and to help improve the lives of others. Try to help the poor whenever you can. Most people find that voluntary and charitable work is so rewarding that they are happy to do it.

Your school has taught you how to pass your exams, but it has also taught you important values and morals that will help whatever career you choose.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The main idea of the passage is that ".....".
a. How to be successful after leaving school.
b. How to succeed at your school.
c. Tolerant people lose a lot in their life.
d. You will be rewarded one day

18. In your future careers, will support you.
a. your family and teachers b. morals and values
c. your school and colleagues d. males and females
19. Voluntary work is rewarding although it is
a. unseen b. unpaid c. valueless d. fruitless
20. Being helps you to get on well with other people.
a. violent b. tolerant c. shy d. ashamed
21. Remember to be tolerant of people who are
a. different to your colleagues b. similar to your colleagues
c. different to you d. similar to you
22. Young people are likely to become responsible
a. before their 8th birthday b. after their 18th birthday
c. after prep school d. after primary school
23. The word "....." from the passage means the people who live in the same area.
a. responsibility b. morals c. community d. colleagues
24. Which of the following can summarise the second paragraph?
a. The rules you have to follow at school to succeed.
b. The instructions which you have to obey at your community.
c. How to deal with your colleagues at work
d. Some tips help you to stay healthy all the time.

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

For almost 800 years, Chillingham Castle has been the home to ghosts of all different types. In the early 1900s, visitors to the castle reported seeing the ghost of a little boy. They gave him the name "Blue Boy" because he was always seen wearing blue clothes and surrounded by a blue light. Late in the 1920s, workmen fixing a wall in an unused bedroom had an unpleasant surprise. While working, they discovered the bones of a small child wearing blue clothes buried within the wall. Interestingly, after these remains were buried in the local cemetery, the ghost boy was never seen again.

Another ghost that has been seen in the castle is that of Lady Mary Berkeley. She died alone in the castle after her husband left her for another woman. People have heard the sound of her dress rustling as she walked by. Also, the "White Lady" who is supposed to be the ghost of a woman poisoned to death many years ago. She has been known to go up to people, ask for a drink of water, and then disappears.

Instead of avoiding Chillingham Castle, it has now turned into a tourist attraction visited by thousands of people every year. Some just tour the grounds and eat in the castle tea-room, but others actually stay in the castle itself. For those people who want a more special experience, the castle hosts weddings, concerts, operas, and fairs regularly to make Chillingham Castle their home. Chillingham Castle has also been used as a background location for movies and TV shows.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

25. The best title for this passage is
a. Friendly ghosts b. The Castle of ghosts
c. The White Lady d. The Blue Boy
26. After being buried,
a. the blue boy was never seen
b. people heard Mary's dress rustling
c. the white woman asked people for water
d. the ghosts appeared in the English Castle
27. The last paragraph can be summarized as
a. it was amazing to have wedding and concerts in Chillingham Castle
b. Chillingham Castle is best used now
c. Chillingham Castle is ignored nowadays
d. it was interesting to make movies in Chillingham Castle
28. ghosts were mentioned in the passage.
a. Three b. Four c. Five d. Two
29. On the contrary, Chillingham Castle has become a very place.
a. scary b. fascinating c. fearful d. isolated
30. Ordinary people may drink tea in the Castle, but braver people may in it.
a. eat b. tour c. stay d. dream

31. The writer thinks that we should
 a. change our perspective of bad things to be positive
 b. change our positive view to be negative
 c. not care of our points of view
 d. not care of the others' points of view
32. The author implies that burying the bones found in the wall
 a. put the ghost to rest
 b. made no difference
 c. was a scary action
 d. caused many problems

A. Choose the best Arabic translation :

33. It has been expected to set up a completely artificially constructed colony in space.

أ. من المتوقع أن يتم إنشاء منظمة طبيعية كلياً في الفضاء.
 ب. من المتوقع أن يتم إنشاء مؤسسة صناعية كلياً في الفضاء.
 ج. من المتوقع أن يتم إنشاء مستعمرة صناعية كلياً في الفضاء.
 د. من المتوقع أن يتم إنشاء مستعمرة علمية فعلياً في الفضاء.

34. Sports competitions have become an effective way to express patriotism. In the Olympic Games, every country tries hard to raise its flag.

أ. لقد أصبحت المسابقات الرياضية طريقة مفعلة للتعبير عن الوطنية. ففي الألعاب الأولمبية كل دولة تحاول يجد أن تأخذ علمها.
 ب. لقد أصبحت المسابقات الرياضية طريقة فعالة للتعبير عن الوطنية. ففي الألعاب الأولمبية تحاول كل دولة بجد أن ترفع علمها.
 ج. أصبحت المنافسات الرياضية طريقة فعالة للتعبير عن المواطنة. ففي الألعاب الأولمبية كل دولة تحاول بجد أن تقوى علمها.
 د. أصبحت المنافسات الرياضية طريقة فعالة للضغط على الوطنية، الألعاب الأولمبية كل دولة تحاول بصعوبة أن تقدم علمها.

B. Choose the best English translation :

٣٥. من الضروري زراعة الأشجار في كل مكان ، فهي تساعدنا أن نعيش في بيئة نظيفة صحية وتنقي الهواء.
- a. It is necessary to plant trees everywhere because they help us to live in a clean, healthy environment and purify the air.
 b. It was necessary to plant trees everywhere because they helped us to live in a clean healthy environment and purify the air.
 c. It is necessity to plant trees everywhere because they help us to live in a clean healthy environment and clarify the air.

- d. It is necessarily to plant trees everywhere because they help us to live in a clean healthy environment and purify the air.
٣٦. استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في جميع المجالات وبشكل فعال يؤدي لتنمية اقتصادنا القومي وتحقيق نمو اقتصادي.

- a. The use of modern technology in all the fields and effectively leads to the development of our national economy and achieving economic growth.
 b. The use of modern technology in all the fields and led effectively to the development of our local economy and achieves economic growth.
 c. The use of modern technology in all the topics and appreciatively leads to the development of our international economy and achieves economic growth.
 d. The use of modern technology in all the fields and effectively led to the development of our national economy and achieved economical growth.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

37. Malak said that the Earth was flat I said it was round.

a. Full-stop
 b. Colon
 c. Comma
 d. inverted commas

38. "....." is used to start the discussion.

a. It might lead to ... , but at least ...
 b. Would you be happy for us to add that to our possible solutions?
 c. Let's add it to our options.
 d. Does anyone already have any ideas they want to share?

39. A/An used to express strong feelings in written language.

a. quotation mark
 b. exclamation mark
 c. question mark
 d. period

40. Which of the following sentences has the perfect punctuation?

a. I ate: fish, rice and salad for dinner.
 b. I ate / fish, rice and salad for dinner.
 c. I ate fish, rice and salad for dinner.
 d. I ate, fish, rice and salad. for dinner.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 21. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 2. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 22. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 3. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 23. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 4. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 24. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 5. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 25. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 6. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 26. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 7. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 27. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 8. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 28. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 9. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 29. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 10. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 30. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 11. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 31. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 12. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 32. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 13. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 33. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 14. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 34. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 15. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 35. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 16. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 36. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 17. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 37. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 18. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 38. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 19. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 39. (a) (b) (c) (d) |
| 20. (a) (b) (c) (d) | 40. (a) (b) (c) (d) |

General Exercises for Al Azhar students on Unit 6

تنويه
للمزيد من
التدريبات للأزهر
الشريف - بنك
الأسئلة

1. Finish the following dialogue :

Amr wants Mustafa's advice on which sport he should do.

Amr : They are starting lots of sports at a sports centre soon.
(1)

Mustafa : It depends on why you want to do sport.

Amr : (2)

Mustafa : Well, do you want to keep fit or to meet other people ?

Amr : (3)

Mustafa : The answer is quite easy. Sports like squash are individual sports.

Amr : Yes, I see. And (4)

Mustafa : That's right. You can't play them on your own. You need a team.

2. Write a paragraph of one hundred and twenty (120) words on :

"Productivity amongst students"

3. Translate into Arabic :

- Good citizens are those who devote themselves, their time and their money for the welfare of their families. They are also ready to sacrifice themselves when their country is in danger.

4. Translate into English :

- فى موسم الأمطار، تكون هناك الكثير من المياه، وتقوم السدود بتخزينها لاستخدامها خلال أشهر الجفاف، فى نفس الوقت، فإنها توفر المياه المستخدمة لتوليد الكهرباء.

5. Answer the following question : (Islamic Selections)

- What did the barren desert represent in Khalid's vision?

(الأزهر - أدبي ٢٠٢١)

Part II

Language Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

avoid	doing	يتجنب القيام به	make	much progress	يُحقق تقدماً كبيراً
bring	benefits	يجلب منافع	make	the situation worse	يجعل الموقف أسوأ
do	procrastination	يُماطل / يُسوِّف	miss	school	يتغيب عن المدرسة
experience	stress	يواجه ضغوطاً	reach	a long-term goal	يحقق هدف على المدى الطويل
feel	good	يشعر انه بخير	set	an unrealistic goal	يضع هدفاً غير واقعي
get	distracted	يتشتت	take	a course	يأخذ مقرر تدريبي
have	... in common	يتشارك في ...	unmute	a microphone	يلغي كتم الصوت
install	a software	يُنصّب برنامج			

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

11-year-old (Mohamed)	(محمد) ذو الأحد عشر عاماً	get it all done in time	يتم عمل كل شيء في الموعد المُحدد
ask ... for	يطلب من ... أن	hold on to	يتشبث به - يتمسك به
catch up with	يلاحق / يساير	keep up efficiency levels	يحتفظ بمعدلات الكفاءة مرتفعة
come into conflict	يدخل في صراع	look into	يحقق في - يتحقق من
compared to	مقارنة به	present self	الذات الآنية (الحاضرة)
digital workbooks	كتب التدريبات الرقمية	react to	يستجيب لـ
equally good	له نفس الجودة	so that	لكي
find life tough	يجد الحياة قاسية	stop ... from	يمنع ... من ...
future self	الذات المستقبلية	technical problems	مشكلات تقنية
get better at	يتحسن في	time management	إدارة الوقت

1 Reading Text

Procrastination ?

Blame⁽¹⁾ your brain !

Have you ever tried to get something done, but found that you don't make much progress⁽²⁾?



Perhaps you do ten minutes of work, then start doing something else, like reading text messages. Starting one task⁽³⁾ then stopping to do something else or not starting the task in the first place is called procrastination⁽⁴⁾. Everybody does it. Unfortunately, procrastinating often has a negative impact⁽⁵⁾ on your mental⁽⁶⁾ health. You may put yourself under a lot of pressure⁽⁷⁾ to catch up with⁽⁸⁾ the other students in your class or you might have set⁽⁹⁾ an unrealistic⁽¹⁰⁾ goal to get something done in a certain time. This can cause stress⁽¹¹⁾.

What is going on⁽¹²⁾ in the brain which makes us avoid⁽¹³⁾ doing something, even though we know we should do it? Scientists suggest we imagine⁽¹⁴⁾ that there are two parts of our brain: our present self⁽¹⁵⁾ and our future self. The present self wants to feel good right now and see the benefits⁽¹⁶⁾ of the work you're doing immediately. Whereas the future self is focused on achieving long-term⁽¹⁷⁾ goals. It's inevitable⁽¹⁸⁾ that the two selves come into conflict⁽¹⁹⁾. If the present self wins, you usually find yourself procrastinating.

How can you deal⁽²⁰⁾ with these two different selves so you can keep up efficiency⁽²¹⁾ levels⁽²²⁾ and improve your time management⁽²³⁾ skills? One suggestion is that you try to please⁽²⁴⁾ your present self.

SB page (72)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يلوم
- (2) تقدّم
- (3) مهمة
- (4) التسويف/المماطلة
- (5) أثر - انطباع
- (6) عقلي/ذهني
- (7) ضغط
- (8) يلاحق/يوافق
- (9) يضع/يحدد
- (10) غير واقعي
- (11) الضغط/الإجهاد
- (12) يحدث
- (13) يتجنب/يتحاشى
- (14) يتخيل
- (15) النفس/الذات
- (16) فوائد
- (17) المدي البعيد
- (18) حتمي/الازم
- (19) صراع
- (20) يتعامل
- (21) كفاءة
- (22) مستوى
- (23) إدارة
- (24) يسعد/يسرّ

To : Ahmed@mail.com
From : Ahmed@mail.com

Dear 11-year-old Ahmed,
I know you're finding life tough⁽¹⁾ at the moment.
You're experiencing⁽²⁾ stress



at school and you're working hard with your sports training. You're finding it harder at your new school because the schoolwork is a lot more difficult than it was at your old school. You have more homework so it is harder to find time to practise swimming and running. How about telling your teachers about the problems you're having and asking for help?

Try to remember that life is actually quite easy at the moment compared to⁽³⁾ how it will be later, even though you might not believe me about that. When you're my age, you'll be really good at time management. You'll be able to balance your schoolwork and your sports practice. I know you want to be like Ahmed Elgendy one day. Don't worry-you'll achieve amazing things. Enjoy the free time that you have now! Don't forget to spend time doing things that improve your well-being⁽⁴⁾, like talking to family. Play football with your friends at the weekend!

You're going to be just fine, but remember to ask for help when you need it and enjoy the free time that you have so you don't end up feeling exhausted⁽⁵⁾ and burnt out⁽⁶⁾.

See you in 9 years,
20-year-old Ahmed

SB page (75)

Check Vocabulary

- (1) قابسي/اصارم
- (2) يواجه/يعايش
- (3) مقارنةً بـ
- (4) العافية/الرفاهية
- (5) مُرهق
- (6) مُنهك

Revision on Units 4, 5 & 6

تنويه
تقييمات
تراكمية في
بنك الأسئلة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. The army will take on those who killed.
a. revenge b. average c. care d. advantage
2. Have you spending the weekend in the country ?
a. considered b. thought c. decided d. agreed
3. You could asked me for help if you were feeling so stressed!
a. has b. having c. had d. have
4. Be careful, you must making such mistakes.
a. enjoy b. avoid c. refuse d. intend
5. When you are worried about things, it is best to concentrate on the things you control.
a. would b. might c. can d. have
6. We really need to increase our if we want to meet our objectives.
a. identity b. facility c. equality d. productivity
7. I hope the biology exam; I'm so worried.
a. will pass b. pass c. to pass d. passing
8. Let's look new ways of working.
a. on b. into c. to d. back
9. My parents me finish my homework before they allow me to watch TV.
a. stop b. get c. have d. make
10. We our project done last night so now we can relax.
a. get b. got c. allow d. make
11. Can you your screen so I can see what the problem is, please ?
a. share b. mute c. install d. join
12. I remember this man in the club a year ago.
a. seeing b. to see c. had seen d. to seeing
13. If I want to catch with my classmates, I need to study a lot this weekend.
a. on b. up c. into d. in
14. Don't forget off the computer when you've finished with it.
a. switching b. switch c. to switch d. to switching

446

15. The rain us from playing football.
a. let b. allowed c. made d. stopped
16. The students found the test difficult and it led to a in their motivation.
a. produce b. raise c. progress d. decline
17. Mental exhaustion and loss of energy are symptoms of
a. turnout b. strikeout c. cutout d. burnout
18. What do you plan when you go to Sharm El-Sheikh ?
a. to do b. to doing c. will do d. do
19. is how good you feel in your body and how happy you are.
a. Self-care b. Stress c. Well-being d. Mental health
20. I am going to have a new washing machine
a. made b. installed c. instilled d. done
21. Turn the camera I want to see you; I've missed you so much, Mum.
a. down b. off c. on d. up
22. Which of the following is punctuated correctly ?
a. My friend said, "Why dont you bring your digital camera, Ramı ?"
b. My friend said, "Why don't you bring your digital camera Rami ?"
c. My friend said, "Why don't you bring your digital camera, Rami ?"
d. My friend said, "Why dont you bring your digital camera, rami ?"
23. Which of the following sentences is correct to end the following paragraph ?
We all agree that money is very important in our life. It enables us to lead a better life. We can buy most of what we need and pay for all the services we enjoy. Yet, money can be the root of evil in life if it is used badly. In addition, we can't buy all things with money; for example, money can't bring happiness
a. To sum up, money is the best way to achieve your goals as well as having a more comfortable life.
b. Totally, we can say that money is the cause of our happiness.
c. First of all, we need to know why we need money and how to spend it in doing useful things in life.
d. In conclusion, money is important, but it is not everything in our life. It can't be a means to get all that you want.

24. Which of these transitions is used to show the result of something :
 a. Personally, b. Whilst c. Due to d. Consequently,

★ Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Productivity : Tips from business leaders

The country's top business people have to make big decisions and juggle several priorities every day. We interviewed some of them to discover what tricks they use to increase their productivity.

The number one strategy that was mentioned by all of them was the ability to prioritise tasks according to what is most important. This involves a continuous process of deciding what is and isn't essential as you add new things to your 'to do' list. The more you practise prioritising tasks, the easier it becomes and the more efficient it will make you.

Another time-consuming thing for business leaders is decision-making. Making decisions takes a lot of mental effort and this can lead to 'decision fatigue', which can cause burnout. It increases your productivity if you can save your mental energy for the bigger decisions by reducing the smaller ones.

Many of the most productive people realise how easy it is to get distracted. In order to stay focused, they keep a 'distraction list'. When a new thought or idea comes into their heads, they write it down and continue with what they were doing. When they have finished the task, they revise the list.

The final trick from our interviewees is simple but highly effective. In order to raise your productivity levels, you should exercise your mind and your body. It has been suggested that physical activity can improve our levels of concentration and creativity. So, if you are trying to find a solution to something, identify the problem and then go for a walk or do some sport. You may discover the solution !

There are lots of strategies to choose from to increase your productivity. Our advice would be to experiment with different ones to find out what works best for you.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

25. You should reduce the decisions you make to
 a. juggle several priorities
 b. exercise your mind and body
 c. avoid bearing responsibilities
 d. keep mental health and avoid burnout
26. According to the passage, there are a lot of strategies to
 a. enjoy free time b. raise productivity
 c. decrease consumption d. imitate successful people
27. It's essential to prioritise tasks. The antonym of essential is
 a. significant b. urgent c. unimportant d. reliable
28. The main idea of the passage is how to
 a. avoid distraction b. increase productivity
 c. identify a problem d. prioritise tasks
29. The most popular strategy mentioned in the article is
 a. prioritising tasks according to their importance.
 b. having a "to do list".
 c. avoiding distraction.
 d. making big decisions.
30. According to the article, what is meant by decision fatigue ?
 a. the state of being unable to make simple decisions.
 b. difficulty in making a good decision because of the number of decisions one needs to take.
 c. difficulty in making a good decision because of lack of efficiency.
 d. the state of being unable to bear responsibility.
31. If you are trying to find a solution to a problem,
 a. prioritises tasks
 b. postpone dealing with that problem.
 c. identify the problem and refresh yourself.
 d. go for a walk and do some sport.
32. The underlined word "this" in the second paragraph refers to
 a. carrying out tasks b. acting upon useful tips
 c. the ability to prioritise tasks d. practising sport

33. According to the passage, what makes your level of concentration better ?

- a. physical activity
b. deleting minor tasks
c. having a "not to do list"
d. fresh food

34. Top business people juggle several priorities to big tasks.

- a. procrastinate
b. postpone
c. carry out
d. delete

35. According to the passage, a lot of productive people try to

- a. avoid distraction
b. have peace of mind
c. concentrate minor tasks
d. avoid ordinary tips

• Choose the correct Arabic translation:

36. A lot of people worked from home during the COVID-19 pandemic. Many employees say this has increased their efficiency and saved time and effort.

أ. عمل الكثير من الناس من المنزل خلال جائحة كوفيد-١٩، يقول العديد من العلماء إن هذا زاد من رفايتهم ووفر الوقت والجهد.

ب. عمل الكثير من الناس من المنزل خلال جائحة كوفيد-١٩، يقول العديد من الموظفين إن هذا زاد من كفاءتهم ووفر الوقت والجهد.

ج. عمل الكثير من الناس من المنزل بعد جائحة كوفيد-١٩، يقول العديد من أصحاب العمل إن هذا زاد من نشاط الموظفين ووفر الوقت والجهد.

د. أقام الكثير من الناس في المنزل خلال جائحة كوفيد-١٩، يقول القليل من الموظفين إن هذا زاد من كفاءتهم ووفر الوقت والجهد.

37. Productivity is one of the most necessary qualities a useful citizen should have. It enables him to share effectively in development projects as well as in most fields of work.

أ. تُعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطن الصالح، فهي تُمكنه من المشاركة بفعالية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

ب. تُعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم المؤهلات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطن الصالح، فهي تُمكنه من المشاركة بفعالية في خطط التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

ج. تُعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها أي مواطن، فهي تُمكنه من المشاركة بفعالية في مشروعات الاستثمار وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

د. تُعتبر جودة الإنتاج من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطن المصري، فهي تُمكنه من المشاركة بفعالية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

Choose the correct English translation:

٣٨. فى رأى، يجب على المعلمين والوالدين الاهتمام بالصحة العقلية ومهارات إدارة الوقت، وهذه المهارات ضرورية لتعزيز تحصيل الطلاب ومساعدتهم على تحقيق كل طموحاتهم فى الحياة.

a. In general, teachers and parents should draw people's attention to mental health and time-management skills. These skills are necessary to enhance students' achievement and help them carry out all their aspirations in life.

b. In conclusion, teachers and parents should pay attention to healthy food and time-management skills. These skills are necessary to enhance students' achievement and help them perform all their ambitions in life.

c. In my opinion, teachers and parents should pay attention to mental health and time-management skills. These skills are necessary to enhance students' achievement and help them carry out all their aspirations in life.

d. In my opinion, scientists and parents should pay attention to mental health and time-management scales. These skills are necessary to enhance students' achievement and help them carry out all their ambitions in life.

٣٩. تولى الحكومة المصرية اهتمامًا عظيمًا لتحسين معيشة المواطنين فى كل أنحاء مصر وخاصة الرف والعشوائيات، وتعتبر مبادرة حياة كريمة خير دليل على ذلك.

a. The Egyptian organisations pay great attention to improving the lives of citizens in all cities of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the initiative for a high life is the best proof of that.

b. The Egyptian government pays great intention to improving the lives of employees in all parts of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the experiment for a decent life is the best proof of that.

c. That Egyptian government pays great attention to moving the lives of citizens in upper Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the initiative for a decent job is the best proof of that.

d. The Egyptian government pays great attention to improving the lives of citizens in all parts of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the initiative for a decent life is the best proof of that.

40. Your friend is very stressed about exams and is having trouble relaxing. You are worried about their mental health. What advice would you give them ? Write an email of about 200 words with your suggestions. You could include the following :

- suggestions for self-care.
- advice on time management.

made by Mansy

صلى ع النبي وإدعيلى دعوة حلوة

#دفعة المنوفية 2022

#قناة تالتة ثانوى 2022